

# ETSI TS 123 379 V18.14.0 (2026-02)



TECHNICAL SPECIFICATION

**LTE;**  
**Functional architecture and information flows to support**  
**Mission Critical Push To Talk (MCPTT);**  
**Stage 2**  
**(3GPP TS 23.379 version 18.14.0 Release 18)**



---

**Reference**RTS/TSGS-0623379vie0

---

**Keywords**LTE

---

**ETSI**

650 Route des Lucioles  
F-06921 Sophia Antipolis Cedex - FRANCE

---

Tel.: +33 4 92 94 42 00 Fax: +33 4 93 65 47 16

Siret N° 348 623 562 00017 - APE 7112B  
Association à but non lucratif enregistrée à la  
Sous-Préfecture de Grasse (06) N° w061004871

---

**Important notice**

---

The present document can be downloaded from the  
[ETSI Search & Browse Standards](#) application.

The present document may be made available in electronic versions and/or in print. The content of any electronic and/or print versions of the present document shall not be modified without the prior written authorization of ETSI. In case of any existing or perceived difference in contents between such versions and/or in print, the prevailing version of an ETSI deliverable is the one made publicly available in PDF format on [ETSI deliver](#) repository.

Users should be aware that the present document may be revised or have its status changed,  
this information is available in the [Milestones listing](#).

If you find errors in the present document, please send your comments to  
the relevant service listed under [Committee Support Staff](#).

If you find a security vulnerability in the present document, please report it through our  
[Coordinated Vulnerability Disclosure \(CVD\)](#) program.

---

**Notice of disclaimer & limitation of liability**

---

The information provided in the present deliverable is directed solely to professionals who have the appropriate degree of experience to understand and interpret its content in accordance with generally accepted engineering or other professional standard and applicable regulations.

No recommendation as to products and services or vendors is made or should be implied.

No representation or warranty is made that this deliverable is technically accurate or sufficient or conforms to any law and/or governmental rule and/or regulation and further, no representation or warranty is made of merchantability or fitness for any particular purpose or against infringement of intellectual property rights.

In no event shall ETSI be held liable for loss of profits or any other incidental or consequential damages.

Any software contained in this deliverable is provided "AS IS" with no warranties, express or implied, including but not limited to, the warranties of merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose and non-infringement of intellectual property rights and ETSI shall not be held liable in any event for any damages whatsoever (including, without limitation, damages for loss of profits, business interruption, loss of information, or any other pecuniary loss) arising out of or related to the use of or inability to use the software.

---

**Copyright Notification**

---

No part may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and microfilm except as authorized by written permission of ETSI.

The content of the PDF version shall not be modified without the written authorization of ETSI.

The copyright and the foregoing restriction extend to reproduction in all media.

© ETSI 2026.  
All rights reserved.

---

# Intellectual Property Rights

## Essential patents

IPRs essential or potentially essential to normative deliverables may have been declared to ETSI. The declarations pertaining to these essential IPRs, if any, are publicly available for **ETSI members and non-members**, and can be found in ETSI SR 000 314: "*Intellectual Property Rights (IPRs); Essential, or potentially Essential, IPRs notified to ETSI in respect of ETSI standards*", which is available from the ETSI Secretariat. Latest updates are available on the [ETSI IPR online database](#).

Pursuant to the ETSI Directives including the ETSI IPR Policy, no investigation regarding the essentiality of IPRs, including IPR searches, has been carried out by ETSI. No guarantee can be given as to the existence of other IPRs not referenced in ETSI SR 000 314 (or the updates on the ETSI Web server) which are, or may be, or may become, essential to the present document.

## Trademarks

The present document may include trademarks and/or tradenames which are asserted and/or registered by their owners. ETSI claims no ownership of these except for any which are indicated as being the property of ETSI, and conveys no right to use or reproduce any trademark and/or tradename. Mention of those trademarks in the present document does not constitute an endorsement by ETSI of products, services or organizations associated with those trademarks.

**DECT™**, **PLUGTESTS™**, **UMTS™** and the ETSI logo are trademarks of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members. **3GPP™**, **LTE™** and **5G™** logo are trademarks of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and of the 3GPP Organizational Partners. **oneM2M™** logo is a trademark of ETSI registered for the benefit of its Members and of the oneM2M Partners. **GSM®** and the GSM logo are trademarks registered and owned by the GSM Association.

---

# Legal Notice

This Technical Specification (TS) has been produced by ETSI 3rd Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The present document may refer to technical specifications or reports using their 3GPP identities. These shall be interpreted as being references to the corresponding ETSI deliverables.

The cross reference between 3GPP and ETSI identities can be found at [3GPP to ETSI numbering cross-referencing](#).

---

# Modal verbs terminology

In the present document "**shall**", "**shall not**", "**should**", "**should not**", "**may**", "**need not**", "**will**", "**will not**", "**can**" and "**cannot**" are to be interpreted as described in clause 3.2 of the [ETSI Drafting Rules](#) (Verbal forms for the expression of provisions).

"**must**" and "**must not**" are **NOT** allowed in ETSI deliverables except when used in direct citation.

# Contents

Intellectual Property Rights .....	2
Legal Notice .....	2
Modal verbs terminology.....	2
Foreword.....	12
1 Scope .....	13
2 References .....	13
3 Definitions, symbols and abbreviations .....	14
3.1 Definitions .....	14
3.2 Symbols.....	15
3.3 Abbreviations .....	16
4 Introduction .....	17
5 Architectural requirements .....	17
5.1 Media routing requirements .....	17
5.2 Requirements for user identity management .....	17
5.3 MCPTT group affiliation and MCPTT group de-affiliation.....	18
5.4 MCPTT call requirements .....	18
5.4.1 General.....	18
5.4.2 Group call requirements.....	18
5.5 GCS AS requirements for the MCPTT service .....	18
5.6 Group selection .....	18
5.7 Bearer management .....	18
5.7.1 General.....	18
5.7.2 EPS bearer considerations .....	18
5.7.2.1 Void.....	18
5.7.2.2 Void.....	18
5.7.3 EPS unicast bearer considerations for MCPTT .....	18
5.7.4 MBMS bearer management .....	19
5.8 MCPTT system interconnect requirements .....	19
6 Involved business relationships.....	19
7 Functional model.....	19
7.1 General .....	19
7.2 Description of the planes .....	20
7.3 Functional model description .....	20
7.3.1 On-network functional model .....	20
7.3.2 Off-network functional model .....	21
7.4 Functional entities description.....	22
7.4.1 General.....	22
7.4.2 Application plane of MCPTT service .....	22
7.4.2.1 General .....	22
7.4.2.2 Common services core .....	22
7.4.2.3 MCPTT application service .....	22
7.4.2.3.1 MCPTT client.....	22
7.4.2.3.2 MCPTT server.....	22
7.4.2.3.3 Floor participant .....	24
7.4.2.3.4 Floor control server .....	24
7.4.2.3.5 Media distribution function .....	24
7.4.2.3.6 Media mixer .....	24
7.4.2.3.7 MCPTT user database .....	25
7.4.2.3.8 MC gateway server.....	25
7.4.3 Signalling control plane .....	25
7.5 Reference points .....	25
7.5.1 General reference point principle.....	25

7.5.2	Application plane of MCPTT service .....	25
7.5.2.1	General .....	25
7.5.2.2	Reference point MCPTT-1 (between the MCPTT client and the MCPTT server).....	25
7.5.2.3	Reference point MCPTT-2 (between the MCPTT server and the MCPTT user database).....	26
7.5.2.4	Reference point MCPTT-3 (between the MCPTT server and the MCPTT server and between the MCPTT server and the MC gateway server).....	26
7.5.2.5	Reference point MCPTT-4 (unicast between the floor control server and the floor participant) .....	26
7.5.2.6	Reference point MCPTT-5 (between the MCPTT server and the EPS).....	26
7.5.2.7	Reference point MCPTT-6 (between the MCPTT server and the EPS).....	26
7.5.2.8	Reference point MCPTT-7 (unicast between the media distribution function and the media mixer).....	26
7.5.2.9	Reference point MCPTT-8 (multicast between the media distribution function and the media mixer).....	27
7.5.2.10	Reference point MCPTT-9 (multicast between the floor control server and the floor participant).....	27
7.5.2.11	Reference point IWF-1 (between the MCPTT server and the interworking function to legacy systems).....	27
7.5.2.12	Reference points of common services core used in the MCPTT service .....	27
7.5.2.13	Reference point MCPTT-10 (between the MC gateway server and the MC gateway server in a different MCPTT system) .....	27
8	Identities .....	27
9	Application of functional model to deployments .....	27
10	Procedures and information flows.....	27
10.1	MCPTT service configuration.....	27
10.2	User authentication and authorization for MCPTT service .....	28
10.3	Affiliation and de-affiliation to/from MCPTT group(s).....	28
10.3a	Activation and de-activation of/from functional alias(es) .....	29
10.4	MCPTT group selection .....	29
10.4.1	General.....	29
10.4.2	Information flows for group selection .....	29
10.4.2.1	Group selection change request.....	29
10.4.2.2	Group selection change response .....	29
10.4.2.3	Group selection change notification.....	29
10.4.3	Authorized user remotely changes another MCPTT user's selected MCPTT group – mandatory mode....	30
10.5	Pre-established session (on-network) .....	31
10.5.1	General.....	31
10.5.2	Information flows for pre-established session .....	31
10.5.2.1	Pre-established session establishment .....	31
10.5.2.2	Pre-established session modification .....	32
10.5.2.3	Pre-established session release - client initiated.....	32
10.5.2.4	Pre-established session release - server initiated.....	33
10.5.2.5	Pre-established session call connect request .....	33
10.5.2.6	Pre-established session call disconnect request.....	33
10.5.3	Procedures.....	34
10.5.3.1	General .....	34
10.5.3.2	Call connect and disconnect procedures using pre-established session .....	34
10.5.3.2.1	Call connect over unicast.....	34
10.5.3.2.2	Call disconnect over unicast .....	34
10.6	Group call.....	35
10.6.1	General.....	35
10.6.2	On-network group call .....	35
10.6.2.1	General .....	35
10.6.2.2	Information flows for group call in on-network.....	35
10.6.2.2.1	MCPTT emergency group call request.....	35
10.6.2.2.1a	MCPTT emergency group call response .....	36
10.6.2.2.2	MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel request .....	36
10.6.2.2.2a	MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel response.....	37
10.6.2.2.3	Void.....	37
10.6.2.2.3a	Void.....	37
10.6.2.2.3b	Void.....	37
10.6.2.2.4	Void.....	37

10.6.2.2.4a	Void .....	37
10.6.2.2.5	MCPTT imminent peril group call request .....	37
10.6.2.2.5a	MCPTT imminent peril group call response .....	38
10.6.2.2.6	MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel request .....	38
10.6.2.2.6a	MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel response .....	38
10.6.2.2.7	Group call request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	39
10.6.2.2.8	Group call request (MCPTT server – group host MCPTT server) .....	39
10.6.2.2.9	Group call request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	40
10.6.2.2.10	Group call response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	40
10.6.2.2.11	Group call response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server) .....	41
10.6.2.2.12	Group call response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	41
10.6.2.2.13	Group call notify (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	41
10.6.2.2.14	Group call release request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	42
10.6.2.2.14a	Group call release request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	42
10.6.2.2.15	Group call release request (MCPTT server – MCPTT server) .....	42
10.6.2.2.16	Group call release response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	43
10.6.2.2.17	Group call release response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server) .....	43
10.6.2.2.18	Group call rejoin request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	43
10.6.2.2.19	Group call rejoin response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	44
10.6.2.2.20	Group join request .....	44
10.6.2.2.21	Group join response .....	44
10.6.2.2.22	Group call leave request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	45
10.6.2.2.22a	Group call leave request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	45
10.6.2.2.23	Group call leave response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	45
10.6.2.2.23a	Group call leave response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	46
10.6.2.2.24	Group interrogate request (MCPTT server – MCPTT server) .....	46
10.6.2.2.25	Group interrogate response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server) .....	46
10.6.2.2.26	Group-broadcast group call request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	46
10.6.2.2.27	Group-broadcast group call request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	47
10.6.2.2.28	Group-broadcast group call response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	47
10.6.2.2.29	Group-broadcast group call response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	48
10.6.2.2.30	Group-broadcast group call release request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	48
10.6.2.2.31	Group-broadcast group call release request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	48
10.6.2.2.32	Group-broadcast group call release response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	49
10.6.2.2.33	Group-broadcast group call release response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	49
10.6.2.2.34	Preconfigured regroup request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	49
10.6.2.2.35	Preconfigured regroup request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	50
10.6.2.2.36	Preconfigured regroup request (MCPTT server – MCPTT server) .....	50
10.6.2.2.37	Preconfigured regroup response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	51
10.6.2.2.38	Preconfigured regroup response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	51
10.6.2.2.39	Preconfigured regroup response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server) .....	51
10.6.2.2.40	Preconfigured regroup cancel request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	52
10.6.2.2.41	Preconfigured regroup cancel request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	52
10.6.2.2.42	Preconfigured regroup cancel request (MCPTT server – MCPTT server) .....	52
10.6.2.2.43	Preconfigured regroup cancel response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	52
10.6.2.2.44	Preconfigured regroup cancel response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	53
10.6.2.2.45	Preconfigured regroup cancel response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server) .....	53
10.6.2.2.46	Preconfigured regroup reject (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	53
10.6.2.2.47	Preconfigured regroup reject (MCPTT server – MCPTT server) .....	54
10.6.2.2.48	Preconfigured regroup request return (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	54
10.6.2.2.49	Preconfigured user regroup remove request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	54
10.6.2.2.50	Preconfigured user regroup remove response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	54
10.6.2.3	Group call within one MCPTT system .....	55
10.6.2.3.1	Group call models .....	55
10.6.2.3.1.1	Pre-arranged group call .....	55
10.6.2.3.1.2	Chat group call .....	60
10.6.2.3.2	Exiting group call due to de-affiliation .....	67
10.6.2.3.3	MCPTT user leaving a group call .....	67
10.6.2.4	Group call involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems .....	68
10.6.2.4.1	Group call for non-broadcast temporary groups across multiple MCPTT systems .....	68
10.6.2.4.1.1	Group call setup .....	68
10.6.2.4.1.2	Group call release .....	71

10.6.2.4.2	Group call for non-broadcast temporary group formed by group regroup procedure involving multiple MCPTT systems via trusted mode .....	72
10.6.2.4.3	Group call for an MCPTT group defined in the partner MCPTT system .....	74
10.6.2.4.3.1	Pre-arranged group call setup procedure – initiating side .....	74
10.6.2.4.3.2	Pre-arranged group call setup – terminating side .....	75
10.6.2.4.3.3	Chat group call setup .....	75
10.6.2.4.4	Merging of groups involving multiple MCPTT systems .....	77
10.6.2.5	Broadcast group call .....	78
10.6.2.5.1	General .....	78
10.6.2.5.2	Common broadcast group call procedure .....	78
10.6.2.5.2.1	Group-broadcast group call procedure .....	79
10.6.2.5.2.2	Group-broadcast group call procedure when a subordinate group has an on-going MCPTT emergency group call .....	81
10.6.2.5.2.3	Group-broadcast group call release procedure .....	82
10.6.2.5.2.4	Server-initiated broadcast group call release procedure .....	83
10.6.2.5.3	Void .....	84
10.6.2.5.4	Group call for broadcast temporary groups across multiple MCPTT systems .....	84
10.6.2.6	Emergency and imminent peril procedures .....	86
10.6.2.6.1	MCPTT emergency group call .....	86
10.6.2.6.1.1	MCPTT emergency group call commencement .....	86
10.6.2.6.1.2	MCPTT group call upgraded to an MCPTT emergency group call .....	88
10.6.2.6.1.3	MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel .....	90
10.6.2.6.2	MCPTT imminent peril group call .....	92
10.6.2.6.2.1	MCPTT imminent peril group call commencement .....	92
10.6.2.6.2.2	Imminent peril group call upgrade .....	94
10.6.2.6.2.3	MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel .....	96
10.6.2.6.3	MCPTT emergency alert (on-network) .....	97
10.6.2.7	Location of current talker .....	97
10.6.2.8	Void .....	98
10.6.2.8.1	Void .....	98
10.6.2.8.2	Void .....	98
10.6.2.8.3	Void .....	98
10.6.2.9	Group regroup with preconfigured group .....	98
10.6.2.9.1	General .....	98
10.6.2.9.2	Regroup procedures in single MCPTT system .....	99
10.6.2.9.2.1	Regroup formation using preconfigured group in single MCPTT system .....	99
10.6.2.9.2.2	Regroup cancellation in single MCPTT system .....	101
10.6.2.9.3	Regroup procedures in multiple MCPTT systems .....	102
10.6.2.9.3.1	Regroup formation using preconfigured group in multiple MCPTT systems .....	102
10.6.2.9.3.2	Regroup cancellation using preconfigured group in multiple MCPTT systems .....	105
10.6.2.9.3.3	Void .....	106
10.6.2.9.4	Adding newly affiliated user to preconfigured group regroup .....	106
10.6.2.9.5	Preconfigured regroup update procedures .....	107
10.6.2.9.5.1	MCPTT client PTTs on MCPTT group during an in-progress preconfigured group regroup .....	107
10.6.2.9.5.2	MCPTT client PTTs on preconfigured regroup group after group regroup has been cancelled .....	109
10.6.2.10	User regroup using group creation procedure .....	110
10.6.2.10.1	General .....	110
10.6.2.10.2	Temporary group creation and broadcast group call by authorized user .....	110
10.6.2.10.3	Temporary group deletion by authorized user .....	111
10.6.2.11	Broadcast group regroup call using preconfigured group .....	111
10.6.2.11.1	General .....	111
10.6.2.11.2	Broadcast group regroup call procedure using preconfigured group in a single MCPTT system .....	111
10.6.2.12	User regroup with preconfigured group .....	112
10.6.2.12.1	General .....	112
10.6.2.12.2	User regroup procedures in a single MCPTT system .....	112
10.6.2.12.2.1	User regroup formation in a single MCPTT system .....	112
10.6.2.12.2.2	User regroup cancellation in single MCPTT system .....	114
10.6.2.12.3	User regroup MCPTT ID list update .....	115
10.6.3	Off-network group call .....	117

10.6.3.1	General .....	117
10.6.3.2	Information flows for group call in off-network .....	117
10.6.3.2.1	Group call announcement .....	117
10.6.3.2.2	MCPTT upgrade to emergency call.....	118
10.6.3.2.3	MCPTT emergency group state cancel.....	118
10.6.3.2.4	Response.....	118
10.6.3.2.5	Void .....	119
10.6.3.2.6	Void .....	119
10.6.3.2.7	MCPTT upgrade to imminent peril call.....	119
10.6.3.2.8	MCPTT imminent peril group call cancel .....	119
10.6.3.3	Group call setup .....	119
10.6.3.4	Passive join to group call .....	120
10.6.3.5	Join to ongoing group call when new entry member initiates the call with on-going group call id ...	121
10.6.3.6	Immediate group call announcement to join an ongoing group call .....	122
10.6.3.7	Group call release due to inactivity .....	123
10.6.3.8	Broadcast group call.....	124
10.6.3.9	Emergency and imminent peril procedures.....	124
10.6.3.9.1	Emergency group call.....	124
10.6.3.9.2	MCPTT imminent peril .....	125
10.6.3.9.3	MCPTT emergency alert (off-network).....	125
10.7	Private call.....	126
10.7.1	General.....	126
10.7.2	Private call in on-network.....	126
10.7.2.1	Information flows for private call in on-network .....	126
10.7.2.1.1	MCPTT private call request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server).....	126
10.7.2.1.2	MCPTT private call request (MCPTT server to MCPTT server).....	127
10.7.2.1.2a	MCPTT private call request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client).....	127
10.7.2.1.3	MCPTT private call response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) .....	128
10.7.2.1.4	MCPTT private call response .....	128
10.7.2.1.4a	MCPTT private call end request.....	129
10.7.2.1.4b	MCPTT private call end response .....	129
10.7.2.1.5	MCPTT emergency private call request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) .....	129
10.7.2.1.5a	MCPTT emergency private call request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client) .....	130
10.7.2.1.6	MCPTT progress indication .....	130
10.7.2.1.7	MCPTT ringing .....	131
10.7.2.1.8	MCPTT functional alias resolution response.....	131
10.7.2.1.9	MCPTT private call cancel request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client).....	131
10.7.2.1.10	MCPTT private call cancel response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) .....	131
10.7.2.2	Private call within one MCPTT system .....	132
10.7.2.2.1	Private call setup in automatic commencement mode.....	132
10.7.2.2.2	Private call setup in manual commencement mode.....	134
10.7.2.2.2.1	Description.....	134
10.7.2.2.2.2	Procedure .....	134
10.7.2.2.3	Private call release .....	136
10.7.2.2.3.1	Client initiated.....	136
10.7.2.2.3.2	Server initiated.....	137
10.7.2.3	Private call within several MCPTT systems .....	138
10.7.2.3.1	Private call setup in automatic commencement mode – MCPTT users in multiple MCPTT systems .....	138
10.7.2.3.2	Private call setup in manual commencement mode – MCPTT users in multiple MCPTT systems .....	140
10.7.2.3.3	Private call release – MCPTT users in multiple MCPTT systems .....	142
10.7.2.4	MCPTT emergency private call .....	142
10.7.2.4.1	MCPTT emergency private call commencement .....	142
10.7.2.4.2	MCPTT private call emergency upgrade.....	144
10.7.3	Private call in off-network .....	145
10.7.3.1	Information flows for private call in off-network .....	145
10.7.3.1.1	Call setup request .....	145
10.7.3.1.2	Call setup response .....	145
10.7.3.1.3	Call release request.....	145
10.7.3.1.4	Call release response .....	146
10.7.3.2	Use of ProSe capability for private call.....	146

10.7.3.3	Private call setup in automatic commencement mode.....	146
10.7.3.4	Private call setup in manual commencement mode .....	147
10.7.3.5	Private call release.....	148
10.7.3.6	MCPTT emergency private call .....	149
10.7.4	MCPTT private call call-back request .....	150
10.7.4.1	Information flows for MCPTT private call call-back request .....	150
10.7.4.1.1	MCPTT private call call-back request .....	150
10.7.4.1.2	MCPTT private call call-back response .....	150
10.7.4.1.3	MCPTT private call call-back cancel request.....	150
10.7.4.1.4	MCPTT private call call-back cancel response .....	150
10.7.4.2	MCPTT private call call-back request within one MCPTT system .....	151
10.7.4.3	MCPTT private call call-back cancel request within one MCPTT system .....	152
10.7.4.4	MCPTT private call call-back request fulfillment within one MCPTT system .....	153
10.7.5	MCPTT call forwarding for private calls.....	153
10.7.5.1	General .....	153
10.7.5.1.1	Void.....	154
10.7.5.1.2	MCPTT private call forwarding request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server and MCPTT server to MCPTT server).....	154
10.7.5.1.3	MCPTT private call forwarding response (MCPTT server to MCPTT client).....	154
10.7.5.1.4	MCPTT private call forwarding request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client) .....	154
10.7.5.1.5	MCPTT private call forwarding response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server and MCPTT server to MCPTT server).....	154
10.7.5.2	Procedures.....	155
10.7.5.2.1	Update configuration for MCPTT private call forwarding.....	155
10.7.5.2.2	MCPTT immediate private call forwarding in a single MCPTT system .....	155
10.7.5.2.3	MCPTT private call forwarding no answer in a single MCPTT system.....	157
10.7.5.2.3a	MCPTT private call forwarding based on manual user input in a single MCPTT system .....	161
10.7.5.2.4	Handling of multiple MCPTT private call forwardings .....	164
10.7.5.2.5	MCPTT private call forwarding with target of the MCPTT private call forwarding in partner MCPTT system.....	164
10.7.5.2.6	MCPTT private call forwarding with MCPTT private call forwarding occurring in the partner MCPTT system.....	166
10.7.6	Call transfer for MCPTT private calls .....	168
10.7.6.1	General .....	168
10.7.6.1.1	MCPTT private call transfer request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server).....	168
10.7.6.1.2	MCPTT private call transfer request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client and MCPTT server to MCPTT server).....	168
10.7.6.1.3	MCPTT private call transfer response (MCPTT server to MCPTT client and MCPTT server to MCPTT server).....	169
10.7.6.1.4	MCPTT private call transfer response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) .....	169
10.7.6.2	Procedures.....	169
10.7.6.2.1	MCPTT private call unannounced transfer in a single MCPTT system .....	169
10.7.6.2.2	MCPTT private call announced transfer in a single MCPTT system .....	171
10.7.6.2.3	MCPTT private call announced transfer with target in partner MCPTT system .....	174
10.7.6.2.4	MCPTT private call announced transfer with transferring MCPTT user in partner MCPTT system.....	177
10.8	Simultaneous session for MCPTT calls (on-network).....	180
10.8.1	General.....	180
10.9	Floor control.....	180
10.9.1	Floor control for on-network MCPTT service .....	180
10.9.1.1	General .....	180
10.9.1.2	Information flows for floor control for on-network .....	180
10.9.1.2.1	General .....	180
10.9.1.2.2	Floor request.....	181
10.9.1.2.3	Floor granted .....	181
10.9.1.2.4	Floor rejected.....	181
10.9.1.2.5	Floor request cancel.....	182
10.9.1.2.6	Floor request cancel response.....	182
10.9.1.2.7	Floor request cancel notify .....	182
10.9.1.2.8	Floor idle .....	182
10.9.1.2.9	Floor release .....	183
10.9.1.2.9a	Multi-talker floor release .....	183

10.9.1.2.10	Floor taken.....	183
10.9.1.2.10a	Multi-talker floor taken .....	184
10.9.1.2.11	Floor revoked .....	184
10.9.1.2.12	Floor acknowledgement .....	184
10.9.1.2.13	Queue position request .....	184
10.9.1.2.14	Queue position info .....	185
10.9.1.2.15	Unicast media stop request .....	185
10.9.1.2.16	Unicast media resume request .....	185
10.9.1.3	Floor control within one MCPTT system.....	186
10.9.1.3.1	Floor request, floor granted and floor taken during an MCPTT session .....	186
10.9.1.3.1a	Floor request, floor granted and multi-talker floor taken during an MCPTT session enhanced with multi-talker control .....	187
10.9.1.3.2	Floor override .....	189
10.9.1.3.2.1	Floor override using floor revoked (also floor rejected) during an MCPTT session .....	189
10.9.1.3.2.2	Floor override without using floor revoked during an MCPTT session .....	190
10.9.1.3.3	Queue position during an MCPTT session .....	194
10.9.1.3.4	Floor request cancellation from the floor request queue .....	195
10.9.1.3.4.1	Floor request cancellation from the queue – MCPTT user initiated .....	195
10.9.1.3.4.2	Floor request cancellation from the queue - floor control server initiated .....	196
10.9.1.3.5	Floor idle during an MCPTT session.....	197
10.9.1.4	Floor control involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems .....	198
10.9.1.4.1	Partner MCPTT system routes all floor control messages to primary MCPTT system's floor control server .....	198
10.9.1.4.2	Partner MCPTT system performs filtering of floor control messages entering and leaving the partner MCPTT system .....	200
10.9.1.5	Floor control for audio cut-in enabled group .....	203
10.9.1.6	Unicast media stop and resume requests .....	205
10.9.2	Floor control for off-network MCPTT service .....	207
10.9.2.1	General .....	207
10.9.2.2	Information flows for floor control for off-network.....	208
10.9.2.2.1	General .....	208
10.9.2.2.2	Floor granted .....	208
10.9.2.3	Floor control during silence .....	208
10.9.2.3.1	Successful floor taken (No floor contention).....	208
10.9.2.4	Simultaneous floor requests .....	209
10.9.2.5	Floor request during speaking with queue .....	210
10.9.2.6	Floor request during speaking without queue .....	211
10.9.2.7	Override .....	212
10.9.2.8	Floor queue status .....	213
10.10	Use of MBMS transmission (on-network) .....	214
10.10.1	Information flows for MBMS Transmission .....	214
10.10.1.1	MapGroupToBearer .....	214
10.10.1.2	UnmapGroupFromBearer .....	215
10.10.1.3	Application paging.....	215
10.10.2	Use of pre-established MBMS bearers .....	215
10.10.3	Use of dynamic MBMS bearer establishment .....	215
10.10.4	Call connect and disconnect over MBMS.....	216
10.10.4.1	General .....	216
10.10.4.2	Procedure .....	216
10.10.4.2.1	Call connect over MBMS .....	216
10.10.4.2.2	Call disconnect over MBMS .....	217
10.10.5	Switching from MBMS bearer to unicast bearer .....	218
10.10.6	Enhanced MCPTT group call setup procedure with MBMS bearer .....	218
10.10.6.1	Description .....	218
10.10.6.2	Procedure .....	219
10.11	MCPTT resource management (on-network).....	220
10.11.1	General.....	220
10.11.2	Request for unicast resources at session establishment .....	220
10.11.3	Request for modification of unicast resources .....	220
10.11.4	Management of multicast media bearers .....	220
10.11.5	Request for resources with shared priority .....	220
10.11.5.1	General .....	220

10.11.5.2	Procedure .....	220
10.12	MCPTT media plane transmissions with partner MCPTT systems (on-network).....	220
10.13	Location information (on-network).....	222
10.14	Ambient listening call .....	222
10.14.1	General.....	222
10.14.2	Information flows for ambient listening call.....	222
10.14.2.1	Ambient listening call request.....	222
10.14.2.2	Ambient listening call response .....	223
10.14.2.3	Ambient listening call release request.....	223
10.14.2.4	Ambient listening call release response .....	223
10.14.2.5	Ambient listening call release notification.....	224
10.14.3	Ambient listening call procedures .....	224
10.14.3.1	Remotely initiated ambient listening call setup.....	224
10.14.3.2	Locally initiated ambient listening call setup.....	225
10.14.3.3	Ambient listening call release – server initiated.....	226
10.14.3.4	Remotely initiated ambient listening call release – "listening" user initiated .....	227
10.14.3.5	Ambient listening call release – "listened to" user initiated .....	228
10.15	First-to-answer call setup .....	229
10.15.1	Description.....	229
10.15.2	Information flows for first-to-answer call.....	229
10.15.2.1	MCPTT first-to-answer call request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server).....	229
10.15.2.2	MCPTT first-to-answer call request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client).....	230
10.15.2.3	MCPTT first-to-answer call response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server).....	230
10.15.2.4	MCPTT first-to-answer call response (MCPTT server to MCPTT client).....	231
10.15.2.5	MCPTT first-to-answer call cancel request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client).....	231
10.15.2.6	MCPTT first-to-answer call cancel response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) .....	231
10.15.3	Procedure .....	232
10.16	Remotely initiated MCPTT call .....	235
10.16.1	General.....	235
10.16.2	Information flows for remotely initiated MCPTT call.....	235
10.16.2.1	Remotely initiated MCPTT call request.....	235
10.16.2.2	Remotely initiated MCPTT call response .....	235
10.16.3	Procedure .....	236
10.16.3.1	Remotely initiated MCPTT call request.....	236
10.17	Support for multiple devices .....	237
10.17.1	General.....	237
10.18	Subscription and notification for functional alias.....	237
10.18.1	General.....	237
10.18.2	Void .....	238
10.18.3	Void .....	238
10.19	Ad hoc group call .....	238
10.19.1	General.....	238
10.19.2	Information flows .....	238
10.19.2.1	Ad hoc group call request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server).....	238
10.19.2.2	Ad hoc group call request return (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	240
10.19.2.3	Ad hoc group call request (MCPTT server – group host MCPTT server) .....	240
10.19.2.4	Ad hoc group call request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client).....	241
10.19.2.5	Ad hoc group call response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	242
10.19.2.6	Ad hoc group call response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server).....	242
10.19.2.7	Ad hoc group call response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server).....	243
10.19.2.8	Ad hoc group call release request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client).....	243
10.19.2.9	Ad hoc group call release response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server).....	243
10.19.2.10	Ad hoc group call notify (MCPTT server – MCPTT client).....	244
10.19.2.11	Modify ad hoc group call participants request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server).....	244
10.19.2.12	Modify ad hoc group call participants response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client) .....	244
10.19.2.13	Ad hoc group call leave request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client).....	245
10.19.2.14	Ad hoc group call leave response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server) .....	245
10.19.2.15	Ad hoc group call add user notification (MCPTT server – MCPTT server).....	246
10.19.2.16	Ad hoc group call remove user notification (MCPTT server – MCPTT server).....	246
10.19.2.17	Ad hoc group call release notification (MCPTT server – MCPTT server) .....	246
10.19.2.18	Ad hoc group call get userlist (MCPTT server – MCPTT server) .....	246
10.19.2.19	Ad hoc group call get userlist response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server) .....	247

10.19.3	Procedures.....	247
10.19.3.1	Ad hoc group call procedures in single MCPTT system.....	247
10.19.3.1.1	Ad hoc group call setup .....	247
10.19.3.1.2	Release ad hoc group call .....	250
10.19.3.1.3	Ad hoc group call setup with MCPTT server determining the participants lists .....	251
10.19.3.1.4	Modification of ad hoc group call participants by an authorized user.....	254
10.19.3.1.5	Modification of ad hoc group call participants by the MCPTT server .....	256
10.19.3.2	Ad hoc group call involving multiple MC systems.....	258
10.19.3.2.1	Procedure for ad hoc group call setup – Participants list provided by the Initiator .....	258
10.19.3.2.2	Procedure for ad hoc group call release by MCPTT server – Participants list provided by the Initiator .....	259
10.19.3.2.3	Ad hoc group call setup – Participants list determined by the MCPTT server.....	261
10.19.3.2.4	Modification of ad hoc group call participants by the MCPTT server .....	263
10.19.3.2.5	Release ad hoc group call and stop determining the ad hoc group call participants by partner MCPTT system – Participants list determined by the MCPTT server.....	265
10.19.3.2.6	Modification of ad hoc group call participants by an authorized user.....	267
<b>Annex A (normative): MCPTT related configuration data.....</b>		<b>269</b>
A.1	General .....	269
A.2	MCPTT UE configuration data .....	270
A.3	MCPTT user profile configuration data .....	270
A.4	MCPTT related group configuration data .....	281
A.5	MCPTT service configuration data .....	285
<b>Annex B (informative): Local UE settings for MCPTT .....</b>		<b>290</b>
B.1	Local UE settings for MCPTT .....	290
<b>Annex C (informative): Change history .....</b>		<b>291</b>
History .....		298

---

# Foreword

This Technical Specification has been produced by the 3<sup>rd</sup> Generation Partnership Project (3GPP).

The contents of the present document are subject to continuing work within the TSG and may change following formal TSG approval. Should the TSG modify the contents of the present document, it will be re-released by the TSG with an identifying change of release date and an increase in version number as follows:

Version x.y.z

where:

- x the first digit:
  - 1 presented to TSG for information;
  - 2 presented to TSG for approval;
  - 3 or greater indicates TSG approved document under change control.
- y the second digit is incremented for all changes of substance, i.e. technical enhancements, corrections, updates, etc.
- z the third digit is incremented when editorial only changes have been incorporated in the document.

---

# 1 Scope

This document specifies the functional architecture, procedures and information flows needed to support the mission critical push to talk (MCPTT) service. The MCPTT service utilizes the common functional architecture to support MC services over LTE including the common services core defined in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]. Support for both MCPTT group calls and MCPTT private calls operating in on-network and off-network modes of operation is specified.

The corresponding service requirements are defined in 3GPP TS 22.179 [2] and 3GPP TS 22.280 [17].

The present document is applicable primarily to MCPTT voice service using E-UTRAN access based on the EPC architecture defined in 3GPP TS 23.401 [8]. Certain application functions of the MCPTT service such as dispatch and administrative functions could also be supported via non-3GPP access networks but no additional functionality is specified to support non-3GPP access.

The MCPTT service requires preferential handling compared to normal telecommunication services e.g. in support of police or fire brigade including the handling of prioritised MCPTT calls for emergency and imminent threats.

The MCPTT service can be used for public safety applications and also for general commercial applications e.g. utility companies and railways.

In the present document, MCPTT calls between MCPTT users on different MCPTT systems are considered.

---

# 2 References

The following documents contain provisions which, through reference in this text, constitute provisions of the present document.

- References are either specific (identified by date of publication, edition number, version number, etc.) or non-specific.
- For a specific reference, subsequent revisions do not apply.
- For a non-specific reference, the latest version applies. In the case of a reference to a 3GPP document (including a GSM document), a non-specific reference implicitly refers to the latest version of that document *in the same Release as the present document*.

- [1] 3GPP TR 21.905: "Vocabulary for 3GPP Specifications".
- [2] 3GPP TS 22.179: "Mission Critical Push to Talk (MCPTT)"; Stage 1.
- [3] 3GPP TS 23.002: "Network Architecture".
- [4] 3GPP TS 23.203: "Policy and charging control architecture".
- [5] 3GPP TS 23.228: "IP Multimedia Subsystem (IMS); Stage 2".
- [6] 3GPP TS 23.237: "IP Multimedia Subsystem (IMS) Service Continuity; Stage 2".
- [7] 3GPP TS 23.303: "Proximity-based services (ProSe); Stage 2".
- [8] 3GPP TS 23.401: "General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) enhancements for Evolved Universal Terrestrial Radio Access Network (E-UTRAN) access".
- [9] 3GPP TS 23.468: "Group Communication System Enablers for LTE (GCSE\_LTE); Stage 2".
- [10] 3GPP TS 29.468: "Group Communication System Enablers for LTE (GCSE\_LTE); MB2 Reference Point; Stage 3".
- [11] Void
- [12] 3GPP TS 36.331: "Evolved Universal Terrestrial Radio Access (E-UTRA); Radio Resource Control (RRC); Protocol specification".

- [13] IETF RFC 5245 (April 2010): "Interactive Connectivity Establishment (ICE): A Protocol for Network Address Translator (NAT) Traversal for Offer/Answer Protocols".
- [14] void
- [15] void
- [16] 3GPP TS 23.280: "Common functional architecture to support mission critical services".
- [17] 3GPP TS 22.280: "Mission Critical Common Requirements (MCCoRe); Stage 1".
- [18] 3GPP TS 29.283: "Diameter data management applications".
- [19] 3GPP TS 33.180: "Security of the mission critical service".
- [20] 3GPP TS 23.283: "Mission Critical Communication Interworking with Land Mobile Radio Systems; Stage 2".

---

## 3 Definitions, symbols and abbreviations

### 3.1 Definitions

For the purposes of the present document, the terms and definitions given in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1] and the following apply. A term defined in the present document takes precedence over the definition of the same term, if any, in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1].

**Automatic commencement mode:** A mode in which the initiation of the private call does not require any action on the part of the receiving MCPTT user.

**First-to-answer call:** A call that is started when the first MCPTT user among multiple potential target recipients' answers. This call requires the answering MCPTT user to answer manually; automatic answer is not allowed

**Group call:** A mechanism by which an MCPTT user can make a one-to-many MCPTT transmission to other users that are members of MCPTT group(s).

**Group home MCPTT system:** The MCPTT system where the MCPTT group is defined.

**Group host MCPTT server:** The MCPTT server within an MCPTT system that provides centralised support for MCPTT services of an MCPTT group defined in a group home MCPTT system.

**Manual commencement mode:** A mode in which the initiation of the private call requires the receiving MCPTT user to perform some action to accept or reject the call setup.

**MCPTT client:** An instance of an MC service client that provides the client application function for the MCPTT service.

**MCPTT group:** An MC service group configured for MCPTT service.

**MCPTT group affiliation:** An MC service group affiliation for MCPTT.

**MCPTT group de-affiliation:** An MC service group de-affiliation for MCPTT.

**MCPTT ID:** An instance of an MC service ID within the MCPTT service.

**MCPTT server:** An instance of an MC service server that provides the server application function for the MCPTT service.

**On-network MCPTT service:** The collection of functions and capabilities required to provide MCPTT via EPS bearers using E-UTRAN to provide the last hop radio bearers.

**Preconfigured MCPTT group:** an MCPTT group used only for regrouping that has been configured in advance of a group or user regrouping operation to serve as the source of regroup group configuration.

**Pre-selected MCPTT user profile:** An instance of the pre-selected MC service user profile for MCPTT.

**UE-to-network relay MCPTT service:** The collection of functions and capabilities required to provide MCPTT via a ProSe UE-to-network relay using ProSe direct communication paths to provide the last hop radio bearer(s).

For the purposes of the present document, the following terms and definitions given in 3GPP TS 22.179 [2] apply:

**Dispatcher**  
**Floor control**  
**Group-broadcast group**  
**MCPTT administrator**  
**MCPTT service**  
**MCPTT system**  
**MCPTT UE**  
**MCPTT user**  
**MCPTT User Profile**  
**Mission Critical Organization**  
**Mission Critical Push To Talk**  
**Off-network MCPTT service**  
**Partner MCPTT system**  
**Primary MCPTT system**  
**Private call**  
**Multi-talker control**  
**User-broadcast group**

For the purposes of the present document, the following terms and definitions given in IETF RFC 5245 [13] apply:

**Candidate**  
**Candidate pair**

For the purposes of the present document, the following terms and definitions given in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16] apply:

**Ad hoc Group Communication**  
**Active MC service user profile**  
**Chat group**  
**MC service client**  
**MC service group**  
**MC service group affiliation**  
**MC service group de-affiliation**  
**MC service ID**  
**MC service server**  
**Pre-arranged group**  
**Pre-selected MC service user profile**

For the purposes of the present document, the following terms and definitions given in 3GPP TS 22.280 [17] apply:

**Functional alias**

## 3.2 Symbols

For the purposes of the present document, the following symbols given in 3GPP TS 22.179 [2] apply:

**B1**  
**B2**  
**N2**  
**N3**  
**N4**  
**N5**  
**N6**  
**N7**  
**N10**  
**N11**

### 3.3 Abbreviations

For the purposes of the present document, the abbreviations given in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1] and the following apply. An abbreviation defined in the present document takes precedence over the definition of the same abbreviation, if any, in 3GPP TR 21.905 [1].

APN	Access Point Name
ARP	Allocation and Retention Priority
BM-SC	Broadcast Multicast Service Centre
CHAP	Challenge-Handshake Authentication Protocol
CSCF	Call Server Control Function
DL	Downlink
DPF	Direct Provisioning Function
E-UTRAN	Evolved Universal Terrestrial Radio Access Network
E2EE	End to End Encryption
ECGI	E-UTRAN Cell Global Identifier
EPC	Evolved Packet Core
EPS	Evolved Packet System
GBR	Guaranteed Bit Rate
GCS AS	Group Communication Service Application Server
GCSE_LTE	Group Communication Service Enabler over LTE
GRUU	Globally Routable User agent URI
HLR	Home Location Register
HSS	Home Subscriber Server
HTTP	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol
I-CSCF	Interrogating CSCF
ICE	Interactive Connectivity Establishment
IM CN	IP Multimedia Core Network
IMPI	IP Multimedia Private Identity
IMPU	IP Multimedia PUblic identity
IMS	IP Multimedia Subsystem
ITSI	Individual TETRA Subscriber Identity
LMR	Land Mobile Radio
MBMS	Multimedia Broadcast and Multicast Service
MBSFN	Multimedia Broadcast multicast service Single Frequency Network
MC	Mission Critical
MC ID	Mission Critical user identity
MCPTT	Mission Critical Push To Talk
MCPTT AS	MCPTT Application Server
MCPTT group ID	MCPTT group identity
MCPTT ID	MCPTT user identity
NAT	Network Address Translation
PAP	Password Authentication Protocol
P-CSCF	Proxy CSCF
PCC	Policy and Charging Control
PCRF	Policy and Charging Rules Function
PLMN	Public Land Mobile Network
ProSe	Proximity-based Services
PSI	Public Service Identity
PTT	Push To Talk
QCI	QoS Class Identifier
QoS	Quality of Service
RAN	Radio Access Network
RF	Radio Frequency
RSI	Radio Set Identity
S-CSCF	Serving CSCF
SAI	Service Area Identifier
SDF	Service Data Flow
SIP	Session Initiated Protocol
SSL	Secure Sockets Layer
TLS	Transport Layer Security

TMGI	Temporary Mobile Group Identity
UM	Unacknowledged Mode
URI	Uniform Resource Identifier
USB	Universal Serial Bus
WLAN	Wireless Local Area Network

---

## 4 Introduction

The MCPTT service supports communication between several users (i.e. group call), where each user has the ability to gain access to the permission to talk in an arbitrated manner. The MCPTT service also supports private calls between two users.

The MCPTT architecture utilises the common functional architecture to support mission critical services over LTE defined in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16] and aspects of the IMS architecture defined in 3GPP TS 23.228 [5], the Proximity-based Services (ProSe) architecture defined in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7], the Group Communication System Enablers for LTE (GCSE\_LTE) architecture defined in 3GPP TS 23.468 [9] and the PS-PS access transfer procedures defined in 3GPP TS 23.237 [6] to enable support of the MCPTT service.

The MCPTT UE primarily obtains access to the MCPTT service via E-UTRAN, using the EPS architecture defined in 3GPP TS 23.401 [8]. Certain application functions of MCPTT service such as dispatch and administrative functions can be supported using either MCPTT UEs in E-UTRAN or using MCPTT UEs via non-3GPP access networks.

NOTE: Dispatch consoles and devices used by MCPTT service administrators are considered MCPTT UEs in the MCPTT architecture.

MCPTT UEs that use non-3GPP access can only support a subset of the functionality specified in this specification that is supported by the non-3GPP access network.

The MCPTT system provides the function to support interworking with LMR systems defined in 3GPP TS 23.283 [20].

---

## 5 Architectural requirements

### 5.1 Media routing requirements

The voice media flow for a private call shall be routed according to one of the following two options:

- a) Option 1:
  - 1) Through the primary MCPTT system if both users in the call belong to the same organisation; or
  - 2) Through the primary MCPTT system of both users, if the users in the call do not belong to the same organisation.
- b) Option 2: The voice media flow may be routed locally, under the control of the primary MCPTT system, through an entity allowing the duplication of the media flow to the primary MCPTT system of each user.

The voice media flow for a group call shall be routed to the group home MCPTT system.

The routing of media flow shall be end-to-end from transmitter to receiver(s), except for the MCPTT control function.

### 5.2 Requirements for user identity management

To allow for confidentiality of user identities in various cases of business relationship as defined in clause 6, the MCPTT application may provide public user identities to the MCPTT UE, to be used by MCPTT UE for MCPTT services.

## 5.3 MCPTT group affiliation and MCPTT group de-affiliation

MCPTT group affiliation shall be as specified in clause 5.2.5 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]. In addition, the following requirements shall be fulfilled by the MCPTT service for MCPTT users affiliated to MCPTT groups:

- MCPTT users receive notifications for MCPTT group call setup and invitations for their affiliated MCPTT group(s).
- MCPTT users receive media and events from their affiliated MCPTT group(s).

## 5.4 MCPTT call requirements

### 5.4.1 General

The on-network MCPTT service shall support the use of pre-established sessions.

### 5.4.2 Group call requirements

The MCPTT service shall support the chat group (restricted) call model for MCPTT group call.

The MCPTT service shall support the pre-arranged group call model for MCPTT group call.

## 5.5 GCS AS requirements for the MCPTT service

The GCS AS architecture requirements for MC services are specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

## 5.6 Group selection

The following functionalities shall be supported by the MCPTT service.

- a. The MCPTT user shall select an affiliated group to initiate a new group call or transmit media in an existing group call.
- b. An authorized MCPTT user (e.g., dispatcher) may remotely force or request to change other on-network MCPTT users' selected MCPTT group to a particular affiliated group.

## 5.7 Bearer management

### 5.7.1 General

The MCPTT UE shall use the APNs as defined in subclause 5.2.7.0 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

### 5.7.2 EPS bearer considerations

The EPS bearer considerations specified in subclause 5.2.7.2 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16] shall apply.

#### 5.7.2.1 Void

#### 5.7.2.2 Void

### 5.7.3 EPS unicast bearer considerations for MCPTT

For an MCPTT call session request, resources shall be requested utilising interaction with dynamic PCC. The MCPTT system shall request resources over Rx to a PCRF. The dedicated bearer for voice shall utilise the QCI value of 65 (as specified in 3GPP TS 23.203 [4]) and the bearer for MCPTT-4 reference point messaging shall utilise the QCI value of

65 or the QCI value of 69 (as specified in 3GPP TS 23.203 [4]). The request of resources over Rx shall include an application identifier for MCPTT in order for the PCRF to evaluate the correct QCI.

The UE is required to support at minimum one UM bearer which is used for MCPTT voice (see annex A in 3GPP TS 36.331 [12]).

Depending on operator policy:

- the MCPTT system may be able to request modification of the priority (ARP) of an existing bearer without the need to initiate a new dedicated GBR bearer; or
- the EPS bearers for MCPTT call may enable pre-emption of lower priority EPS bearers if the maximum number of UM bearers has been reached in favour of MCPTT initiated EPS bearer, if the EPS bearer used for MCPTT call has higher priority level (ARP) than the UM bearer(s) used for other application(s) and if the bearers for non MCPTT application are pre-emptable. In this case, the EPS bearer for MCPTT call pre-empt one of the existing EPS bearers when the maximum number of bearers is established for other applications.

NOTE 1: Operator policy takes into account regional/national requirements.

The EPS bearer for MCPTT emergency call shall have highest priority level among MCPTT call types. The EPS bearer for MCPTT imminent peril call shall have higher priority level than one for MCPTT call.

To ensure that the MCPTT service always has access to a dedicated bearer for MCPTT media, a pre-established session may be setup that includes a request for resources at the first MCPTT group affiliation.

This means that the PCC may multiplex MCPTT media streams from multiple concurrent MCPTT calls into one EPS bearer on one shared network priority regardless of MCPTT call priority.

NOTE 2: A single UM bearer is used to multiplex the media streams from multiple concurrent MCPTT calls.

NOTE 3: The sharing of a single GBR bearer for voice means that different QCI and/or ARP values are not possible for different voice media streams.

NOTE 4: Multi-talker control may require additional bearer resources if multiple audio streams are sent to the UE when the floor is granted to additional participants during an established MCPTT group session.

## 5.7.4 MBMS bearer management

The MBMS bearer management for MC services is specified in subclause 5.2.7.1 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

## 5.8 MCPTT system interconnect requirements

The architecture for interconnect between MCPTT systems is specified, allowing the affiliation of MCPTT users from an MCPTT system with MCPTT groups defined in another MCPTT system. When both MCPTT systems are served by different networks, interconnect of signalling and media is achieved using the interfaces defined for interconnect between PLMNs.

---

# 6 Involved business relationships

The description of the involved business relationships for the MCPTT service is contained in clause 6 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

---

# 7 Functional model

## 7.1 General

The functional model for the support of MCPTT is defined as a series of planes to allow for the breakdown of the architectural description.

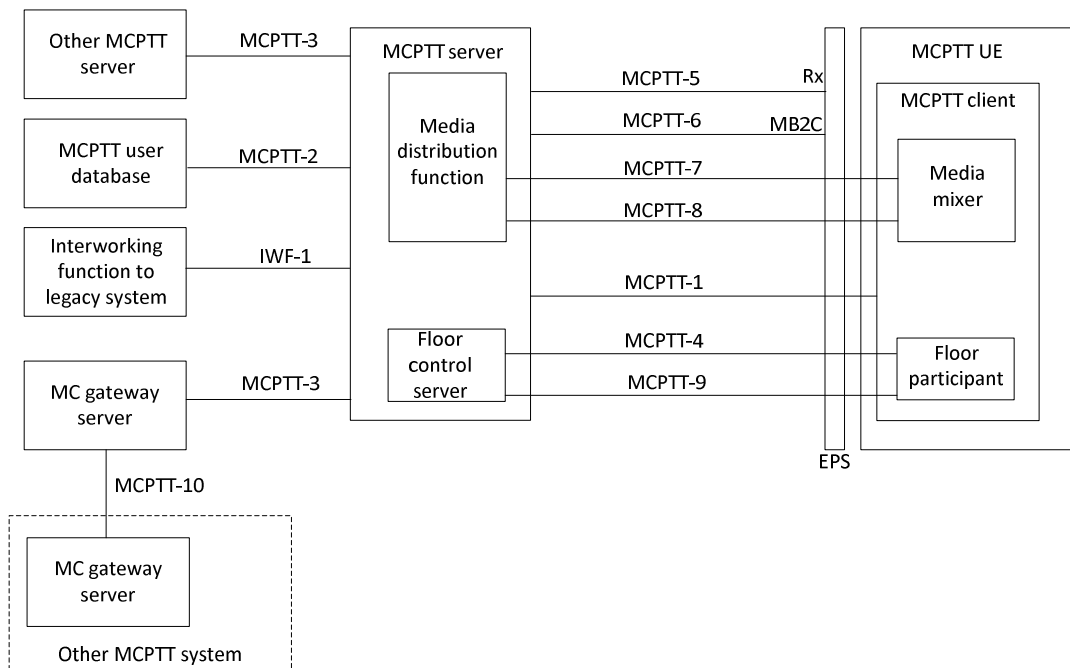
## 7.2 Description of the planes

The description of the planes and the relationship between the planes are contained in the common functional architecture to support MC services in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

## 7.3 Functional model description

### 7.3.1 On-network functional model

Figure 7.3.1-1 shows the functional model for the application plane of the MCPTT service.

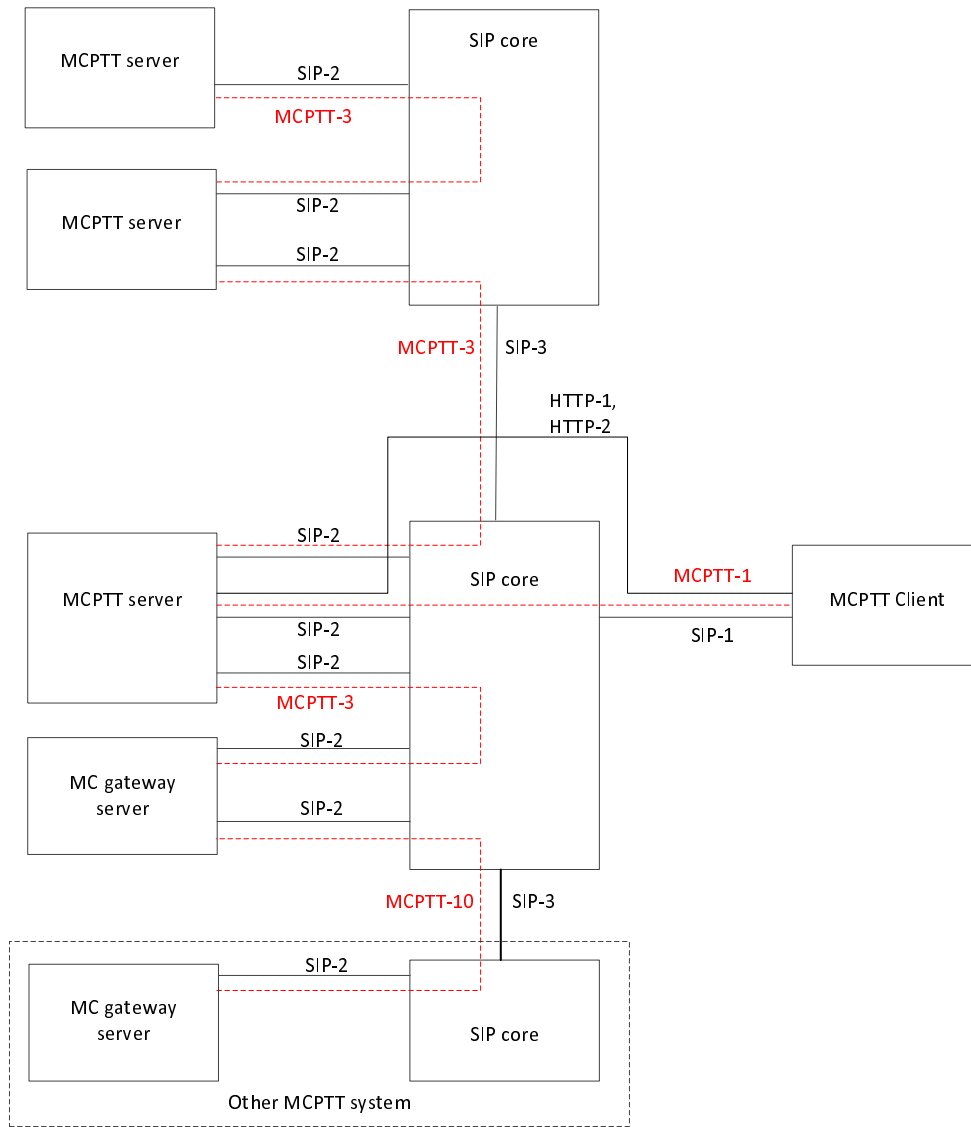


**Figure 7.3.1-1: Functional model for application plane of the MCPTT service**

In the model shown in figure 7.3.1-1, the following apply:

- The MCPTT server is an instantiation of a MC service server in accordance with 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].
- The MCPTT server is an instantiation of a GCS AS in accordance with 3GPP TS 23.468 [9].
- MCPTT-9 carries multicast floor control signalling between the floor control server of the MCPTT server and the floor participant of the MCPTT UE.
- MCPTT-4 carries unicast floor control signalling between the floor control server of the MCPTT server and the floor participant of the MCPTT UE.
- MCPTT-7 carries unicast media between the media distribution function of the MCPTT server and the media mixer of the MCPTT UE.
- MCPTT-8 carries multicast media from the media distribution function of the MCPTT server to the media mixer of the MCPTT UE.

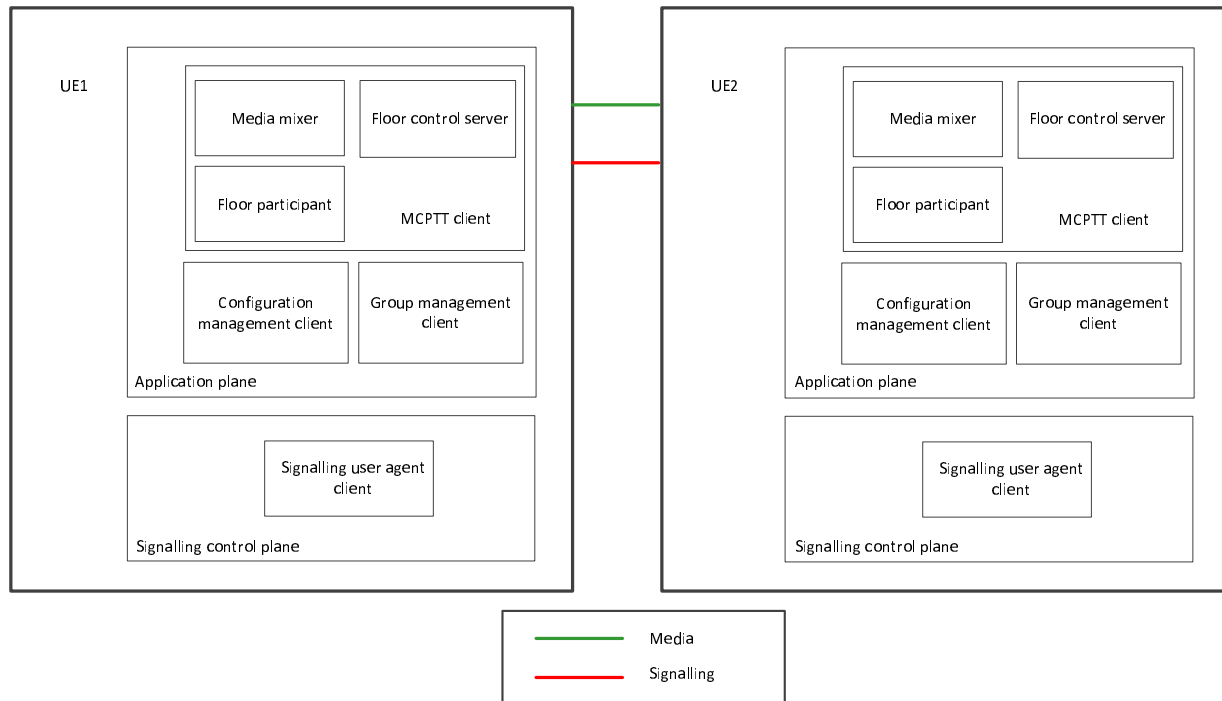
Figure 7.3.1-2 shows the relationships between the reference points of the application plane and the signalling plane.



**Figure 7.3.1-2: Relationships between reference points of MCPTT application and signalling control planes**

### 7.3.2 Off-network functional model

Figure 7.3.2-1 shows the functional model for off-network operation of MCPTT service.



**Figure 7.3.2-1: Functional model for off-network operation of MCPTT service**

## 7.4 Functional entities description

### 7.4.1 General

Each subclause is a description of a functional entity and does not imply a physical entity.

### 7.4.2 Application plane of MCPTT service

#### 7.4.2.1 General

Entities within the application plane of MCPTT service provide application control, media control and distribution functions.

#### 7.4.2.2 Common services core

The description of the common services core entities are contained in common functional architecture to support MC services in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

#### 7.4.2.3 MCPTT application service

##### 7.4.2.3.1 MCPTT client

The MCPTT client functional entity acts as the user agent for all MCPTT application transactions. The client reports the information of where the client is currently located.

##### 7.4.2.3.2 MCPTT server

The MCPTT server functional entity provides centralised support for MCPTT services.

All the MCPTT clients supporting users belonging to a single group are required to use the same MCPTT server for that group. An MCPTT client supporting a user involved in multiple groups can have relationships with multiple MCPTT servers.

NOTE 1: Possible requirements for handling multiple distinct media on different MCPTT servers are not covered in this version of the document.

The MCPTT server functional entity represents a specific instantiation of the GCS AS described in 3GPP TS 23.468 [9] to control multicast and unicast operations for group communications.

The MCPTT server functional entity is supported by the SIP AS, HTTP client and HTTP server functional entities of the signalling control plane.

By assuming the role of a GCS AS, the MCPTT server functional entity is responsible for:

- requesting the allocation of multicast resources utilizing the media distribution function;
- announcing the association of multicast resources to calls to MCPTT UEs;
- determining for each MCPTT UE involved in a given call whether to use unicast or multicast transport;
- announcing the assignment of multicast transport for specific calls to MCPTT UEs; and
- informing the media distribution function of the media streams requiring support for a given call.

The MCPTT server shall support the controlling role and the participating role. The MCPTT server may perform the controlling role for private calls and group calls. The MCPTT server performing the controlling role for a private call or group call may also perform a participating role for the same private call or group call. For each private call and group call, there shall be only one MCPTT server assuming the controlling role, while one or more MCPTT servers in participating role may be involved.

The MCPTT server performing the controlling roles is responsible for:

- call control (e.g. policy enforcement for participation in the MCPTT group calls) towards all the MCPTT users of the group call and private call;
- interfacing with the group management server for group policy and affiliation status information of this MCPTT server's served affiliated users;
- enforcing functional alias priority handling;
- managing floor control entity in a group call and private call; and
- managing media handling entity in call i.e. conferencing, transcoding.

The MCPTT server performing the functional alias controlling role is responsible for:

- interfacing with the functional alias management server for functional alias policy from the functional alias configuration;
- functional alias activation, deactivation, take over and interrogation support for MCPTT user.

The controlling roles for group call, private call and functional alias are independent with each other.

The MCPTT server performing the participating roles is responsible for:

- call control (e.g. authorization for participation in the MCPTT group calls) to its MCPTT users for group call and private call;
- group affiliation support for MCPTT user, including enforcement of maximum N2 number of simultaneous group affiliations by a user;
- enforcing functional alias priority handling;
- relaying the call control and floor control messages between the MCPTT client and the MCPTT server performing the controlling role; and

- media handling in call for its MCPTT users, i.e. transcoding, recording, lawful interception for both unicast and multicast media.

NOTE 2: The MCPTT server in the controlling role and the MCPTT server in the participating role can belong to the same MCPTT system or to different MCPTT systems.

For group regrouping involving multiple groups from primary and partner MCPTT systems,

- the group host MCPTT server of the temporary group performs the controlling role and is responsible for the centralized floor control, and for arbitration according to the temporary group or user policies (e.g., priority);
- the group host MCPTT server of the constituent MCPTT group is responsible for providing call invitations to their group members, and for filtering between constituent group members' floor control requests according to the constituent group or user policies (e.g., priority); and
- the MCPTT server responsible for the constituent MCPTT group members performs the participating role.

#### 7.4.2.3.3 Floor participant

The floor participant functional entity is responsible for floor requests. This functional entity is located in the UE for both on-network and off-network operations.

#### 7.4.2.3.4 Floor control server

This functional entity provides support for centralised floor control for on-network and distributed floor control for off-network operation. It may provide arbitration between floor control requests between different users, grant the floor in response to successful requests, and provide queuing in cases of contention. For on-network operation, this functional entity is located with the MCPTT server. For off-network operation, this functional entity is located in the UE.

#### 7.4.2.3.5 Media distribution function

The media distribution function is responsible for the distribution of media to call participants. By means of information provided by the MCPTT server (e.g. IP addresses, transport layer ports), it will provide the following functionality:

- provide for the reception of uplink MCPTT UE media transmission by means of the MCPTT-7 reference point;
- replicate the media as needed for distribution to those participants using unicast transport;
- distribute downlink media to MCPTT UEs by IP unicast transmission to those participants utilizing unicast transport by means of the MCPTT-7 reference point;
- distribute downlink media to MCPTT UEs using multicast downlink transport of media for the call by means of the MCPTT-8 reference point; and
- provide a media mixing function where multiple media streams are combined (e.g. multi-talker control) into a single media stream for transmission to the MCPTT UE.

NOTE 1: If media mixing function occurs within the media distribution function, it operates independently of the media mixer in the UE.

NOTE 2: A media mixing function within the media distribution function is not possible where the media is end to end encrypted.

Group configuration data determines whether audio mixing for multi-talker control is applied by the media mixing function in the MCPTT server.

NOTE 3: If media mixing in the network is utilized, care should be taken to minimize the feedback of the user's own voice from the mixed audio in order to avoid echoes.

#### 7.4.2.3.6 Media mixer

This functional entity exists on the UE and provides support for combining multiple media streams (e.g. multi-talker control) into one media stream through the enforcement of media policy information. Group configuration data determines whether audio mixing for multi-talker control is applied by the media mixing function in the UE.

#### 7.4.2.3.7 MCPTT user database

This functional entity contains information of the MCPTT user profile associated with an MCPTT ID that is held by the MCPTT service provider at the application plane. The MCPTT user profile is determined by the mission critical organization, the MCPTT service provider, and potentially the MCPTT user.

#### 7.4.2.3.8 MC gateway server

The MC gateway server provides support for MCPTT interconnection services with a partner MCPTT system in a different trust domain whilst providing topology hiding. It acts as a proxy for one or more MCPTT servers in the partner MCPTT system without needing to expose the MCPTT servers in the primary MCPTT system outside the trusted domain of the primary MCPTT system. It may be a role of the MCPTT server described in subclause 7.4.2.3.2 of the present document.

The MC gateway server is responsible for relaying call control and floor control signalling messages, and media between MCPTT servers within the MCPTT system and the interconnected MCPTT system.

### 7.4.3 Signalling control plane

The description of the signalling control plane is contained in the common functional architecture to support MC services as specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

## 7.5 Reference points

### 7.5.1 General reference point principle

The protocols on any reference point that is exposed for MCPTT service interoperability with other SIP core or other IMS entities in other systems shall be compatible with the protocols defined for the corresponding reference point defined in 3GPP TS 23.002 [3].

### 7.5.2 Application plane of MCPTT service

#### 7.5.2.1 General

The reference points for the application plane of MCPTT service are described in the following subclauses.

#### 7.5.2.2 Reference point MCPTT-1 (between the MCPTT client and the MCPTT server)

The MCPTT-1 reference point, which exists between the MCPTT client and the MCPTT server, is used for MCPTT application signalling for establishing a session in support of MCPTT. The MCPTT-1 reference point shall use the SIP-1 and SIP-2 reference points for transport and routing of SIP signalling. The MCPTT-1 reference point may use the HTTP-1 and HTTP-2 reference points.

The TMGI is communicated between the MCPTT server and the MCPTT client using the MCPTT-1 reference point.

Information that is reported to the MCPTT server from the MCPTT client shall be configurable at the application layer. This interface may include the area where a UE is currently located, described as ECGI of the serving and neighbouring cell(s), MBMS SAIs, MBSFN Area ID. This information comes from the broadcast by the local cell, e.g. from SIB1 and SIB15 (see 3GPP TS 36.331 [12]) as decoded by the UE.

**NOTE:** This reference point includes the GC1 reference point as described in 3GPP TS 23.468 [9]. It is assumed that the MCPTT server is performing the function of GCS AS. While 3GPP TS 23.468 [9] does not specify GC1 it does include high level descriptions of certain interactions on GC1, including those relating to the availability of multicast delivery for the application client. The MCPTT-1 reference point fulfils the requirements of the GC1 reference point for MCPTT.

Messages supported on this interface may also include the MCPTT server providing the MCPTT client with information describing the mapping of transport resources to specific group calls.

### 7.5.2.3 Reference point MCPTT-2 (between the MCPTT server and the MCPTT user database)

The MCPTT-2 reference point, which exists between the MCPTT server and the MCPTT user database, is used by the MCPTT server to obtain information about a specific user. The MCPTT-2 reference point utilises a diameter management application protocol as defined in 3GPP TS 29.283 [18] and shall be intra-network.

### 7.5.2.4 Reference point MCPTT-3 (between the MCPTT server and the MCPTT server and between the MCPTT server and the MC gateway server)

The MCPTT-3 reference point exists between the MCPTT server and the MCPTT server and between the MCPTT server and the MC gateway server for MCPTT application signalling for establishing MCPTT sessions. The MCPTT-3 reference point shall use the SIP-2 reference point for transport and routing of signalling. If a pair of MCPTT servers, or an MCPTT server and an MC gateway server, are served by different SIP cores then the MCPTT-3 reference point shall also use the SIP-3 reference point for transport and routing of signalling. Floor control signalling and media are also transferred using the MCPTT-3 reference point.

### 7.5.2.5 Reference point MCPTT-4 (unicast between the floor control server and the floor participant)

The MCPTT-4 reference point, which exists between the floor control server in the MCPTT server and the floor participant in the MCPTT client, provides floor control signalling between the floor control server in the MCPTT server and the floor participant over a unicast bearer. The MCPTT-4 reference point uses the SGI reference point defined in 3GPP TS 23.002 [3].

### 7.5.2.6 Reference point MCPTT-5 (between the MCPTT server and the EPS)

The MCPTT-5 reference point, which exists between the MCPTT server and the EPS, is used, subject to the conditions below, by the MCPTT server to obtain unicast bearers with appropriate QoS from the EPS. It utilises the Rx interface of the EPS according to 3GPP TS 23.203 [4].

MCPTT-5 is not used when the MCPTT service provider and the PLMN operator do not have an operational agreement for QoS control to be provided directly from the MCPTT service provider domain.

MCPTT-5 may be used when the MCPTT service provider and the PLMN operator have an operational agreement where QoS control is provided directly from the MCPTT service provider domain.

NOTE: Any coordination between the P-CSCF use of Rx and the MCPTT server use of Rx (via MCPTT-5) from the MCPTT service provider domain is not specified in this release of this specification.

### 7.5.2.7 Reference point MCPTT-6 (between the MCPTT server and the EPS)

The MCPTT-6 reference point, which exists between the MCPTT server and the EPS, is used to request the allocation and activation of multicast transport resources for MCPTT application usage. The MCPTT-6 reference point uses the MB2-C interface as defined in 3GPP TS 29.468 [10].

### 7.5.2.8 Reference point MCPTT-7 (unicast between the media distribution function and the media mixer)

The MCPTT-7 reference point, which exists between the media distribution function and the media mixer, is used to exchange unicast media between the media distribution function of the MCPTT server and the media mixer of the MCPTT client. The MCPTT-7 reference point uses the SGI reference point defined in 3GPP TS 23.002 [3].

### 7.5.2.9 Reference point MCPTT-8 (multicast between the media distribution function and the media mixer)

The MCPTT-8 reference point, which exists between the media distribution function and the media mixer, is used by the media distribution function of the MCPTT server to send multicast media to the media mixer of the MCPTT client. The MCPTT-8 reference point uses the MB2-U interface defined in 3GPP TS 23.468 [9].

### 7.5.2.10 Reference point MCPTT-9 (multicast between the floor control server and the floor participant)

The MCPTT-9 reference point, which exists between the floor control server and the floor participant, provides floor control signalling between the floor control server and the floor participant over a multicast bearer. The MCPTT-9 reference point uses the MB2-U interface defined in 3GPP TS 23.468 [9].

### 7.5.2.11 Reference point IWF-1 (between the MCPTT server and the interworking function to legacy systems)

The IWF-1 reference point is specified in 3GPP TS 23.283 [20].

### 7.5.2.12 Reference points of common services core used in the MCPTT service

The descriptions for reference points of the common services core are contained in the common functional architecture to support MC services specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

### 7.5.2.13 Reference point MCPTT-10 (between the MC gateway server and the MC gateway server in a different MCPTT system)

The MCPTT-10 reference point, which exists between the MC gateway server and the MC gateway server in an interconnected MCPTT system for MCPTT application signalling for establishing MCPTT sessions, shall use the SIP-3 reference point for transport and routing of signalling. Floor control signalling and media are also transferred using the MCPTT-10 reference point between interconnected MCPTT systems.

---

## 8 Identities

The MCPTT service specific identities (e.g. MCPTT ID, MCPTT group ID) are described in clause 8 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

---

## 9 Application of functional model to deployments

The application of the functional model to deployments, and description of various deployment scenarios for the MCPTT service, can be found in clause 9 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

---

## 10 Procedures and information flows

### 10.1 MCPTT service configuration

The MCPTT service shall support the procedures and related information flows as specified in subclause 10.1 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16] with the following clarifications:

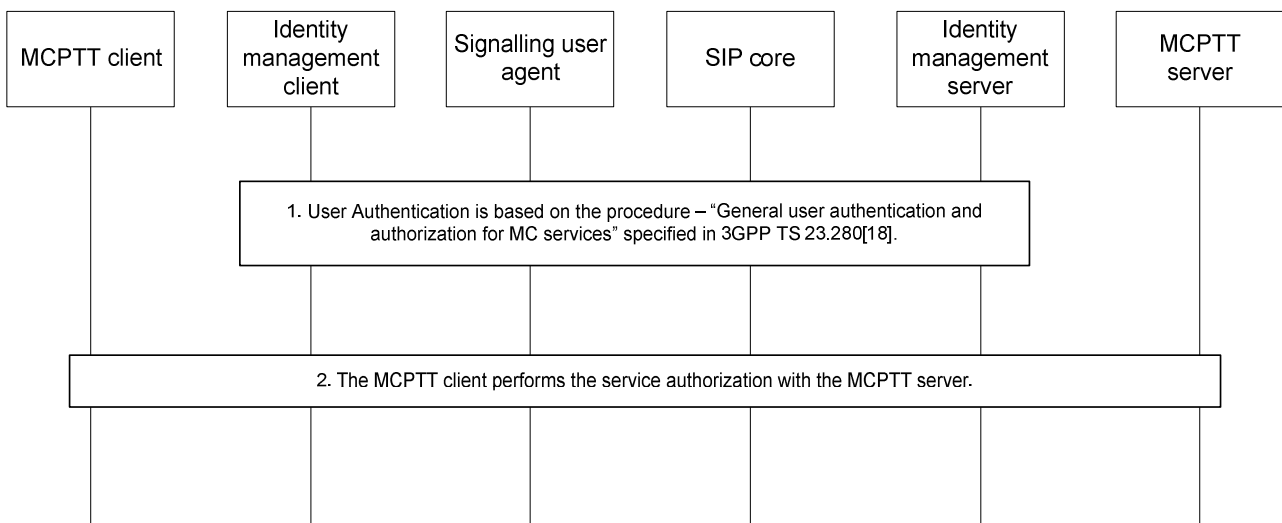
- The MC service client is the MCPTT client;
- The MC service server is the MCPTT server;
- The MC service ID is the MCPTT ID; and

- The MC service user profile index is the MCPTT user profile index.

## 10.2 User authentication and authorization for MCPTT service

NOTE 1: Flow 10.2-1 is a high level user authentication and authorization flow. 3GPP TS 33.180 [19] defines the specific user authentication and authorization architecture required by the MCPTT service in order to realize the MCPTT user authentication and authorization requirements as defined in 3GPP TS 22.179 [2].

A procedure for user authentication is illustrated in figure 10.2-1. The user authentication is performed based on the procedure specified in 3GPP TS 23.280[16].



**Figure 10.2-1: MCPTT user authentication and registration, single domain**

1. The user authentication is performed as per the general user authentication procedure specified in 3GPP TS 23.280[16].
2. MCPTT client performs the MCPTT service authorization for the user. Step 2 utilizes the results of step 1.

NOTE 2: The MCPTT server may reject a request for service authorization by an MCPTT user if the number of simultaneous service authorizations for that MCPTT user would be exceeded.

## 10.3 Affiliation and de-affiliation to/from MCPTT group(s)

The MCPTT service shall support the procedures and related information flows as specified in subclause 10.8 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16] with the following clarifications:

- The MC service client is the MCPTT client;
- The MC service server is the MCPTT server;
- The MC service group is the MCPTT group;
- The MC service ID is the MCPTT ID; and
- The MC service group ID is the MCPTT group ID.

When an MCPTT user has affiliated to an MCPTT group then the MCPTT user can send and receive MCPTT related media for that MCPTT group. When an MCPTT user has de-affiliated from an MCPTT group then the MCPTT user cannot send and receive MCPTT related media to and from that MCPTT group.

## 10.3a Activation and de-activation of/from functional alias(es)

The MCPTT service shall support the procedures and related information flows as specified in subclause 10.13.4 and subclause 10.13.5 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

- The MC service client is the MCPTT client;
- The MC service server is the MCPTT server;
- The MC service ID is the MCPTT ID.

## 10.4 MCPTT group selection

### 10.4.1 General

When an MCPTT user wants to transmit on a MCPTT group, an affiliated MCPTT group shall be set as the selected MCPTT group to the MCPTT user. Only one MCPTT group can be set as the selected MCPTT group to an MCPTT user from one particular MCPTT UE at any given time. This subclause describes the detailed procedures for the MCPTT group selection.

### 10.4.2 Information flows for group selection

#### 10.4.2.1 Group selection change request

Table 10.4.2.1-1 describes the information flow group selection change request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.4.2.1-1: Group selection change request**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	MCPTT user identity whose group selection information is to be changed
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group identity for which the selection is made for the MCPTT ID

#### 10.4.2.2 Group selection change response

Table 10.4.2.2-1 describes the information flow group selection change response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.4.2.2-1: Group selection change response**

Information element	Status	Description
Result	M	Result indicates success or failure of group selection change

#### 10.4.2.3 Group selection change notification

Table 10.4.2.3-1 describes the information flow group selection change notification from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.4.2.3-1: Group selection change notification**

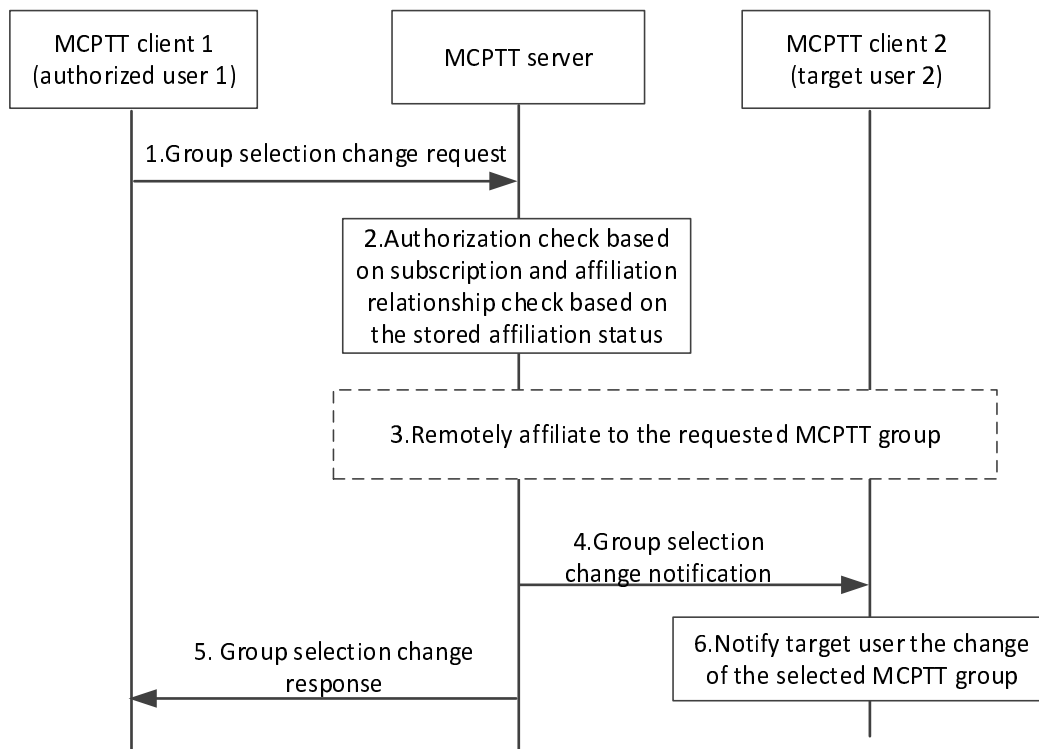
Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	MCPTT user identity whose group selection information is to be changed
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group identity for which the selection is made for the MCPTT ID

### 10.4.3 Authorized user remotely changes another MCPTT user's selected MCPTT group – mandatory mode

Procedure for an authorized user to change other MCPTT users' selected MCPTT group without requiring target user's approval is described in figure 10.4.3-1.

Pre-conditions:

- The MCPTT client 1 has already been provisioned (statically or dynamically) with the target MCPTT user's information and its group information, that the selected MCPTT group of target MCPTT user 2 is allowed to be changed;



**Figure 10.4.3-1: Remotely change MCPTT group selection – mandatory mode**

1. When an authorized user changes other MCPTT users' selected MCPTT group, the MCPTT client 1 sends MCPTT group selection change request to the MCPTT server. The information (i.e. target MCPTT ID, MCPTT group ID) used to set the requested MCPTT group as the selected MCPTT group of the target MCPTT user shall be included.
2. The MCPTT server shall check if the MCPTT user 1 is authorized to change the target MCPTT user's selected MCPTT group. The MCPTT server shall perform the affiliation relationship check based on the stored affiliation status.
3. If the MCPTT user 1 is authorized to change the target MCPTT user's selected MCPTT group, and if the target MCPTT user is not already affiliated to the requested MCPTT group, the remotely change of affiliation procedures shall be performed (see subclause 10.8 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]).

4. The MCPTT server then shall send the MCPTT group selection change notification including the target user ID and the selected MCPTT group ID to the MCPTT client 2.
5. The group selection change response then returns to the MCPTT client 1.
6. Target MCPTT client 2 are notified about the change of its selected MCPTT group.

## 10.5 Pre-established session (on-network)

### 10.5.1 General

The MCPTT server and client may use one or more pre-established sessions as defined in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16] for the following procedures for on-network:

- Group calls (as specified in subclause 10.6.2.3 and subclause 10.6.2.4);
- Private calls (as specified in subclause 10.7.2.2 and subclause 10.7.2.3);
- MCPTT emergency group calls (as specified in subclause 10.6.2.6.1);
- MCPTT imminent peril group calls (as specified in subclause 10.6.2.6.2);
- MCPTT emergency private calls (as specified in subclause 10.7.2.4); and
- MCPTT emergency alerts (as specified in subclause 10.6.2.6.3).

For outgoing MCPTT call setup for a private call or a pre-arranged group call using a pre-established session, an MCPTT UE uses SIP procedures to establish the call.

For incoming MCPTT call setup for a pre-arranged group call using a pre-established session, media plane control procedures are used to establish the call between the MCPTT server and client.

For incoming MCPTT call setup for a private call using a pre-established session, SIP procedures are used to establish the call between the MCPTT client and server in manual commencement mode and media plane control procedures in automatic commencement mode.

An MCPTT UE can join an MCPTT chat group using a pre-established session by sending a group join request using SIP procedures.

NOTE: A chat group call is started and notified using floor control messages regardless of whether pre-established session is used.

### 10.5.2 Information flows for pre-established session

#### 10.5.2.1 Pre-established session establishment

Table 10.5.2.1-1 describes the information flow create pre-established session request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server, for the procedure defined in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

**Table 10.5.2.1-1: Create pre-established session request**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID of requester (originator)	M	This element identifies the MCPTT user that wishes to create a pre-established session.
SDP offer	M	SDP with media information offered by client (e.g. ports, codec, protocol id).

Table 10.5.2.1-2 describes the information flow create pre-established session response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client, for the procedure defined in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

**Table 10.5.2.1-2: Create pre-established session response**

Information element	Status	Description
SDP Answer	M	SDP with media information offered by server (e.g. ports, codec, protocol id)
Session ID	M	This element identifies the specific session ID used for pre-established sessions.

### 10.5.2.2 Pre-established session modification

Table 10.5.2.2-1 describes the information flow modify pre-established session request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server, for the procedure defined in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

**Table 10.5.2.2-1: Modify pre-established session request**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID of requester (originator)	M	This element identifies the MCPTT user that wishes to create a pre-established session.
Session ID	M	This element identifies the specific session ID used for pre-established sessions.
SDP offer	M	SDP with media information offered by client (e.g. ports, codec, protocol id).

Table 10.5.2.2-2 describes the information flow modify pre-established session response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client, for the procedure defined in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

**Table 10.5.2.2-2: Modify pre-established session response**

Information element	Status	Description
SDP Answer	M	SDP with media information offered by server (e.g. ports, codec, protocol id).
Session ID	M	This element identifies the specific session ID used for pre-established sessions.

### 10.5.2.3 Pre-established session release - client initiated

Table 10.5.2.3-1 describes the information flow release pre-established session request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server, for the procedure defined in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

**Table 10.5.2.3-1: Release pre-established session request - client initiated**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID of requester (originator)	M	This element identifies the MCPTT user that wishes to release a pre-established session.
Session ID	M	This element identifies the specific session ID used for pre-established sessions.
Release reason	M	This element indicates that reason for the session release.

Table 10.5.2.3-2 describes the information flow release pre-established session response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client, for the procedure defined in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

**Table 10.5.2.3-2: Release pre-established session response - client initiated**

Information element	Status	Description
Session ID	M	This element identifies the specific session ID used for pre-established sessions.

### 10.5.2.4 Pre-established session release - server initiated

Table 10.5.2.4-1 describes the information flow release pre-established session request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client, for the procedure defined in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

**Table 10.5.2.4-1: Release pre-established session release request - server initiated**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID of target	M	This element identifies the MCPTT user that is the target of the for pre-established session release.
Session ID	M	This element identifies the specific session ID used for pre-established sessions.
Release reason	M	This element indicates the reason for the session release.

Table 10.5.2.4-2 describes the information flow release pre-established session response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server, for the procedure defined in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

**Table 10.5.2.4-2: Release pre-established session response - server initiated**

Information element	Status	Description
Session ID	M	This element identifies the specific session ID used for pre-established sessions.

### 10.5.2.5 Pre-established session call connect request

Table 10.5.2.5-1 describes the information flow pre-established session call connect request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client, for the procedure defined in subclause 10.5.3.2.1 of the present document.

**Table 10.5.2.5-1: Pre-established session call connect request**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT_group ID	O	Identity of the MCPTT group (see NOTE)
MCPTT ID	O	MCPTT ID of the private call MCPTT user (see NOTE)
Session ID	M	This element identifies the specific session ID used for pre-established sessions.
NOTE: Depending on type of connection either MCPTT group ID or MCPTT ID shall be present		

### 10.5.2.6 Pre-established session call disconnect request

Table 10.5.2.1.6-1 describes the information flow pre-established session call disconnect request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client, for the procedure defined in subclause 10.5.3.2.2 of the present document.

**Table 10.5.2.6-1: Pre-established session call disconnect request**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT_group ID	O	Identity of the MCPTT group (see NOTE)
MCPTT ID	O	MCPTT ID of the private call MCPTT user (see NOTE)
Session ID	M	This element identifies the specific session ID used for pre-established sessions.
Reason code	O	Information about call disconnect reason
NOTE: Depending on type of connection either MCPTT group ID or MCPTT ID shall be present		

## 10.5.3 Procedures

### 10.5.3.1 General

The MCPTT server and MCPTT client make use of the procedures defined in the following subclauses of the present document and the following procedures in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]:

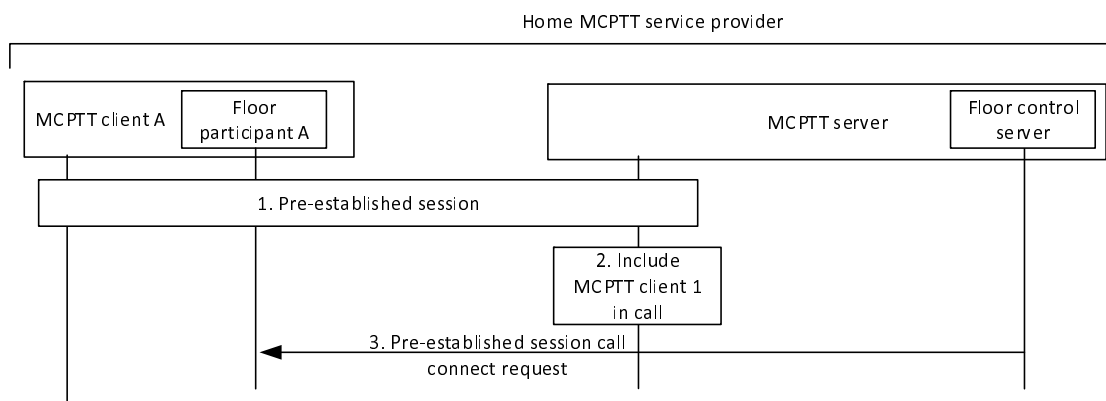
- pre-established session establishment;
- pre-established session modification; and
- pre-established session release.

### 10.5.3.2 Call connect and disconnect procedures using pre-established session

#### 10.5.3.2.1 Call connect over unicast

Call connect and disconnect information flows are sent over non-SIP media plane signalling using MCPTT-4 for including or releasing an MCPTT client in the call using a pre-established session.

Figure 10.5.3.2.1-1 shows the high level procedure where a call connect information flow is sent by the MCPTT server to inform MCPTT client(s) using a pre-established session that the MCPTT client(s) has/have been connected to an MCPTT private call or group call.

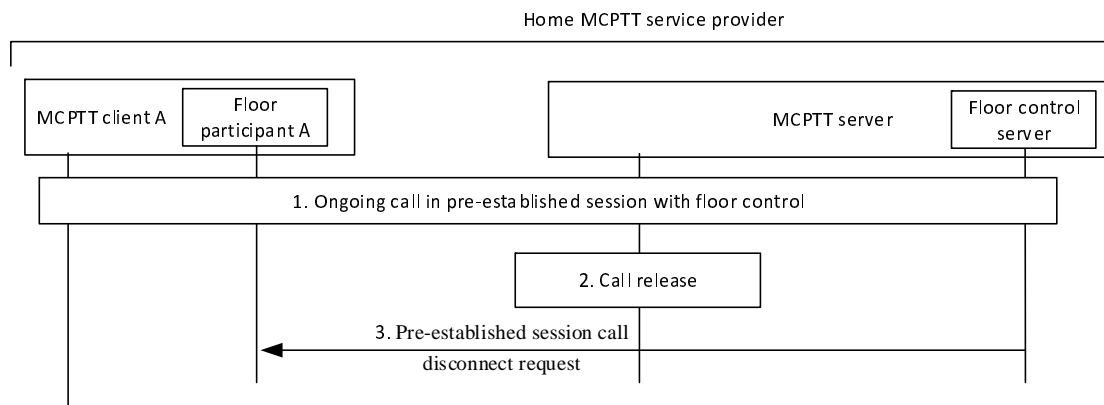


**Figure 10.5.3.2.1-1: Connect procedure**

1. Pre-established session exists between MCPTT client A and MCPTT server.
2. MCPTT server has determined to include MCPTT client A in the call e.g., upon receiving the request from another MCPTT client to include MCPTT client A in the call.
3. Pre-established session call connect request information flow is sent by the MCPTT server to inform MCPTT client A using a pre-established session that it has been connected to MCPTT private or group call. The floor control is established between floor participant A and floor control server.

#### 10.5.3.2.2 Call disconnect over unicast

Figure 10.5.3.2.2-1 shows the high level procedure where a disconnect information flow is sent by the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client A to indicate that the MCPTT private call or group call using a pre-established session has been released.



**Figure 10.5.3.2.2-1: Disconnect procedure**

1. Floor control is ongoing within a private or group call established using pre-established session.
2. MCPTT server has determined to release MCPTT client A from the call e.g., due to call release.
3. Pre-established session call disconnect request message is sent by the MCPTT server to indicate to MCPTT client A that the MCPTT private call or group call using a pre-established session has been released. MCPTT server may include a Reason code parameter to indicate additional information to the MCPTT client about the call disconnect reason. Pre-established session between MCPTT client A and MCPTT server remains for further use.

## 10.6 Group call

### 10.6.1 General

Group calls are enabled in both on-network and off-network.

### 10.6.2 On-network group call

#### 10.6.2.1 General

This subclause contains procedures for group call across a single and multiple MCPTT servers, and associated functions such as emergency call, broadcast call and others.

Two variations of group call model are described in subclause 10.6.2.3, the pre-arranged group call and the chat group call. Each of the subsequent group call types in subclause 10.6.2.4 onwards are applicable to either call model.

#### 10.6.2.2 Information flows for group call in on-network

##### 10.6.2.2.1 MCPTT emergency group call request

Table 10.6.2.2.1-1 describes the information flow MCPTT emergency group call request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server, from the MCPTT server to the group host MCPTT server, and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.1-1 MCPTT emergency group call request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID on which the call is to be conducted
Emergency indicator	M	Indicates that the group call request is an MCPTT emergency call
Alert indicator	O	Indicates whether an emergency alert is to be sent
Implicit floor request (see NOTE)	O	Indicates that the originating client requests the floor.
Requested priority	O	Priority level requested for the call.
Location	O	Location of the calling party
NOTE: This information element shall be included only when this information flow is from the client to the MCPTT server or from the MCPTT server to the group host MCPTT server and the originating client requests the floor.		

#### 10.6.2.2.1a MCPTT emergency group call response

Table 10.6.2.2.1a-1 describes the information flow MCPTT emergency group call response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server, from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server, and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.1a-1 MCPTT emergency group call response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID on which the call is to be conducted
Result	M	Result of the MCPTT emergency group call request (success or failure)

#### 10.6.2.2.2 MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel request

Table 10.6.2.2.2-1 describes the information flow MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server, from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

NOTE: In Rel-14 and Rel-13 versions of this specification the name of this information flow is "MCPTT emergency group call cancel request".

**Table 10.6.2.2.2-1: MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the cancelling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID on which the MCPTT in-progress emergency state is to be cancelled.
Alert indicator	O	Indicates whether the emergency alert of the cancelling party is to be cancelled

#### 10.6.2.2.2a MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel response

Table 10.6.2.2.2a-1 describes the information flow MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client, from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server and from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

NOTE: In Rel-14 and Rel-13 versions of this specification the name of this information flow is "MCPTT emergency group call cancel response".

**Table 10.6.2.2.2a-1: MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the cancelling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID on which the MCPTT in-progress emergency in-progress is to be cancelled.
Result	M	Result of the MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel request (success or failure)

10.6.2.2.3 Void

10.6.2.2.3a Void

10.6.2.2.3b Void

10.6.2.2.4 Void

10.6.2.2.4a Void

10.6.2.2.5 MCPTT imminent peril group call request

Table 10.6.2.2.5-1 describes the information flow MCPTT imminent peril group call request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server, from the MCPTT server to the group host MCPTT server, and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.5-1 MCPTT imminent peril group call request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID on which the call is to be conducted
Imminent peril indicator	M	Indicates that the group call request is an imminent peril call
Implicit floor request (see NOTE)	O	Indicates that the originating client requests the floor
Requested priority	O	Priority level requested for the call.
Location	O	Location of the calling party
NOTE: This information element shall be included only when this information flow is from the client to the MCPTT server or from the MCPTT server to the group host MCPTT server and the originating client requests the floor.		

#### 10.6.2.2.5a MCPTT imminent peril group call response

Table 10.6.2.2.5a-1 describes the information flow MCPTT imminent peril group call response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server, from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server, and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.5a-1 MCPTT imminent peril group call response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID on which the call is to be conducted
Result	M	Result of the MCPTT imminent peril group call request (success or failure)

#### 10.6.2.2.6 MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel request

Table 10.6.2.2.6-1 describes the information flow MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server, from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server, and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

NOTE: In Rel-14 and Rel-13 versions of this specification the name of this information flow is "MCPTT imminent peril group call cancel request".

**Table 10.6.2.2.6-1 MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the cancelling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID on which the imminent peril group state is to be cancelled

#### 10.6.2.2.6a MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel response

Table 10.6.2.2.6a-1 describes the information flow MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server, from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server, and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

NOTE: In Rel-14 and Rel-13 versions of this specification the name of this information flow is "MCPTT imminent peril group call cancel response".

**Table 10.6.2.2.6a-1 MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the cancelling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID on which the imminent peril group state is to be cancelled
Result	M	Result of the MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel request (success or failure)

#### 10.6.2.2.7 Group call request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.7-1 describes the information flow group call request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.7-1: Group call request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is requested
SDP offer	M	Media parameters of MCPTT clients
Implicit floor request	O	When originating client requests the floor, this element shall be included
Broadcast indicator	O	Indicates that the group call request is for a broadcast group call
Location information	O	Location of the calling party.
Requested priority	O	Application priority level requested for this call
Remotely initiated call request indicator	O	Indicates that the MCPTT group call request is a result of receiving of a remotely initiated call request and may be included only for remotely initiated call

#### 10.6.2.2.8 Group call request (MCPTT server – group host MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.8-1 describes the information flow group call request between the MCPTT server and the group host MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.8-1 Group call request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is initiated
SDP offer	M	Media parameters of MCPTT server
Broadcast indicator	O	Indicates that the group call request is for a broadcast group call
Implicit floor request (see NOTE)	O	Indicates that the originating client requests the floor.
Requested priority	O	Priority level requested for the call.
Location information	O	Location of the calling party
Remotely initiated call request indicator	O	Indicates that the MCPTT group call request is a result of receiving of a remotely initiated call request and may be included only for remotely initiated call
NOTE: This information element shall be included only when the originating client requests the floor.		

#### 10.6.2.2.9 Group call request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.9-1 describes the information flow group call request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.9-1 Group call request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the MCPTT user towards which the request is sent
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is initiated
SDP offer	M	Media parameters of MCPTT server
Broadcast indicator	O	Indicates that the group call request is for a broadcast group call
Remotely initiated call request indicator	O	Indicates that the MCPTT group call request is a result of receiving of a remotely initiated call request and may be included only for remotely initiated call

#### 10.6.2.2.10 Group call response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.10-1 describes the information flow group call response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.10-1 Group call response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is requested
SDP answer	M	Media parameters selected
Result	M	Result of the group call request (success or failure)

#### 10.6.2.2.11 Group call response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.11-1 describes the information flow group call response between the MCPTT servers.

**Table 10.6.2.2.11-1 Group call response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the target MCPTT group member
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the target MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is requested
SDP answer	M	Media parameters selected
Result	M	Result of the group call request (success or failure)

#### 10.6.2.2.12 Group call response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.12-1 describes the information flow group call response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.12-1 Group call response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the target MCPTT group member
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the target MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is initiated
SDP answer	M	Media parameters selected
Result	M	Result of the group call request (success or failure)

#### 10.6.2.2.13 Group call notify (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.13-1 describes the information flow group call notify from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.13-1 Group call notify information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the MCPTT user towards which the notify is sent
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is requested
MCPTT ID list (see NOTE)	O	The list of the affiliated MCPTT group members who did not acknowledge the group call request
NOTE: Only applicable to acknowledged group calls.		

#### 10.6.2.2.14 Group call release request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.14-1 describes the information flow group call release request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.14-1 Group call release request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is released

#### 10.6.2.2.14a Group call release request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.14a-1 describes the information flow group call release request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.14a-1 Group call release request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is released

#### 10.6.2.2.15 Group call release request (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.15-1 describes the information flow group call release request between the MCPTT servers.

**Table 10.6.2.2.15-1 Group call release request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is released

#### 10.6.2.2.16 Group call release response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.16-1 describes the information flow group call release response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.16-1 Group call release response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is released

#### 10.6.2.2.17 Group call release response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.17-1 describes the information flow group call release response between the MCPTT servers.

**Table 10.6.2.2.17-1 Group call release response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is released

#### 10.6.2.2.18 Group call rejoin request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.18-1 describes the information flow group call rejoin request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.18-1 Group call rejoin request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the re-joining MCPTT group member
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the re-joining MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is on-going
SDP offer	M	Media parameters of MCPTT client

### 10.6.2.2.19 Group call rejoin response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.19-1 describes the information flow group call rejoin response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.19-1 Group call rejoin response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member rejoining the group call
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member re-joining the group call
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is on-going
SDP answer	M	Media parameters selected
Emergency indicator	O	Indicates that the ongoing group call is an MCPTT emergency group call
Imminent peril indicator	O	Indicates that the ongoing group call is an MCPTT imminent peril group call

### 10.6.2.2.20 Group join request

Table 10.6.2.2.20-1 describes the information flow group join request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and from the (MCPTT user's primary) MCPTT server to the group host MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.20-1: Group join request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member joining the group communications for the group
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member joining the group communication for the group
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group to which the group communication is requested
SDP offer	M	Media parameters of MCPTT client
Implicit floor request (see NOTE)	O	Indicates that the originating client requests the floor.
Requested priority	O	Application priority level requested for this call
NOTE: This information element shall be included only when the originating client requests the floor.		

### 10.6.2.2.21 Group join response

Table 10.6.2.2.21-1 describes the information flow group join response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client and from the group host MCPTT server to the (MCPTT user's primary) MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.21-1 Group join response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member joining the group communications for the group
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member joining the group communication for the group
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group to which the group communication is requested
SDP answer	M	Media parameters selected

#### 10.6.2.2.22 Group call leave request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.22-1 describes the information flow group call leave request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.22-1 Group call leave request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member which has been de-affiliated
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member which has been de-affiliated
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is on-going

#### 10.6.2.2.22a Group call leave request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.22a-1 describes the information flow group call leave request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.22a-1 Group call leave request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member leaving the group call
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is on-going

#### 10.6.2.2.23 Group call leave response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.23-1 describes the information flow group call leave response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.23-1 Group call leave response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member which has been de-affiliated
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member which has been de-affiliated
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is on-going

#### 10.6.2.2.23a Group call leave response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.23a-1 describes the information flow group call leave response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.23a-1 Group call leave response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member leaving the group call
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is on-going

#### 10.6.2.2.24 Group interrogate request (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.24-1 describes the information flow group interrogate request between two MCPTT servers.

**Table 10.6.2.2.24-1 Group interrogate request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group being interrogated

#### 10.6.2.2.25 Group interrogate response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.25-1 describes the information flow group interrogate response between two MCPTT servers.

**Table 10.6.2.2.25-1 Group interrogate response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group being interrogated
MCPTT ID list	M	List of the MCPTT IDs for the MCPTT group members that are members of the MCPTT group ID

#### 10.6.2.2.26 Group-broadcast group call request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.26-1 describes the information flow group-broadcast group call request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.26-1 Group-broadcast group call request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is requested
SDP offer	M	Media parameters of MCPTT clients
Implicit floor request	M	When originating client requests the floor, this element shall be included
Broadcast indicator	M	Indicates that the group call request is for a broadcast group call
Location information	O	Location of the calling party
Requested priority	O	Application priority level requested for this call

#### 10.6.2.2.27 Group-broadcast group call request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.27-1 describes the information flow group-broadcast group call request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.27-1 Group-broadcast group call request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the MCPTT user towards which the request is sent
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is requested
SDP offer	M	Media parameters of MCPTT clients
Broadcast indicator	M	Indicates that the group call request is for a broadcast group call

#### 10.6.2.2.28 Group-broadcast group call response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.28-1 describes the information flow group-broadcast group call response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.28-1 Group-broadcast group call response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the target MCPTT group member
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the target MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is initiated
SDP answer	M	Media parameters selected
Result	M	Result of the group-broadcast group call request (success or failure)

#### 10.6.2.2.29 Group-broadcast group call response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.29-1 describes the information flow group-broadcast group call response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.29-1 Group-broadcast group call response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is requested
SDP answer	M	Media parameters selected
Result	M	Result of the group-broadcast group call request (success or failure)

#### 10.6.2.2.30 Group-broadcast group call release request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.30-1 describes the information flow group-broadcast group call release request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.30-1 Group-broadcast group call release request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is released

#### 10.6.2.2.31 Group-broadcast group call release request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.31-1 describes the information flow group-broadcast group call release request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.31-1 Group-broadcast group call release request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is released

#### 10.6.2.2.32 Group-broadcast group call release response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.32-1 describes the information flow group-broadcast group call release response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.32-1 Group-broadcast group call release response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is released

#### 10.6.2.2.33 Group-broadcast group call release response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.33-1 describes the information flow group-broadcast group call release response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.33-1 Group-broadcast group call release response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT group member
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group on which the call is released

#### 10.6.2.2.34 Preconfigured regroup request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.34-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.34-1 Preconfigured regroup request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the requester
MCPTT group ID	O	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the MCPTT group from which configuration is to be taken
MCPTT group ID list	O (see NOTE 1)	List of MCPTT groups to be regrouped into the group regroup group
MCPTT user ID list	O (see NOTE 1)	List of MCPTT users to be regrouped into the user regroup group
Requested priority	O	Priority level requested for the call.
MCPTT user criteria	O (see NOTE 1, NOTE 2)	Carries the details of criteria which will be used by the MCPTT server for determining the participants. For example, it can be a location based criteria to determine the MCPTT user ID list in a particular area, or it could be tags (e.g. "fire", "medical", "police", etc.), or a combination of tags and location, which is left to implementation.
NOTE 1: One and only one of these shall be present.		
NOTE 2: This information element is used only for the user regroup procedures		

#### 10.6.2.2.35 Preconfigured regroup request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.35-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.35-1 Preconfigured regroup request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the target MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the MCPTT group from which configuration is to be taken
MCPTT group ID list	O (see NOTE)	List of MCPTT groups to be regrouped into the group regroup group
MCPTT user ID list	O (see NOTE)	List of MCPTT users to be regrouped into the user regroup group
NOTE: One and only one of these shall be present.		

#### 10.6.2.2.36 Preconfigured regroup request (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.36-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.36-1 Preconfigured regroup request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the requester
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the MCPTT group from which configuration is to be taken
MCPTT group ID list	O (see NOTE)	List of MCPTT groups to be regrouped into the group regroup group
MCPTT user ID list	O (see NOTE)	List of MCPTT users to be regrouped into the user regroup group
Requested priority	O	Priority level requested for the call.
NOTE: One and only one of these shall be present.		

#### 10.6.2.2.37 Preconfigured regroup response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.37-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.37-1 Preconfigured regroup response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the responding MCPTT client
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group
Result	M	Result of the regrouping operation

#### 10.6.2.2.38 Preconfigured regroup response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.38-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.38-1 Preconfigured regroup response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the requester of the regrouping operation
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group
Result	M	Result of the regrouping operation

#### 10.6.2.2.39 Preconfigured regroup response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.39-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.39-1 Preconfigured regroup response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the responding MCPTT client
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group
Result	M	Result of the regrouping operation

#### 10.6.2.2.40 Preconfigured regroup cancel request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.40-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup cancel request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.40-1 Preconfigured regroup cancel request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the requester
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group

#### 10.6.2.2.41 Preconfigured regroup cancel request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.41-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup cancel request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.41-1 Preconfigured regroup cancel request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the target MCPTT user or MCPTT group member
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group

#### 10.6.2.2.42 Preconfigured regroup cancel request (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.42-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup cancel request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.42-1 Preconfigured regroup cancel request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the requester
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group

#### 10.6.2.2.43 Preconfigured regroup cancel response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.43-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup cancel response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.43-1 Preconfigured regroup cancel response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the responding MCPTT client
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group
Result	M	Result of the regrouping operation

#### 10.6.2.2.44 Preconfigured regroup cancel response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.44-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup cancel response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.44-1 Preconfigured regroup cancel response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the requester of the regroup removal
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group
Result	M	Result of the regrouping operation

#### 10.6.2.2.45 Preconfigured regroup cancel response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.45-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup cancel response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.45-1 Preconfigured regroup cancel response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the requester of the regroup removal
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group
Result	M	Result of the regroup removal operation

#### 10.6.2.2.46 Preconfigured regroup reject (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.46-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup reject from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.46-1 Preconfigured regroup reject information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the requester of the regrouping
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group
Reject reason	M	Reason for rejecting the regrouping operation

#### 10.6.2.2.47 Preconfigured regroup reject (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.47-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup reject from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.47-1 Preconfigured regroup reject information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group
Reject reason	M	Reason for rejecting the regrouping operation

#### 10.6.2.2.48 Preconfigured regroup request return (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.48-1 describes the information flow preconfigured regroup request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.48-1 Preconfigured regroup request return information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	O	The MCPTT group ID to be associated with the preconfigured regroup group call which is either provided by the group call initiator or assigned by the MCPTT server. This information element shall be present if the authorization result is success.
Authorization result	M	Indicate if authorization is success or failure

#### 10.6.2.2.49 Preconfigured user regroup remove request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.6.2.2.49-1 describes the information flow preconfigured user regroup remove request from the MCPTT server to MCPTT client.

**Table 10.6.2.2.49-1 Preconfigured user regroup remove request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT user to be removed from the regroup group
MCPTT group ID	M	MCPTT group ID of the regroup group from which the MCPTT user is to be removed

#### 10.6.2.2.50 Preconfigured user regroup remove response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.6.2.2.50-1 describes the information flow preconfigured user regroup remove response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.6.2.2.50-1 Preconfigured user regroup remove response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the MCPTT user to be removed from the preconfigured regroup
Result	M	Result of the preconfigured user regroup removal operation

### 10.6.2.3 Group call within one MCPTT system

#### 10.6.2.3.1 Group call models

##### 10.6.2.3.1.1 Pre-arranged group call

###### 10.6.2.3.1.1.1 General

A pre-arranged group call is initiated by one of the affiliated group members. The initiation of a pre-arranged group call results in all other affiliated group members being invited. Media plane resources are reserved (on-demand) or a pre-established session is associated during the group call setup procedure and released (if on-demand session) or de-associated (if pre-established session) when the call is released. SIP signalling is used to setup and release pre-arranged group calls.

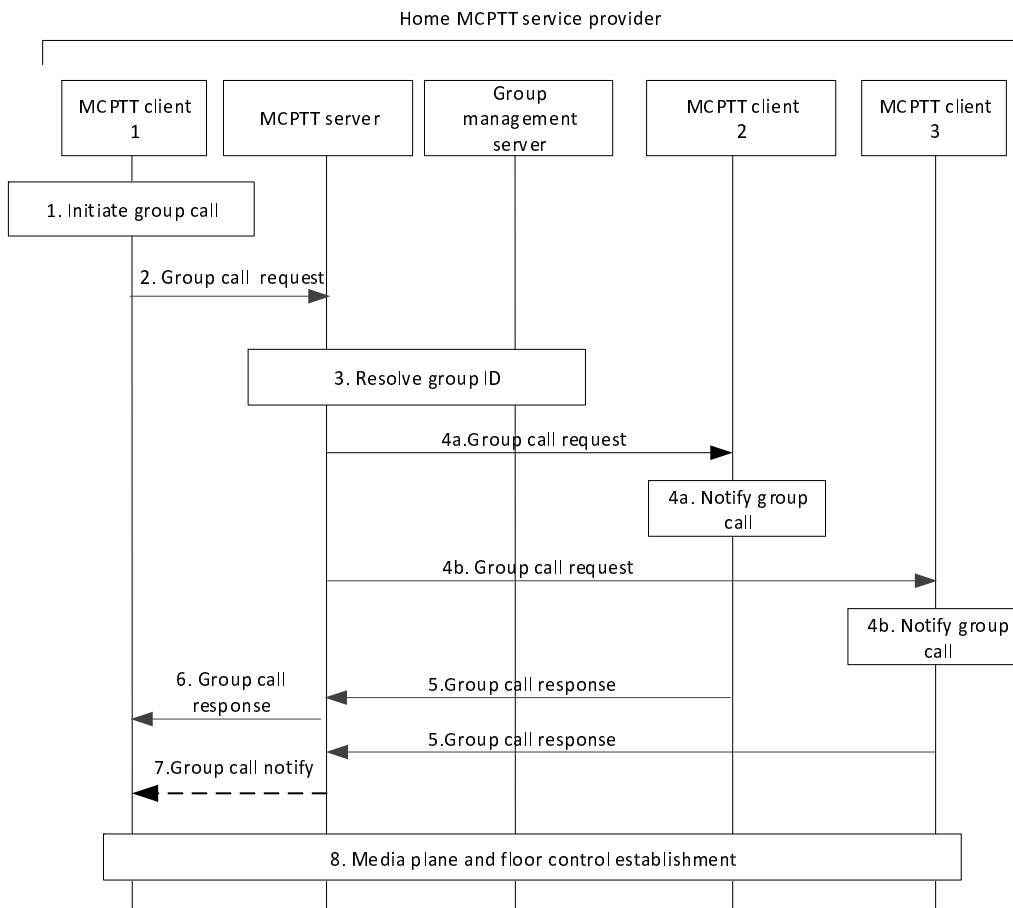
###### 10.6.2.3.1.1.2 Pre-arranged group call setup

The procedure focuses on the case where an MCPTT client is initiating an MCPTT group call with unicast signalling for communicating with the affiliated MCPTT members of that group.

Procedures in figure 10.6.2.3.1.1.2-1 are the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT client initiating establishment of an MCPTT group call with a pre-arranged group i.e., MCPTT users on client 1, client 2 and client 3 belong to the same group which is defined in the MCPTT group management server.

Pre-conditions:

1. A pre-arranged group is an MCPTT group that is pre-defined with MCPTT group ID and member list in the group management server. All members of the group belong to the same MCPTT system.
2. It is assumed that MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 are already registered for receiving MCPTT service and affiliated. Optionally, they may have an activated functional alias to be used during the group communication.
3. Optionally the MCPTT server has subscribed to the MCPTT functional alias controlling server within the MC system for functional alias activation/de-activation updates.
4. Optionally the MCPTT user on MCPTT client 1 has bound a functional alias to the MCPTT group ID (3GPP TS 23.280 [16]).



**Figure 10.6.2.3.1.1.2-1: Pre-arranged group call setup**

1. User at MCPTT client 1 would like to initiate an MCPTT group call with a selected group (identified by MCPTT group ID). The MC service user may select a functional alias.

NOTE 1: MCPTT client 1 need not be aware of the affiliation status of other MCPTT clients to the group while initiating the group call.

NOTE 2: The selected functional alias is not changed during the group call, i.e. a MCPTT client uses the same functional alias until the group call is released or the MCPTT client has left the group call.

2. MCPTT client 1 sends a group call request towards the MCPTT server via the SIP core, which hosts the group selected by the user and identified by MCPTT group ID. The group call request also contains the MCPTT group ID and an SDP offer containing the MCPTT client media parameters. If there is a floor request to transmit, then the group call request contains an indication of an implicit floor request. If the MC service user of MCPTT client 1 has selected a functional alias, then the group call request contains that functional alias. If the group call request contains an implicit floor request it may also include location information.
3. The MCPTT server checks whether the user of MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate a group call for the selected group. If authorized and the group call is ongoing for that MCPTT group ID, the MCPTT server adds the requesting MCPTT client 1 to the existing MCPTT group call and notifies the MCPTT client 1 that the MCPTT group call is already in progress. Otherwise, MCPTT server resolves the MCPTT group ID to determine the members of that group and their affiliation status, based on the information from the group management server. The MCPTT server evaluates the applicable group call start criteria defined for this group (e.g. minimum number of affiliated members, specific members affiliated) and determines whether the group call setup can proceed.

If the functional alias is provided only in the group call request, or via binding, the MCPTT server proceeds with the value that is provided. If the functional alias is provided in both the group call request and via binding, it is up to the MCPTT server implementation to determine a value for the functional alias to be used.

If present, the MCPTT server checks whether the provided functional alias is allowed to be used and has been activated for the user.

If location information was included in the group call request, the MCPTT server checks the privacy policy of the MCPTT user to decide if the location information of MCPTT client 1 can be provided to other users on the call (refer to Annex A.3 "Authorisation to provide location information to other MCPTT users on a call when talking").

NOTE 3: MCPTT server can have already retrieved the user/group configuration data and locally cached. If the user/group configuration data is not locally cached on the MCPTT server then MCPTT server requests the user/group configuration data from the MCPTT user database/group management server.

4. MCPTT server includes information that it communicates using MCPTT service, offers the same media parameters or a subset of the media parameters contained in the initial received request and sends the corresponding group call request via the SIP core towards the MCPTT clients of each of those affiliated group members. MCPTT users are notified about the incoming group call and the functional alias of the group call initiating user is displayed if present. The MCPTT server indicates whether acknowledgement is required for the call and the functional alias of the group call initiating MC service user may be displayed.
5. The receiving MCPTT clients accept the group call request, and a group call response is sent to the group host MCPTT server. This response may contain an acknowledgement. The conditions for sending acknowledgement may be based on configuration. The response may also contain a functional alias of the responding MC service user, which is verified (valid and activated for the user) by the MCPTT server.
6. MCPTT server sends the group call response including the selected media parameters to the MCPTT client 1 through the signalling path to inform about successful call establishment. The response may contain the functional alias, which may be displayed.

NOTE 4: Step 6 can occur at any time following step 4b, and prior to step 7 depending on the conditions to proceed with the call.

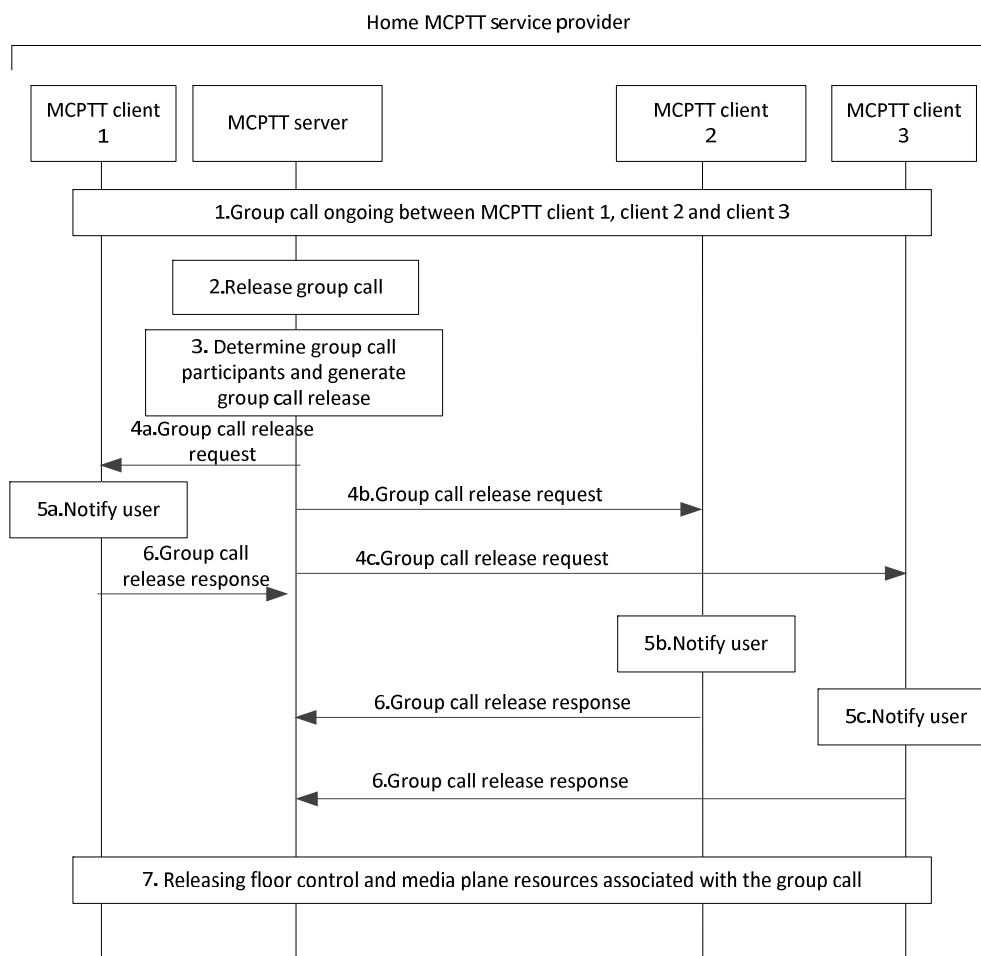
7. If the initiating MCPTT user requires the acknowledgement from affiliated MCPTT group members, and the required MCPTT group members do not acknowledge the call setup within a configured time (the "acknowledged call setup timeout"), then the MCPTT server may proceed with or abandon the call and then notify the initiating MCPTT user that the acknowledgements did not include all required members according to group policy from the group configuration. The MCPTT server may notify the initiating MCPTT user of all MCPTT group members who did not acknowledge the group call request within the configured time. This notification may be sent to the initiating MCPTT user by the MCPTT server more than once during the call when MCPTT users join or leave the MCPTT group call.
8. MCPTT client 1, client 2 and client 3 have successfully established media plane for communication. MCPTT floor participant 1, floor participant 2 and floor participant 3 exchange floor control information e.g., MCPTT client 1 receives the floor granted information over the established media plane assuming implicit floor control request from MCPTT client 1 while at the same time floor participants at other MCPTT client's receive floor taken information. MCPTT client 1 indicates to the MCPTT user that the floor is available to send media, while the other MCPTT clients in the group call will be receiving that media. If audio cut-in policy is enabled for the MCPTT group, floor arbitration follows the logic defined in subclause 10.9.1.5.

NOTE 5: The clients use the same functional alias within floor control procedures as used during group call setup.

#### 10.6.2.3.1.1.3 Release pre-arranged group call

The procedure focuses on the case where an MCPTT server initiates the termination of an ongoing MCPTT group call for all the participants of that group call, since at least one of the termination conditions are met e.g., due to hang time expiry, last participant leaving, second last participant leaving, initiator leaving, or minimum number of affiliated MCPTT group members are not present.

Procedures in figure 10.6.2.3.1.1.3-1 are the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT server initiating termination of an ongoing MCPTT group call.



**Figure 10.6.2.3.1.1.3-1: Release pre-arranged group call**

1. It is assumed that MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1, client 2 and client 3 are already part of the ongoing group call (e.g., as a result of pre-arranged group call setup).
2. MCPTT server would like to release the MCPTT group call which is ongoing e.g., due to hang time expiry, last participant leaving, second last participant leaving, initiator leaving, or minimum number of affiliated MCPTT group members are not present.
3. MCPTT server identifies the participants of the ongoing group call and generates group call release request to release ongoing session.
4. MCPTT server sends a group call release request via SIP core towards each participant of the ongoing group call.
5. MCPTT users are notified about the release of the group call.
6. MCPTT client(s) receiving group call release request, acknowledge towards the MCPTT server by sending a group call release response.
7. MCPTT client 1, client 2 and client 3 have successfully released the floor control and media plane resources associated with the group call that is terminated.

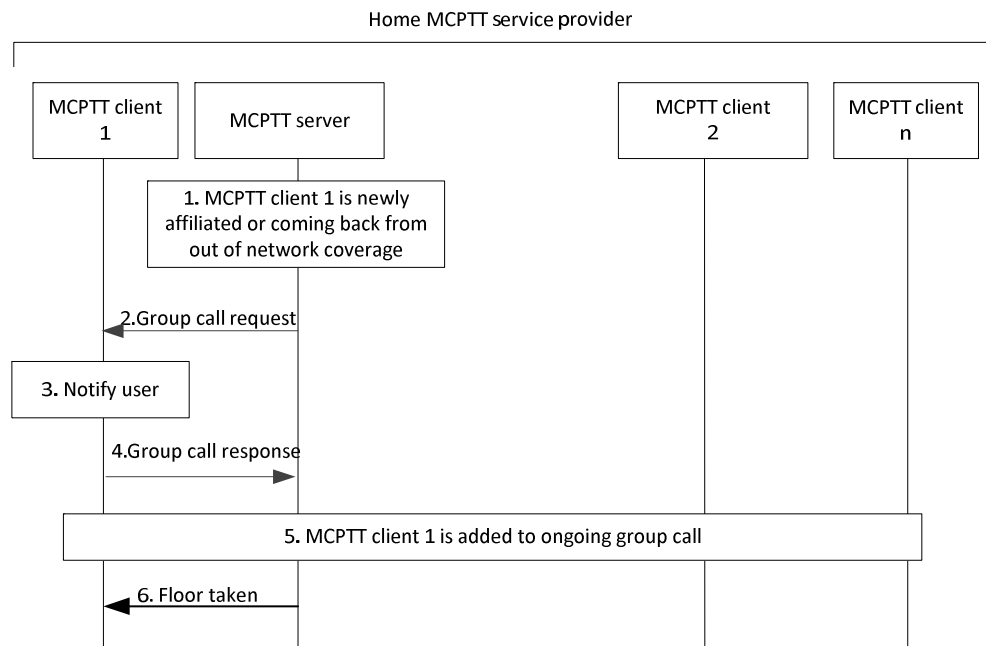
#### 10.6.2.3.1.1.4 Late entry pre-arranged group call

Procedures in figure 10.6.2.3.1.1.4-1 are the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT server requesting a newly affiliated member or a member coming back from out of coverage to join an ongoing MCPTT group call.

NOTE: This procedure applies to all types of group call, including, for example, emergency call, imminent peril call and broadcast call.

Pre-condition:

1. MCPTT group is previously defined on the group management server with MCPTT users affiliated to that group. All members of the group belong to the same MCPTT system.
2. It is assumed that MCPTT users on MCPTT client 2 to MCPTT client n are on an ongoing call. Optionally, the MCPTT users may use activated functional aliases.



**Figure 10.6.2.3.1.1.4-1: Late entry pre-arranged group call**

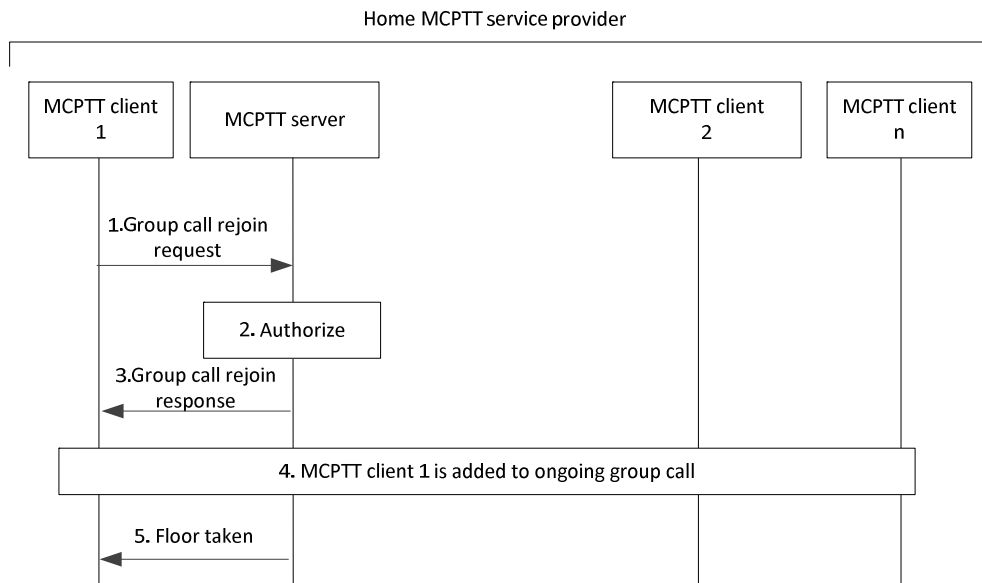
1. MCPTT server determines that MCPTT client 1 which is newly affiliated or coming back from out of coverage has to be invited to join an ongoing group call (late entry).
2. MCPTT server generates group call request including the information such as MCPTT service identifier (possible for the SIP core to route the request to the MCPTT server), MCPTT group ID of the group invited to join, offer one or more media types and sends towards the MCPTT client 1 via SIP core.
3. MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is notified about the incoming group call.
4. Upon MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 accepting the incoming group call request, MCPTT client 1 sends the group call response including the selected media types to the MCPTT server through the signalling path. If the incoming group call request is rejected by the MCPTT client 1, the MCPTT server should not resend the group call request. The group call response may also contain a functional alias of MCPTT client 1.
5. MCPTT client 1 is successfully added to the ongoing group call and MCPTT users at MCPTT client 1 to MCPTT client n may be notified about the MCPTT client 1 joining the group call and the functional alias of MCPTT client 1 may be displayed.
6. The floor taken with the information of the current talker is sent to MCPTT client 1.

#### 10.6.2.3.1.1.5 Rejoining call

Procedures in figure 10.6.2.3.1.1.5-1 are the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT client to rejoin an ongoing MCPTT group call (e.g. coming back from out of coverage).

Pre-conditions:

- It is assumed that MCPTT users on MCPTT client 2 to MCPTT client n are on an ongoing call. Optionally, the MCPTT users may use activated functional aliases.



**Figure 10.6.2.3.1.1.5-1: Rejoin call**

1. MCPTT client 1 has necessary information for rejoining an ongoing group call, then the MCPTT client 1 initiates group call rejoin request including the ongoing group call information. The group call rejoin request may contain a functional alias of MCPTT client 1 as selected by the MC service user.
2. MCPTT server checks whether the MCPTT client 1 can rejoin the ongoing call (e.g. based upon affiliation status) and checks the functional alias, if present.
3. MCPTT client 1 is informed that the group call rejoin is successful by sending a group call rejoin response. If the ongoing group call is emergency or imminent peril group call, the response shall contain emergency or imminent peril indicator.
4. MCPTT client 1 is successfully added to the ongoing group call and MCPTT users at MCPTT client 1 to MCPTT client n may be notified about the MCPTT client 1 joining the group call and the functional alias of MCPTT client 1 may be displayed.
5. The floor taken with the information of the current talker is sent to MCPTT client 1.

#### 10.6.2.3.1.2 Chat group call

##### 10.6.2.3.1.2.1 General

In a chat group (restricted) call model, the MCPTT user individually joins a group call without being invited. The establishment of a chat group (restricted) call does not result in other group members being invited.

Figure 10.6.2.3.1.2.2-1 describes the basic procedure for the MCPTT client initiating an MCPTT group call which uses the chat group (restricted) call model. Restricted means that only users that have been configured as members of the given group are allowed to join the group communications for the given group.

Chat group join mechanism:

- Each MCPTT client sends a group join request when the MCPTT user wants to participate in the group communication for the group. (This message does not impact the MCPTT user's membership in the group; the MCPTT server will verify that the MCPTT user is an authorized member of the group.)

- The group join request may include a request to transmit. If the group join request includes a request to transmit it may also include location information. It is assumed that the group join request will be delivered from MCPTT client to MCPTT server using SIP.
- If location information was included in the group join request, the MCPTT server checks the privacy policy of the MCPTT user to decide if the location information of MCPTT client 1 can be provided to other users on the call (refer to Annex A.3 "Authorisation to provide location information to other MCPTT users on a call when talking").
- The group join request is used to indicate to the MCPTT server that the MCPTT user associated with the given MCPTT client wishes to participate i.e. begin to receive media from or send media to the group.
- The group join request shall cause the MCPTT server to generate an implicit affiliation for the MCPTT user to the group, if the user is not already affiliated to the group.
- The group join request contains the information needed to negotiate media parameters (on demand) or to associate a pre-established session between MCPTT server and MCPTT client for the group call. The group join request can take the form of a SIP invite.
- A selected functional alias is not changed by a MCPTT client during the whole participation within a chat group call, i.e. a MCPTT client uses the same functional alias selected when joining the chat group call until the chat group call is released or the MCPTT client leaves the chat group call.

Subsequent participation in a group call when the group is using the chat model:

- Once an MCPTT client successfully joins a group call which is using the chat model, the MCPTT client connects to the media plane for the call if the call is currently ongoing.
- If the MCPTT group call is not currently ongoing (i.e.: when MCPTT clients on the group call are not sending or receiving media, and the time out between floor control exchanges has expired) then the newly joined MCPTT client will only have pre-established its media parameters for the call.
- If the newly joined MCPTT user wishes to transmit media (start or re-start the call) to the other joined users of the group using the chat model, then the MCPTT client shall use a normal floor control procedure for requesting the floor.
- Since subsequent group call media transmissions are controlled using floor control signalling, additional SIP signalling messages may not be required for subsequent call stop and start.
- Each request to transmit from an MCPTT user could be viewed as a new instance of a group call for the given group when the floor idle timer expires and no media is present for an extended time.
- The MCPTT server may tear down the media plane between successive group calls using the chat model, or the MCPTT server may allow the media plane to remain up between successive group calls using the chat model depending on resources.

Leaving and releasing a chat group:

- When a user wants to leave a chat group call, the client shall send a group call leave request to the server and release the media plane.
- The server can release a chat group call by sending a group call release to all joined clients. A server initiated release also releases the media plane for all joined clients.

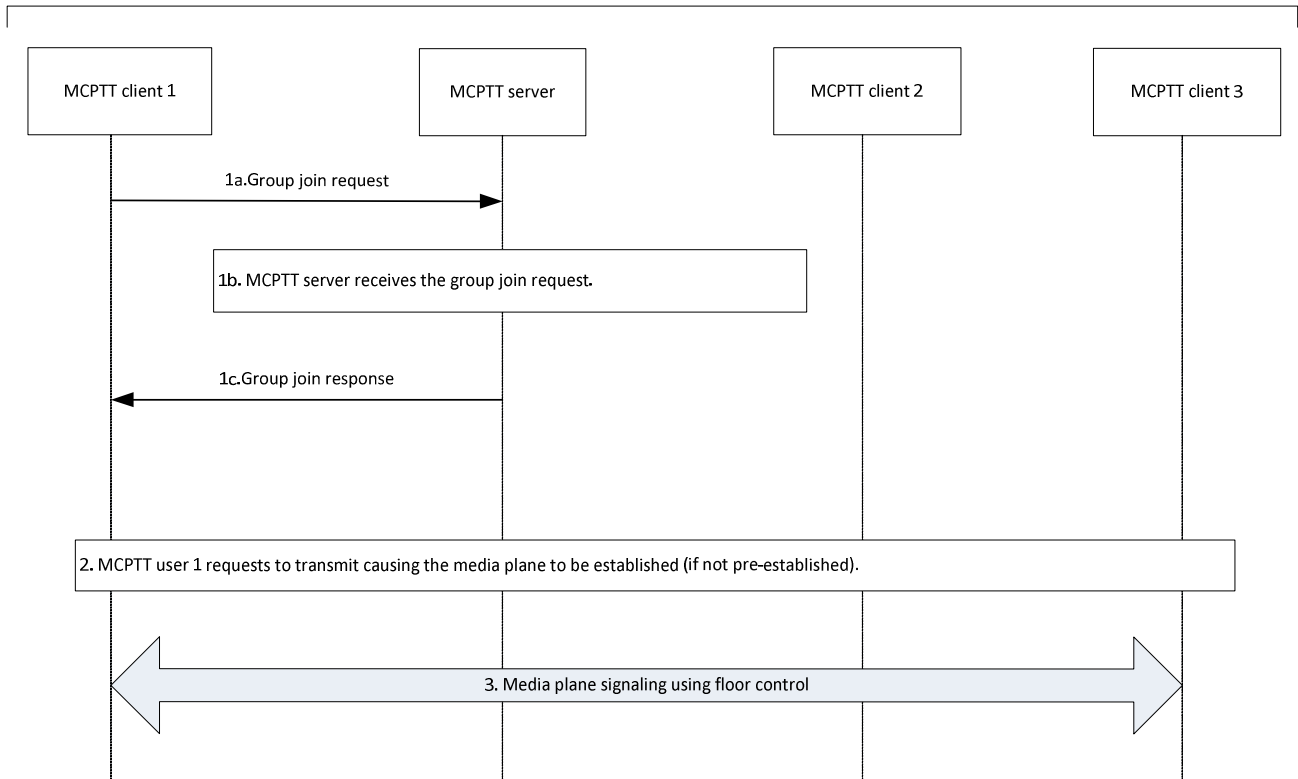
#### 10.6.2.3.1.2.2 Chat group call setup

MCPTT client 1, client 2, and client 3 are served by the home MCPTT service provider in figure 10.6.2.3.1.2.2-1.

Pre-condition:

1. MCPTT user 2 and MCPTT user 3 have previously joined (affiliated) to the group. MCPTT client 1, client 2, and client 3 are registered and all users (MCPTT user 1, user 2, and user 3) have been authenticated and authorized to use the MCPTT service.

2. MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 may have activated functional alias(es) configured to be used during the group call communication. No call is currently in progress for the group.
3. Optionally the MCPTT user on MCPTT client 1 has bound a functional alias to the MCPTT group ID (3GPP TS 23.280 [16]).



**Figure 10.6.2.3.1.2.2-1: MCPTT chat group call**

1. MCPTT user 1 indicates to join the group communication for the group. This may include a request to transmit.

1a. MCPTT client 1 sends a group join request with the MCPTT group ID of the desired group. It contains the MCPTT user's MCPTT ID, the MCPTT client media parameters and optionally a functional alias. If there is a request to transmit, then the group join request contains an indication of an implicit floor request. If the group join request includes an implicit floor request it may also include location information.

1b. The MCPTT server receives the group join request. MCPTT server generates an implicit affiliation (if the MCPTT user is not already affiliated to the group) and verifies that MCPTT user 1 is authorized to affiliate to the group by following the affiliation procedure (subclause 10.8.3 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]).

If the functional alias is provided only in the group call request, or via binding, the MCPTT server proceeds with the value that is provided. If the functional alias is provided in both the group call request and via binding, it is up to the MCPTT server implementation to determine a value for the functional alias to be used.

If present, the MCPTT server checks whether the provided functional alias is allowed to be used and has been activated for the user.

If location information was included in the group join request, the MCPTT server checks the privacy policy of the MCPTT user to decide if the location information of MCPTT client 1 can be provided to other users on the call (refer to Annex A.3 "Authorisation to provide location information to other MCPTT users on a call when talking").

- 1c. The MCPTT server replies with a group join response indicating the acceptance of the group join request and also returns the MCPTT server selected media parameters for the group call in the group join response.
2. If MCPTT user 1 requests to transmit, the MCPTT server establishes the media plane (if not already established) for the call. The associated floor participants for MCPTT client 1, client 2, and client 3 use the floor control procedure to initiate the call. E.g., the floor participant for MCPTT client 1 receives the MCPTT floor grant. The

corresponding floor participants for MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 receive the MCPTT floor taken. If present, the functional alias of MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 are displayed where appropriate.

- Floor control will continue to be used by the floor participants associated with MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 for the duration of the call. Media plane signalling using floor control will be used for subsequent calls for the group as long as one or more users are affiliated. If audio cut-in policy is enabled for the MCPTT group, floor arbitration follows the logic defined in subclause 10.9.1.5.

10.6.2.3.1.2.3 Release chat group call

The procedure describes the case where the MCPTT server releases an ongoing MCPTT group call for all the participants of that group call, since at least one of the conditions for release are met e.g. due to hang time expiry, last participant leaving, second last participant leaving, initiator leaving, or the number of affiliated MCPTT group members is below the minimum number permitted.

NOTE 1: The procedure for an MCPTT user leaving the group call is a different procedure.

Procedures in figure 10.6.2.3.1.2.3-1 are the procedures for the MCPTT server initiating the release of an ongoing MCPTT group call.

The following precondition applies:

- A group call is ongoing between MCPTT clients 1, 2 and 3

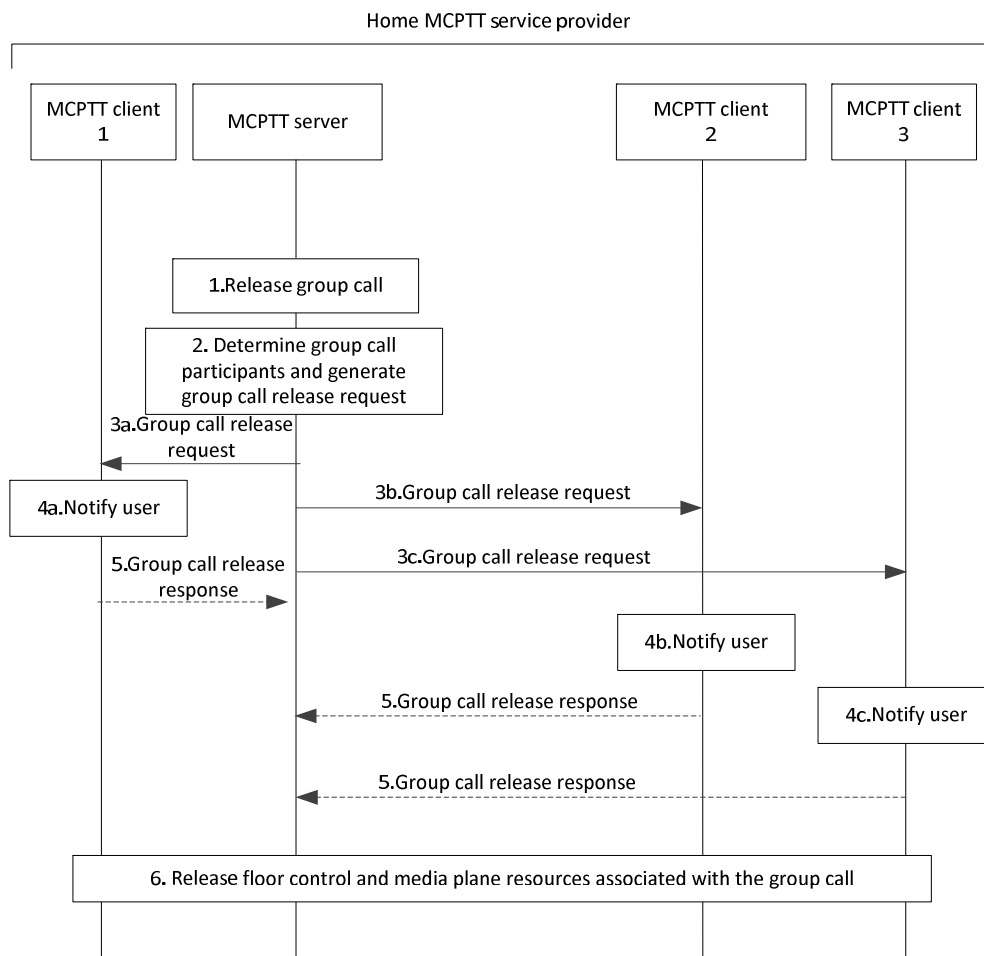


Figure 10.6.2.3.1.2.3-1: Release chat group call

1. MCPTT server would like to release the MCPTT group call which is ongoing e.g., due to hang time expiry, last participant leaving, second last participant leaving, initiator leaving, or minimum number of affiliated MCPTT group members are not present.
2. MCPTT server identifies the participants of the ongoing group call and generates group call release request to release the ongoing session.
3. MCPTT server sends a group call release request towards each participant of the ongoing group call.

NOTE 2: The group call release request can also be sent over SIP signalling on the signalling plane.

4. MCPTT users are notified about the release of the group call.
5. Optionally the MCPTT client(s) receiving group call release request, may send a group call release response to the MCPTT server.

NOTE 3: The MCPTT client can send group call release response when the group call release request is sent using a unicast bearer.

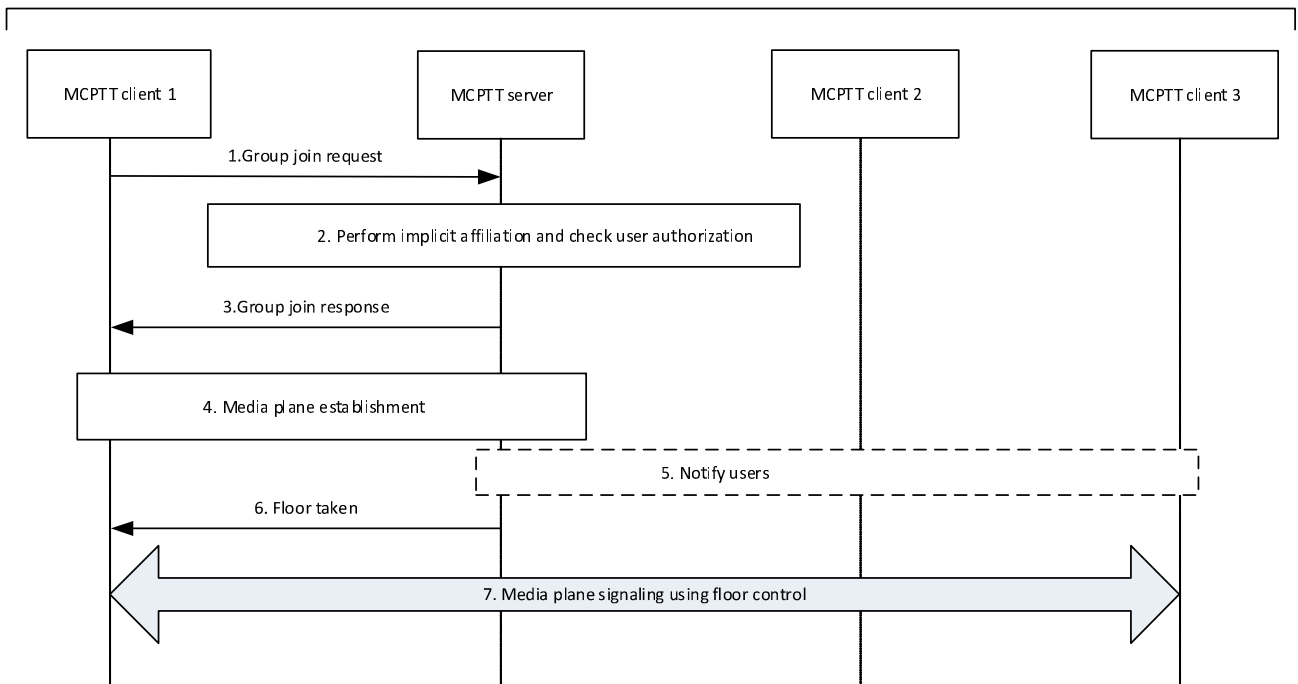
6. MCPTT client 1, client 2 and client 3 release the floor control and media plane resources associated with the group call that is released. Successful release of the group call does not affect the status of affiliation of any of the clients.

#### 10.6.2.3.1.2.4 Late entry chat group call, newly joined group member

Procedures in figure 10.6.2.3.1.2.4-1 are those for a group member entering an ongoing MCPTT group call, i.e. performing a late entry.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT user 2 and MCPTT user 3 have previously joined to the group. MCPTT client 1, client 2, and client 3 are registered and all users (MCPTT user 1, user 2, and user 3) have been authenticated and authorized to use the MCPTT service.
2. MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 may have activated functional alias(es) configured to be used during the group call communication. MCPTT users using MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 are in an ongoing group call. MCPTT client 1 has not yet joined the group call. Optionally, the MCPTT users may use activated functional aliases.
3. MCPTT user 1 indicates to join the group communication for the group.
4. Optionally the MCPTT user on MCPTT client 1 has bound a functional alias to the MCPTT group ID (3GPP TS 23.280 [16]).



**Figure 10.6.2.3.1.2.4-1: Late entry of a newly joined group member**

1. MCPTT client 1 sends a group join request with the MCPTT group ID of the desired group. It contains the MCPTT user's MCPTT ID, the MCPTT client media parameters and optionally a functional alias. If there is a request to transmit, then the group join request contains an indication of an implicit floor request.
2. The MCPTT server receives the group join request. MCPTT server generates an implicit affiliation (if the MCPTT user is not already affiliated to the group) and verifies that MCPTT user 1 is authorized to affiliate to the group.

If the functional alias is provided only in the group call request, or via binding, the MCPTT server proceeds with the value that is provided. If the functional alias is provided in both the group call request and via binding, it is up to the MCPTT server implementation to determine a value for the functional alias to be used.

If present, the MCPTT server checks whether the provided functional alias is allowed to be used and has been activated for the user.

3. The MCPTT server replies with a group join response indicating the acceptance of the group join request.
4. Media plane between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT server is established using media plane control signalling.
5. MCPTT users at MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 may be notified about the MCPTT client 1 joining the group call. The functional aliases of MCPTT client 1 is displayed, if present.
6. The MCPTT server sends a floor taken (for the current talker) to MCPTT client 1.
7. Floor control will continue to be used by the floor participants associated with MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3.

10.6.2.3.1.2.4a void

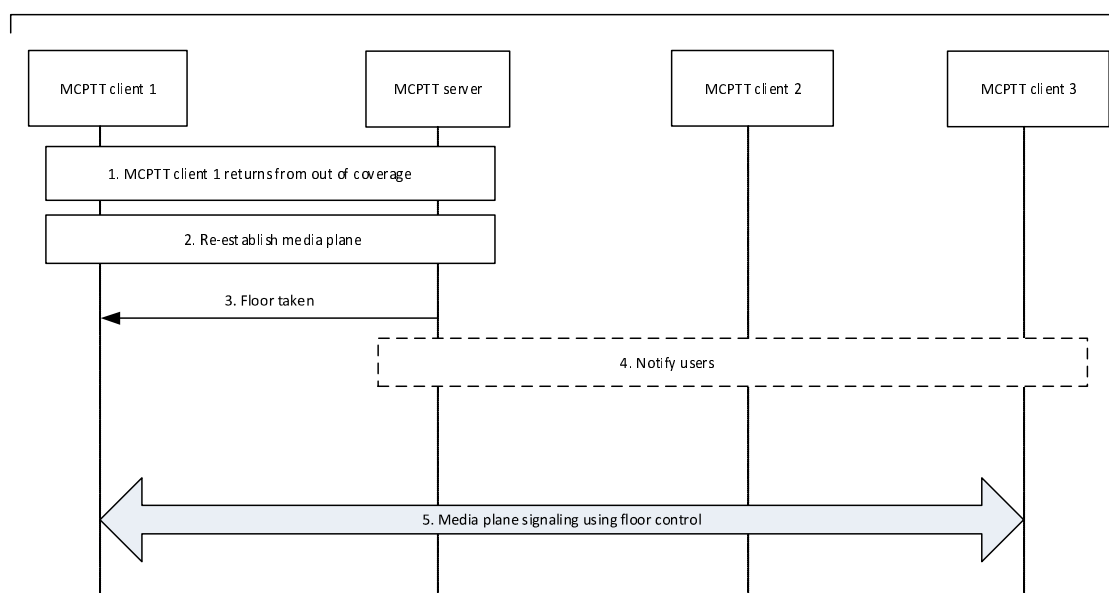
10.6.2.3.1.2.4b void

10.6.2.3.1.2.5 Late entry chat group call, MCPTT client coming back from out of coverage

Procedures in figure 10.6.2.3.1.2.5-1 are those for an MCPTT client coming back from out of coverage during an ongoing MCPTT group call.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 may have activated functional alias(es) configured to be used during the group call communication. MCPTT users using MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 are in an ongoing group call when MCPTT client1 goes out of radio coverage.
2. MCPTT client1 returns from out of coverage while the group call is still ongoing.



**Figure 10.6.2.3.1.2.5-1: Late entry of a MCPTT client returning from out of coverage**

1. MCPTT client 1 or MCPTT server detects that MCPTT client 1 has returned from out of coverage.

NOTE 1: How the MCPTT client or MCPTT server detects that the client has returned from out of coverage is out of scope of the present document.

2. Media plane between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT server is re-established using media plane control signalling.

NOTE 2: Depending on how long MCPTT client 1 was out of coverage, this step can include signalling from MCPTT client 1 to rejoin the chat group.

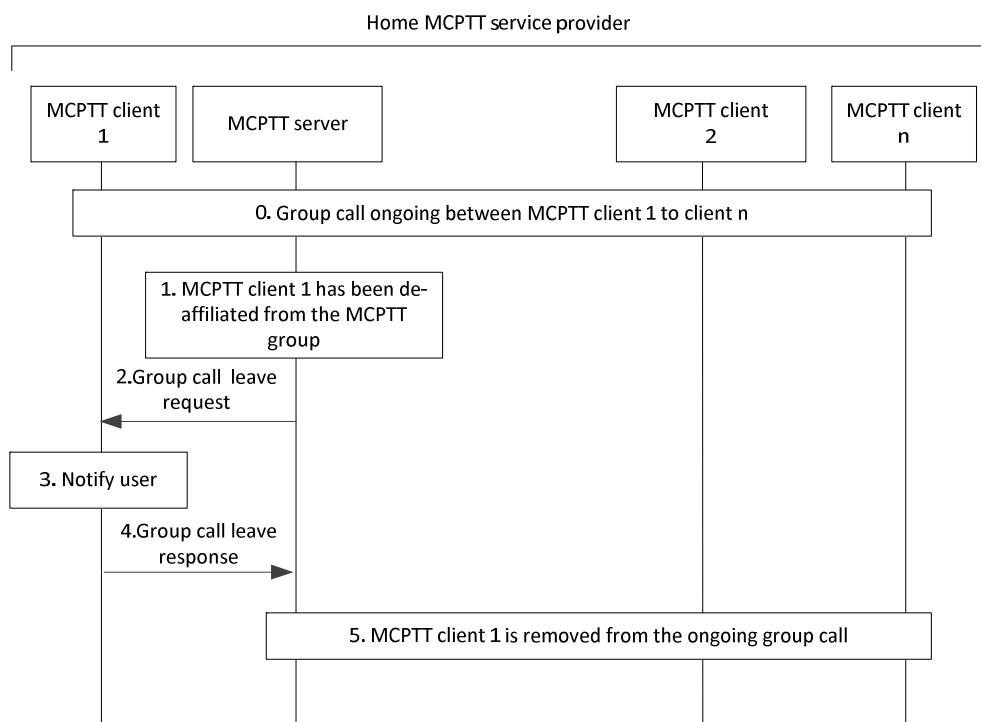
3. MCPTT server sends a floor taken (for the current talker) to MCPTT client 1.
4. MCPTT users at MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 may be notified about the MCPTT client 1 returning to the group call. The functional aliases of MCPTT client 1 is displayed, if present.
5. Floor control will continue to be used by the floor participants associated with MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3.

### 10.6.2.3.2 Exiting group call due to de-affiliation

Procedures in figure 10.6.2.3.2-1 are the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT server requesting a newly de-affiliated member to leave an ongoing MCPTT group call.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT group is previously defined on the group management server with MCPTT users affiliated to that group. All members of the group belong to the same MCPTT system.
2. MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1 to MCPTT client n are on an ongoing call.
3. MCPTT client 1 has been de-affiliated from the MCPTT group.



**Figure 10.6.2.3.2-1: Exiting MCPTT group call due to de-affiliation**

1. MCPTT client 1 which has been de-affiliated is instructed to leave the ongoing group call.
2. MCPTT server sends a group call leave request to MCPTT client 1.
3. MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is notified about leaving the group call.
4. MCPTT client 1 sends the group call leave response and leaves the group call.
5. MCPTT client 1 is now removed from the ongoing group call and MCPTT users at MCPTT client 2 to MCPTT client n may be notified that MCPTT client 1 has left the group call.

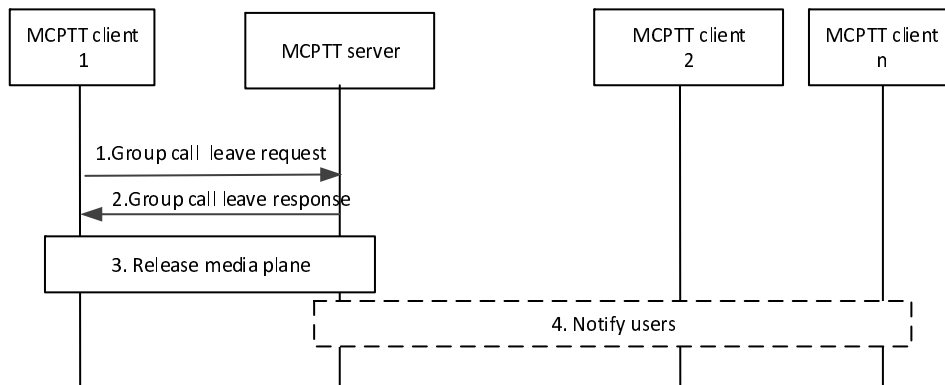
### 10.6.2.3.3 MCPTT user leaving a group call

Procedures in figure 10.6.2.3.3-1 are the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT user leaving an ongoing MCPTT group call.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT group is previously defined on the group management server with MCPTT users affiliated to that group. All members of the group belong to the same MC system.

2. MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1 to MCPTT client n are on an ongoing call.
3. MCPTT user 1 indicates to leave the group call.



**Figure 10.6.2.3.3-1: MCPTT user leaving a group call**

1. MCPTT client 1 sends a group call leave request to the MCPTT server.
2. MCPTT server sends a group call leave response to MCPTT client 1.
3. Release of floor control and media plane resources associated with the group call for MCPTT client 1.

NOTE 1: MCPTT server checks if group call termination conditions are met, e.g. hang time expiry, last participant leaving, second last participant leaving, initiator leaving, minimum number of affiliated MCPTT group members are not present. If at least one of the group call termination conditions is met, the MCPTT server releases the group call for all participants (see subclauses 10.6.2.3.1.1.3 Release pre-arranged group call and 10.6.2.3.1.2.3 Release chat group call).

4. MCPTT users at MCPTT client 2 to MCPTT client n may be notified that the MCPTT user of client 1 has left the group call. The functional alias of MCPTT client 1 is displayed, if present.

NOTE 2: The MCPTT server does not perform late entry for MCPTT users that have left the group call.

## 10.6.2.4 Group call involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems

### 10.6.2.4.1 Group call for non-broadcast temporary groups across multiple MCPTT systems

#### 10.6.2.4.1.1 Group call setup

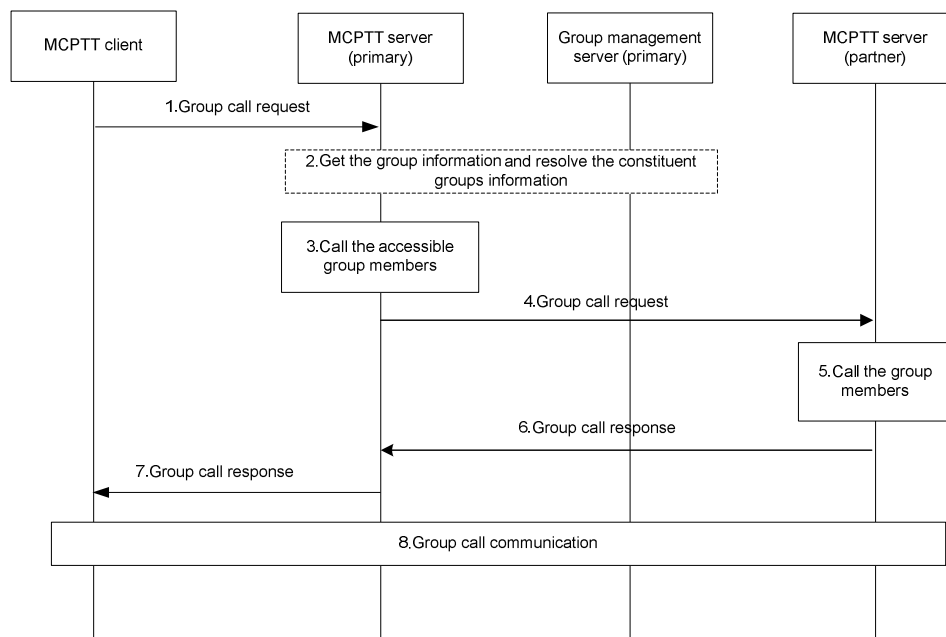
##### 10.6.2.4.1.1.1 Group call setup procedure – originating side

Figure 10.6.2.4.1.1.1-1 illustrates the originating side group call involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems. It considers the scenario for group hierarchies and non-broadcast temporary groups formed by group regroup. The protocol followed may be SIP.

Pre-conditions:

1. The security aspects of sharing the user information between primary and partner MCPTT systems shall be governed as per the service provider agreement between them. In this case, we consider the partner MCPTT system does not share their users' information to the primary MCPTT system.

2. The MCPTT user belongs to an MCPTT group hosted by the primary MCPTT system.
3. A non-broadcast temporary group is formed by authorized MCPTT user/dispatcher by the group regroup procedure (subclause 10.2.4.2 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]) and identified via a temporary MCPTT group ID.
4. The affiliated MCPTT group members of the constituent MCPTT groups have been implicitly affiliated to the temporary group.
5. The authorized MCPTT user/dispatcher created the temporary group on the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system.
6. The constituent groups of the temporary group may belong to MCPTT servers of the partner MCPTT systems.



**Figure 10.6.2.4.1.1-1: Group call setup involving non-broadcast temporary groups from multiple MCPTT systems (originating)**

1. The affiliated MCPTT user via MCPTT client initiates a group call with an MCPTT group ID. A group call request message with the MCPTT group ID is routed to the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system, which owns the group and is where the authorized MCPTT user/dispatcher created the temporary group. If the group call is for a temporary group formed by the group regroup procedure, the MCPTT group ID will be a temporary MCPTT group ID.
2. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system gets the group information (either from group management server or itself) including the constituent MCPTT groups' identities, accessible group members list of the constituent groups, and other related data.
3. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system initiates directly a call request to the accessible group members using the detailed user information and/or location information. The group members upon receipt of the call request may accept or reject the call.
4. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system may not have access to group members' information of the constituent group belonging to the partner MCPTT system. For such group members, the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system initiates a group call request message to the MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system with the target group's MCPTT group ID information.
5. The MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system further initiates a call request to the constituent group's members as described in step 3.
6. The MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system provides a group call response to the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system with success or failure result and/or detailed reason information if there is a failure.

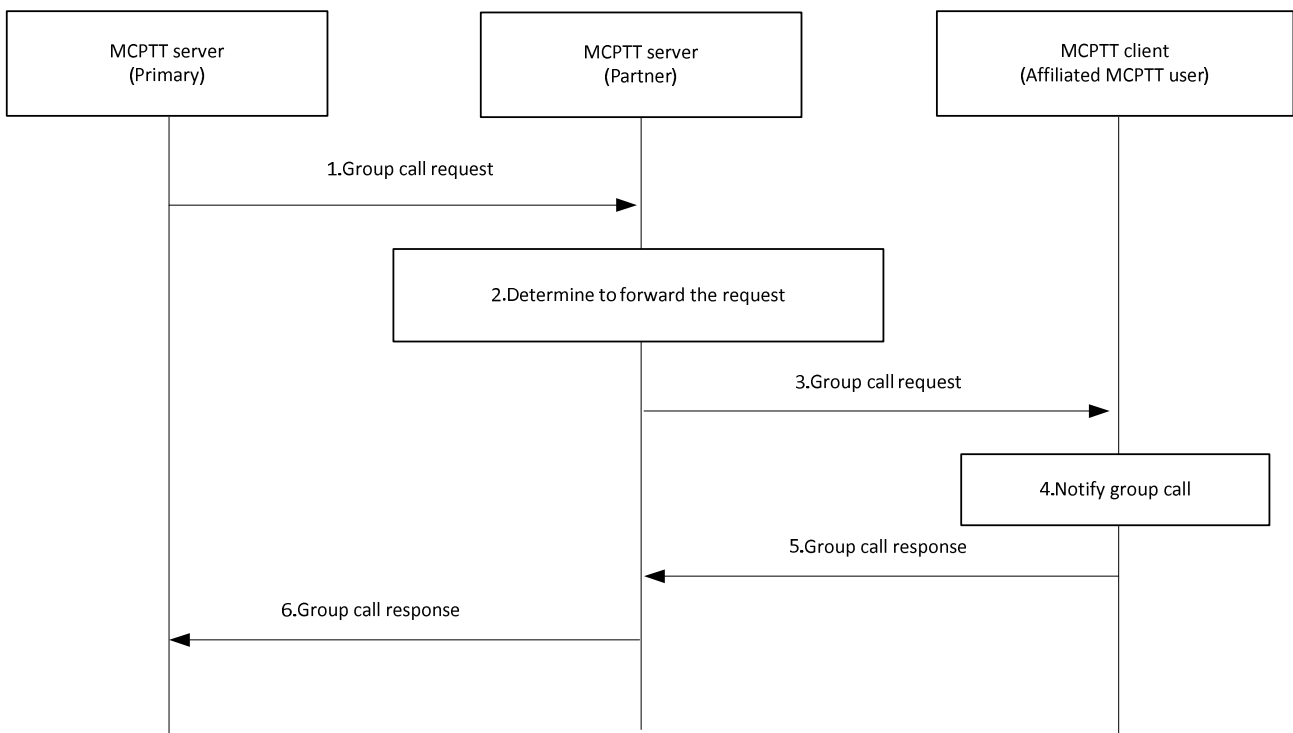
7. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system provides a group call response message to the MCPTT client of the affiliated MCPTT user upon receiving responses to the call requests sent to members of primary and partner MCPTT systems. The group call response message will consist of the success or failure result and/or detailed reason information if there is a failure.

NOTE: The group call response message is triggered depending on the conditions to proceed with the call.

8. Upon successful call setup completion a group call is established for the group members from constituent groups of multiple MCPTT servers.

10.6.2.4.1.1.2 Group call setup procedure – terminating side

The procedure in figure 10.6.2.4.1.1.2-1 illustrates the terminating side group call involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems. It considers the scenario for group hierarchies and non-broadcast temporary groups formed by group regroup. The protocol followed may be SIP.



**Figure 10.6.2.4.1.1.2-1: Non-broadcast group call involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems (terminating)**

1. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system sends the group call request message to the MCPTT server(s) of the partner MCPTT system.
2. The MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system determines whether to forward the group call request message to the MCPTT client(s) based on the user affiliation.
3. The MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system forwards the group call request message to MCPTT client(s). The MCPTT server indicates whether acknowledgement is required for the call.
4. The MCPTT user is notified about the incoming MCPTT group call.
5. The receiving MCPTT client(s) accept the group call request and a group call response message is sent to the MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system. This response may contain an acknowledgement. The conditions for sending acknowledgement may be based on configuration.
6. The MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system forwards the group call response message to the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system (i.e. group hosting MCPTT server for the group call involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems).

10.6.2.4.1.2 Group call release

The procedure focuses on the case where the group host MCPTT server releases an ongoing MCPTT group call for all the participants of that group call involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems, since at least one of the release conditions are met e.g., due to hang time expiry, last participant leaving, second last participant leaving, initiator leaving, or minimum number of affiliated MCPTT group members are not present.

NOTE: The scenario of MCPTT user leaving the group call is not considered in this procedure.

Figure 10.6.2.4.1.2-1 illustrates the procedure for the MCPTT server releasing an ongoing MCPTT group call involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system is controlling the group call involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems.
2. The MCPTT client 1 belongs to group of the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system and the MCPTT client 2 and client 3 belong to the groups of the MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system.
3. The MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1, client 2 and client 3 are already part of the ongoing group call (e.g., as a result of group call setup involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems).

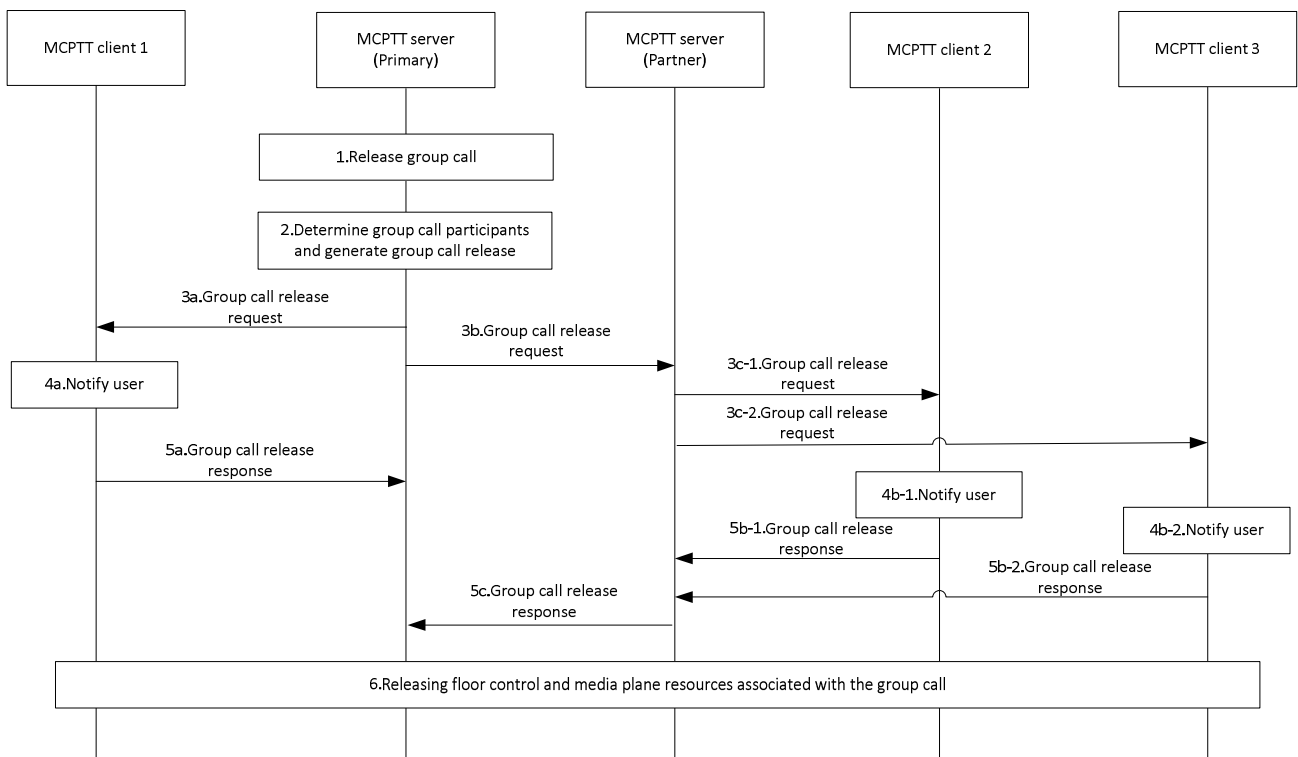


Figure 10.6.2.4.1.2-1: Group call release involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems

1. The MCPTT server of primary MCPTT system would like to release the MCPTT group call which is ongoing e.g., due to hang timer expiry, last participant leaving, second last participant leaving, initiator leaving, or minimum number of affiliated MCPTT group members are not present.
2. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system identifies the participants of the ongoing group call and generates group call release message to release ongoing session.
3. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system initiates a group call release request message via SIP core towards each accessible participant of the ongoing group call (3a). The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system may not have access to group members' information of the constituent group belonging to a partner MCPTT system. For such group members, the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system initiates a group call release request message (3b) to the MCPTT server(s) of the partner MCPTT system(s) with the target

group's MCPTT group ID information. The MCPTT server(s) of the partner MCPTT system(s) further initiate group call release request messages (3c-1, 3c-2) to its group's users.

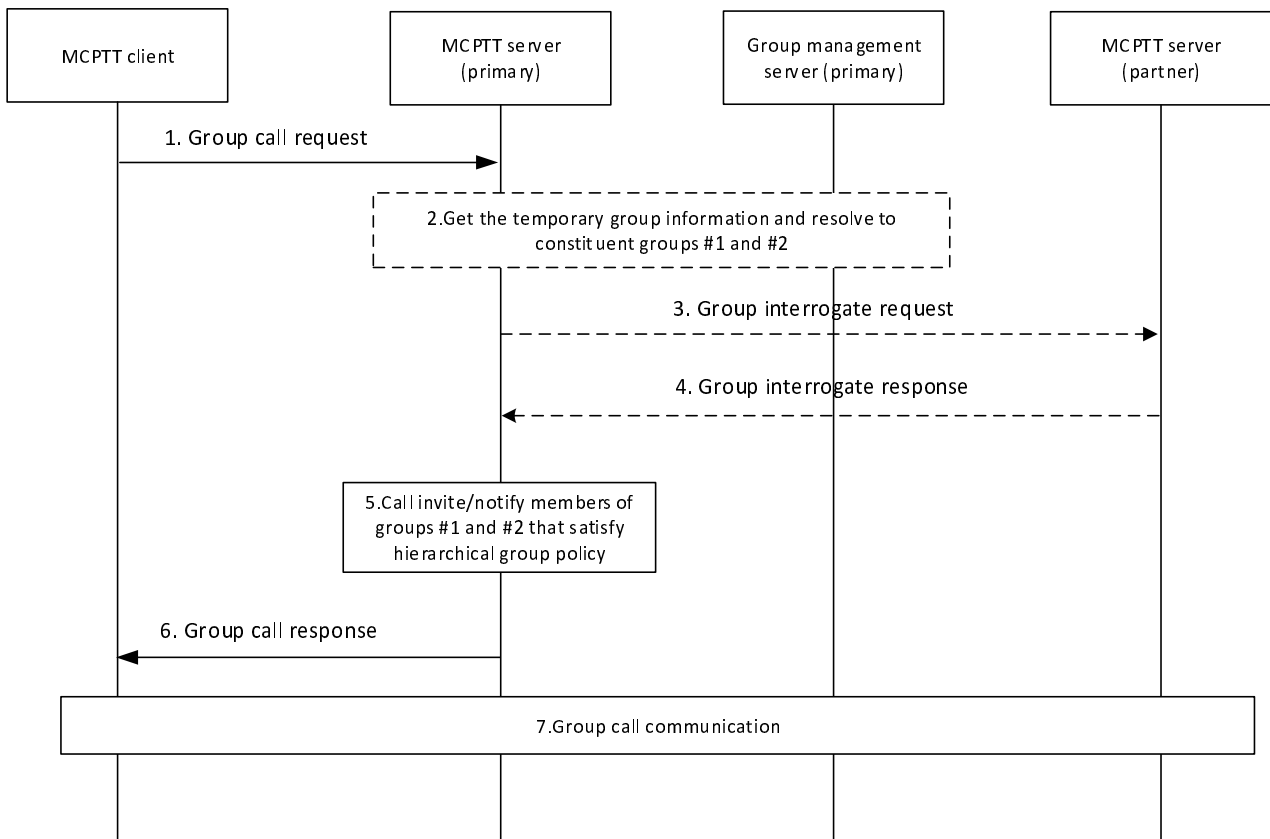
4. The MCPTT users are notified about the release of the group call.
5. The MCPTT client(s) receiving the group call release request messages provide group call release response to the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system. The MCPTT client(s) of the MCPTT users belonging to partner MCPTT system(s) route their responses via the MCPTT server(s) of the partner MCPTT system(s).
6. The MCPTT client 1, client 2 and client 3 have successfully released the floor control and media plane resources associated with the group call that is released.

#### 10.6.2.4.2 Group call for non-broadcast temporary group formed by group regroup procedure involving multiple MCPTT systems via trusted mode

Figure 10.6.2.4.2-1 illustrates a group call involving a non-broadcast temporary group formed by group regroup from multiple MCPTT systems. The protocol followed may be SIP.

Pre-conditions:

1. The security aspects of sharing the user information between primary and partner MCPTT systems shall be governed as per the service provider agreement between them. In this case, we consider the partner MCPTT system shares their users' information to the primary MCPTT system.
2. The MCPTT user belongs to an MCPTT group hosted by the primary MCPTT system.
3. A non-broadcast temporary group is formed by authorized MCPTT user/dispatcher by the group regroup procedure (subclause 10.2.4.2 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]) and identified via a temporary MCPTT group ID.
4. The MCPTT group members of the constituent MCPTT groups belonging to the temporary group are affiliated to participate in a group call for the temporary group.
5. The authorized MCPTT user/dispatcher created the temporary group on the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system.
6. The constituent groups of the temporary group may belong to MCPTT servers of the partner MCPTT systems.



**Figure 10.6.2.4.2-1: Group call involving non-broadcast temporary group formed by group regroup from multiple MCPTT systems**

1. The affiliated MCPTT user via MCPTT client initiates a group call with an MCPTT group ID. A group call request message with the MCPTT group ID is routed to the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system, which owns the temporary group formed by group regroup procedure, and is also where the authorized MCPTT user/dispatcher has created the temporary group. The MCPTT group ID will be a temporary MCPTT group ID.
2. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system gets the group information (either from group management server or itself) including the constituent MCPTT groups' identities, and other related data.
3. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system may interrogate the MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system for the affiliated group 2 members.
4. The MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system responds with a list of the affiliated group members of group 2.

NOTE 1: Steps 3 and 4 do not occur if the constituent groups' information is available and up to date at primary MCPTT system due to the procedure for temporary group formation as defined in subclause 10.2.4.2 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

5. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system verifies the commencement policies of the temporary group, and initiates a call invitation or call notification to the affiliated members of groups 1 and 2.
6. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system provides group call response message to the MCPTT UE of authorized MCPTT user/dispatcher upon receiving responses to the call invitations sent to members of primary and partner MCPTT systems. The group call response will consist of the success or failure result and/or detailed reason information if there is a failure.
7. Upon successful call setup completion, a group call is established for the group members belonging to constituent groups of multiple MCPTT systems.

NOTE 2: MCPTT clients are generally aware that their (constituent) groups have been regrouped (e.g., see subclause 10.1.5.3 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]); however, if not, the partner MCPTT server of the constituent group can also respond to a group call request with a redirection response, such as "moved temporarily" that includes the group URI of the temporary group formed by group regroup procedure.

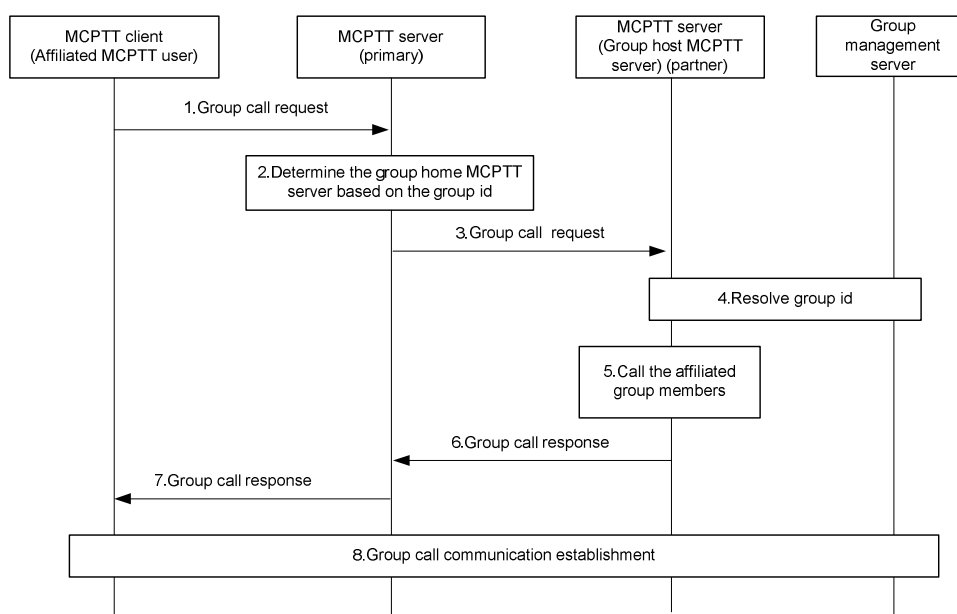
### 10.6.2.4.3 Group call for an MCPTT group defined in the partner MCPTT system

#### 10.6.2.4.3.1 Pre-arranged group call setup procedure – initiating side

Figure 10.6.2.4.3.1-1 illustrates the pre-arranged group call setup procedure for an MCPTT group defined in the partner MCPTT system.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT group is defined on the group management server which is located in the partner MCPTT system with MCPTT users affiliated to that group.
2. The members of the MCPTT group defined in partner MCPTT system belong to different MCPTT systems.



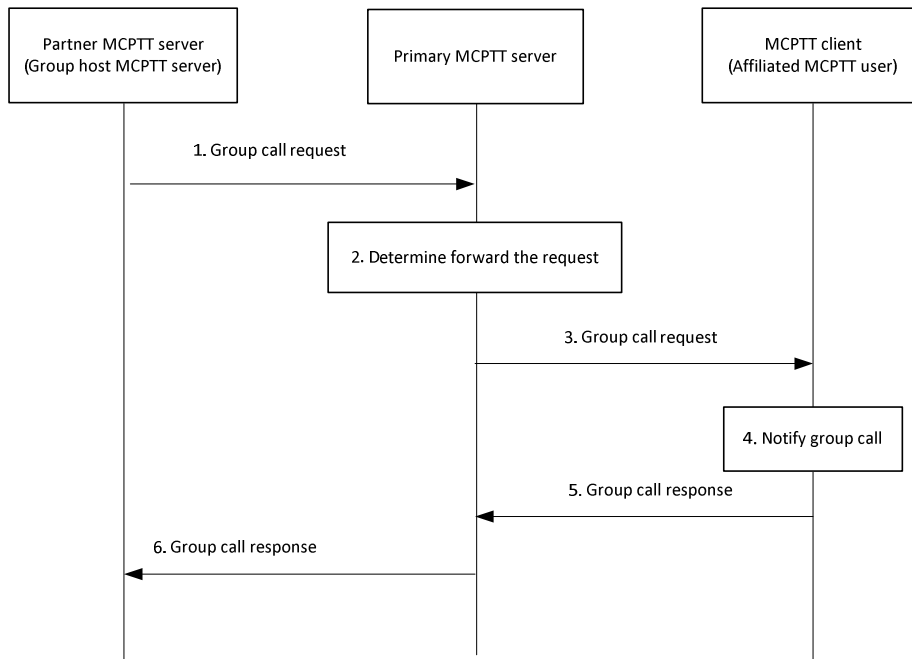
**Figure 10.6.2.4.3.1-1: Pre-arranged group call setup for an MCPTT group defined in partner MCPTT system (initiating)**

1. The affiliated MCPTT user via MCPTT client initiates a group call with an MCPTT group ID. A group call request message with the MCPTT group ID is routed to the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system.
2. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system determines the group home MCPTT server where the MCPTT group is defined.
3. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system forwards the group call request to the MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system which owns the group and is where the authorized MCPTT user/dispatcher created the temporary group.
4. The MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system checks whether the user of MCPTT client is authorized for initiating the group call for the selected group. If authorized, it resolves the MCPTT group ID to determine the members of that group and their affiliation status, based on the information from group management server.
5. The MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system initiates a call request to the group's affiliated members.
6. The MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system provides a group call response message to the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system of the MCPTT client. The group call response message will consist of the success or failure result and/or detailed reason information if there is a failure.

7. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system forwards the group call response message to the MCPTT client.
8. Upon successful call setup completion a group call is established for the group members.

#### 10.6.2.4.3.2 Pre-arranged group call setup – terminating side

The procedure described in figure 10.6.2.4.3.2-1 is used for pre-arranged group call setup when acknowledgement is required from at least some of the call recipients.



**Figure 10.6.2.4.3.2-1: Pre-arranged group call setup for an MCPTT group defined in partner MCPTT system (terminating)**

1. MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system sends the group call request message towards the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system of the MCPTT client.
2. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system determines whether to forward the group call request message to the MCPTT client based on the user profile.
3. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system forwards the group call request message to MCPTT client. The MCPTT server indicates whether acknowledgement is required for the call.
4. MCPTT user is notified about the incoming group call.
5. The receiving MCPTT client accepts the group call and a response message is sent to the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system. This response may contain an acknowledgement. The conditions for sending acknowledgement may be based on configuration.
6. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system forwards the response message to the MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system (i.e. group hosting MCPTT server).

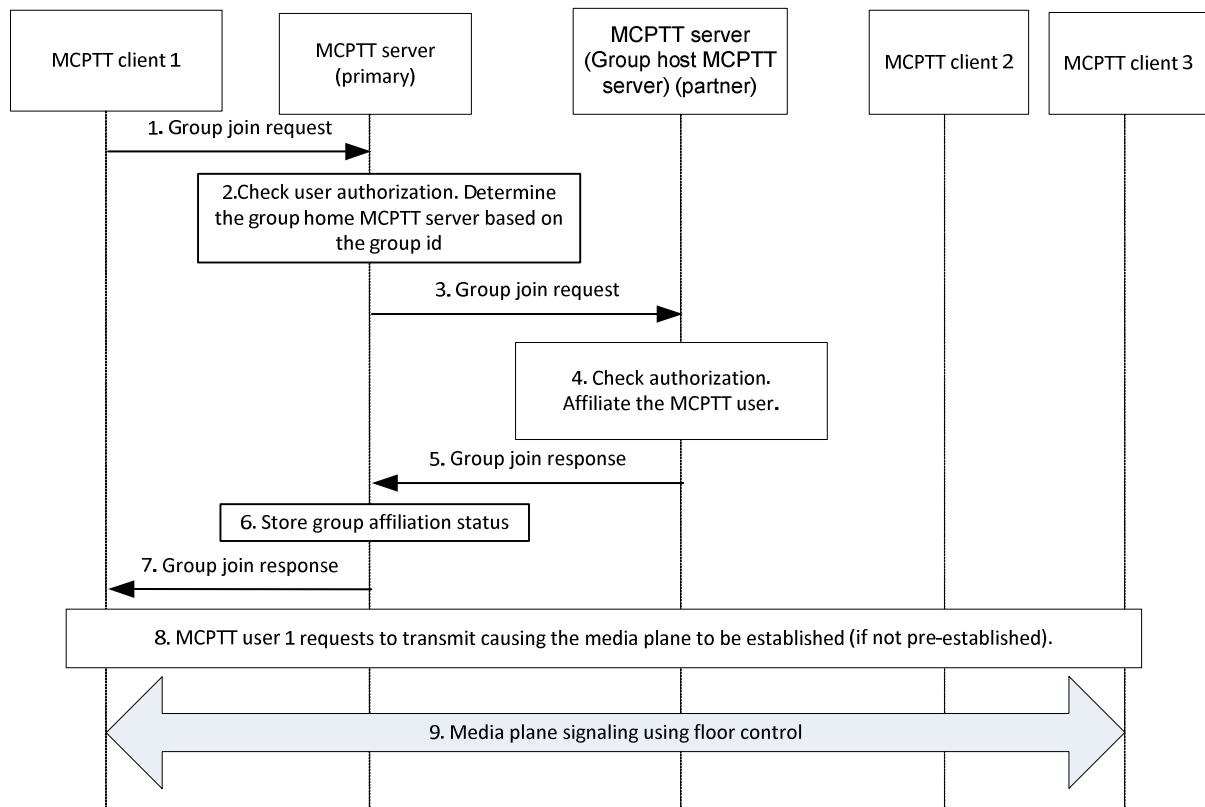
#### 10.6.2.4.3.3 Chat group call setup

Figure 10.6.2.4.3.3-1 illustrates the group call setup procedure for an MCPTT chat group defined in the partner MCPTT system.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT users of MCPTT clients 1, 2 and 3 are members of a chat group that is defined in the partner MCPTT system.

2. MCPTT user 2 and MCPTT user 3 have previously joined (affiliated) to the group. MCPTT client 1, client 2, and client 3 are registered and all users (MCPTT user 1, user 2, and user 3) have been authenticated and authorized to use the MCPTT service.
3. MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 may have activated functional alias(es) configured to be used during the group call communication.
4. No call is currently in progress for the group.
5. Optionally the MCPTT user on MCPTT client 1 has bound a functional alias to the MCPTT group ID (3GPP TS 23.280 [16]).



**Figure 10.6.2.4.3.3-1: Chat group call setup for an MCPTT group defined in partner MCPTT system**

1. MCPTT client 1 sends a group join request with the MCPTT group ID of the desired group. If there is a request to transmit, then the group join request contains an indication of an implicit floor request.
2. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system verifies that MCPTT user 1 is authorized to affiliate to the group by following the affiliation procedure (subclause 10.8.3.2 / 10.8.3.2a in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]). The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system determines the group home MCPTT server where the MCPTT group is defined.
3. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system forwards the group join request to the partner MCPTT server i.e. to the the group home MCPTT server.
4. The partner MCPTT server receives the group join request. The partner MCPTT server generates an implicit affiliation (if the MCPTT user 1 is not already affiliated to the group) and verifies that MCPTT user 1 is authorized to affiliate to the group by following the affiliation procedure (subclause 10.8.3 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]).

If the functional alias is provided only in the group call request, or via binding, the MCPTT server proceeds with the value that is provided. If the functional alias is provided in both the group call request and via binding, it is up to the MCPTT server implementation to determine a value for the functional alias to be used.

If present, the MCPTT server checks whether the provided functional alias is allowed to be used and has been activated for the user.

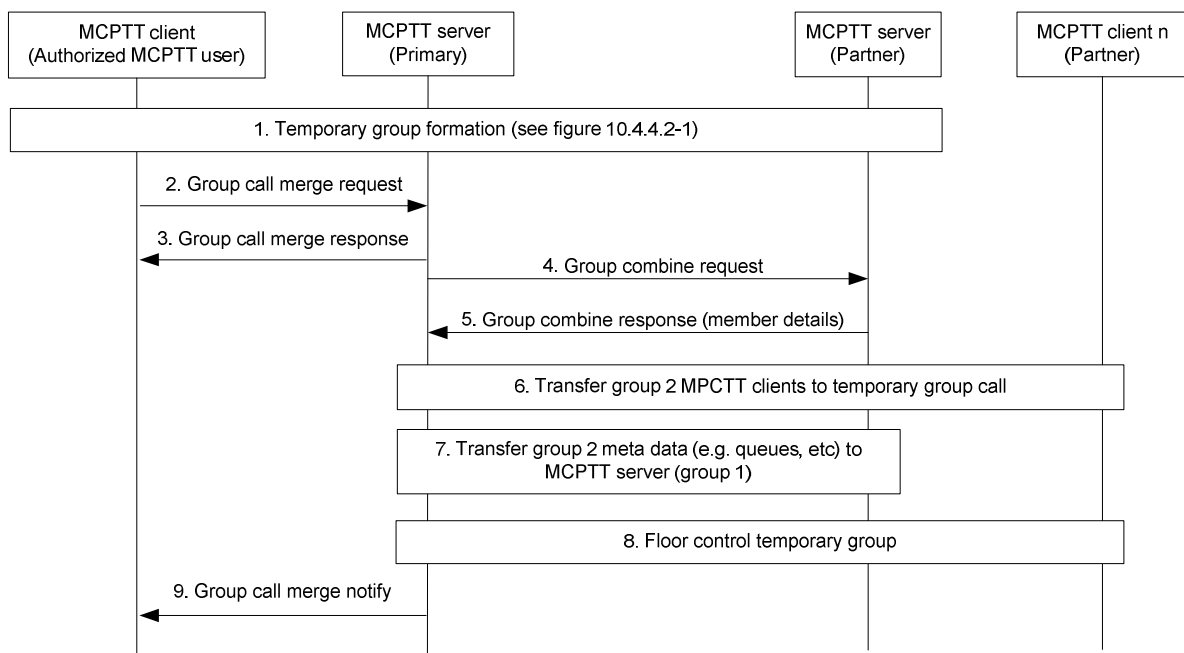
5. The MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system replies with a group join response indicating the acceptance of the group join request and also including the MCPTT server selected media parameters for the group call.
6. The primary MCPTT server stores the affiliation status of the user for the requested MCPTT group.
7. The primary MCPTT server forwards the group join response to the MCPTT client.
8. The MCPTT user 1 requests to transmit, causing the media plane to be established (if not already established) for the call.
9. Floor control will continue to be used by the floor participants associated with MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 for the duration of the call. Media plane signalling using floor control will be used for subsequent calls for the group as long as one or more users are affiliated.

#### 10.6.2.4.4 Merging of groups involving multiple MCPTT systems

Figure 10.6.2.4.4-1 below illustrates the merging of MCPTT clients in a newly formed temporary group with active group calls.

Pre-conditions:

1. The temporary group consists of group 1, which is hosted by the primary MCPTT system, and group 2, which is hosted by the partner MCPTT system.
2. Both group 1 and group 2 have active calls.
3. The group management client of the authorized MCPTT user belongs to the primary MCPTT system.



**Figure 10.6.2.4.4-1: Merging of groups involving multiple MCPTT systems**

1. The temporary group formation - group regrouping involving multiple MCPTT systems, according to subclause 10.2.4.2 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16], takes place.
2. The MCPTT client of the authorized MCPTT user requests group call merge operation to MCPTT server hosting group 1. The identities of the groups being combined are included in this message.
3. The MCPTT server (primary) responds with an OK response.

4. The MCPTT server (primary) sends a group combine request to the MCPTT server (partner) that is hosting group 2.
5. The MCPTT server (partner) responds with a list members of group 2 and an indication of which members are affiliated and which are active in the call.
6. The MCPTT server (primary) contacts the active members of group 2 inviting them to join the temporary group call.
7. The MCPTT server (partner) transfers group 2's floor status data (including pending requests and queue positions) to the primary MCPTT server and combines this with the group 1's floor status data in order to create the temporary group's floor status data.
8. The MCPTT server (primary) performs floor control for the temporary group.
9. The MCPTT server (primary) notifies the MCPTT client of the authorised MCPTT user that the active calls have been merged.

NOTE: The MCPTT server in primary system revokes and queues floor given to one of the two talkers based on the arbitration result for the temporary group.

### 10.6.2.5 Broadcast group call

#### 10.6.2.5.1 General

A broadcast group call is a special group call where the initiating MCPTT user expects no response from the other MCPTT users, so that when his transmission is complete, so is the call.

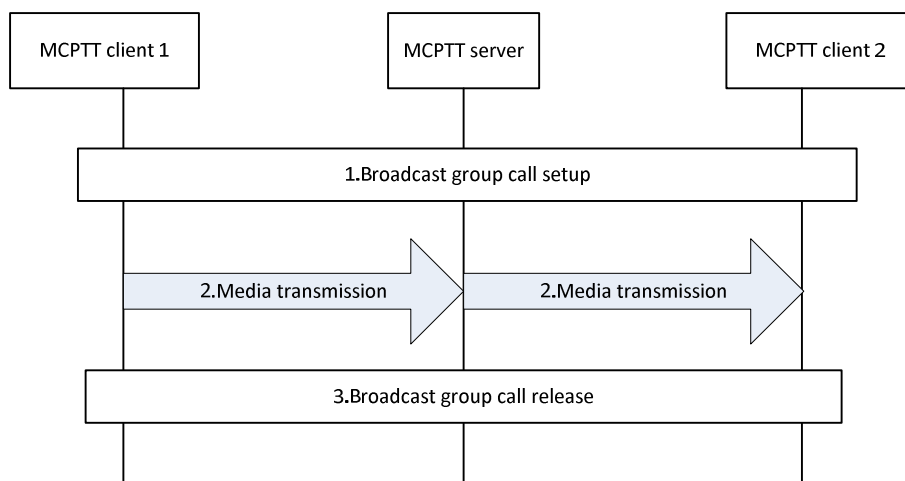
#### 10.6.2.5.2 Common broadcast group call procedure

The group-broadcast group and the broadcast regrouped group are similar in structure (a collection of groups). Similarly the user-broadcast group and the pre-arranged group (a collection of users) are similar in structure. Only the call originator can transmit media during the broadcast group call and the broadcast group call is released when the transmission is complete, unless the call originator is overridden.

Figure 10.6.2.5.2-1 illustrates the common procedure for group-broadcast group call, user-broadcast group call, and broadcast regrouped group call.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 are members of a group-broadcast group/user-broadcast group/broadcast regroup group.
2. Optionally, MCPTT client 1 may have an activated functional alias for the group communication.
3. The MCPTT server may have subscribed to the MCPTT functional alias controlling server within the MC system for functional alias activation/de-activation updates.



**Figure 10.6.2.5.2-1: Broadcast group call**

1. MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 initiates the broadcast group call setup procedure with the indication of broadcast group call. The signalling procedure is identical to the group call setup as described in subclause 10.6.2 with the inclusion of the parameter for broadcast group call indicator. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 may include a functional alias used for the broadcast group call and the MCPTT server checks whether the provided functional alias can be used and has been activated for the MCPTT user.

NOTE 1: Broadcast group call applies to both pre-arranged and chat group call model. In the chat group call model case, the broadcast group call setup procedure is done by floor control signalling.

2. MCPTT client 1 starts to transmit media.

NOTE 2: Only the call originating MCPTT user is allowed to transmit media on broadcast group call, unless overridden.

NOTE 3: A broadcast group call transmitted on a user-broadcast group has priority over group calls involving users within the user hierarchy. A broadcast group call transmitted on a group-broadcast group has priority over group calls on its subordinate groups.

3. If the media transmission from call originating MCPTT user is complete, the broadcast group call is released.

#### 10.6.2.5.2.1 Group-broadcast group call procedure

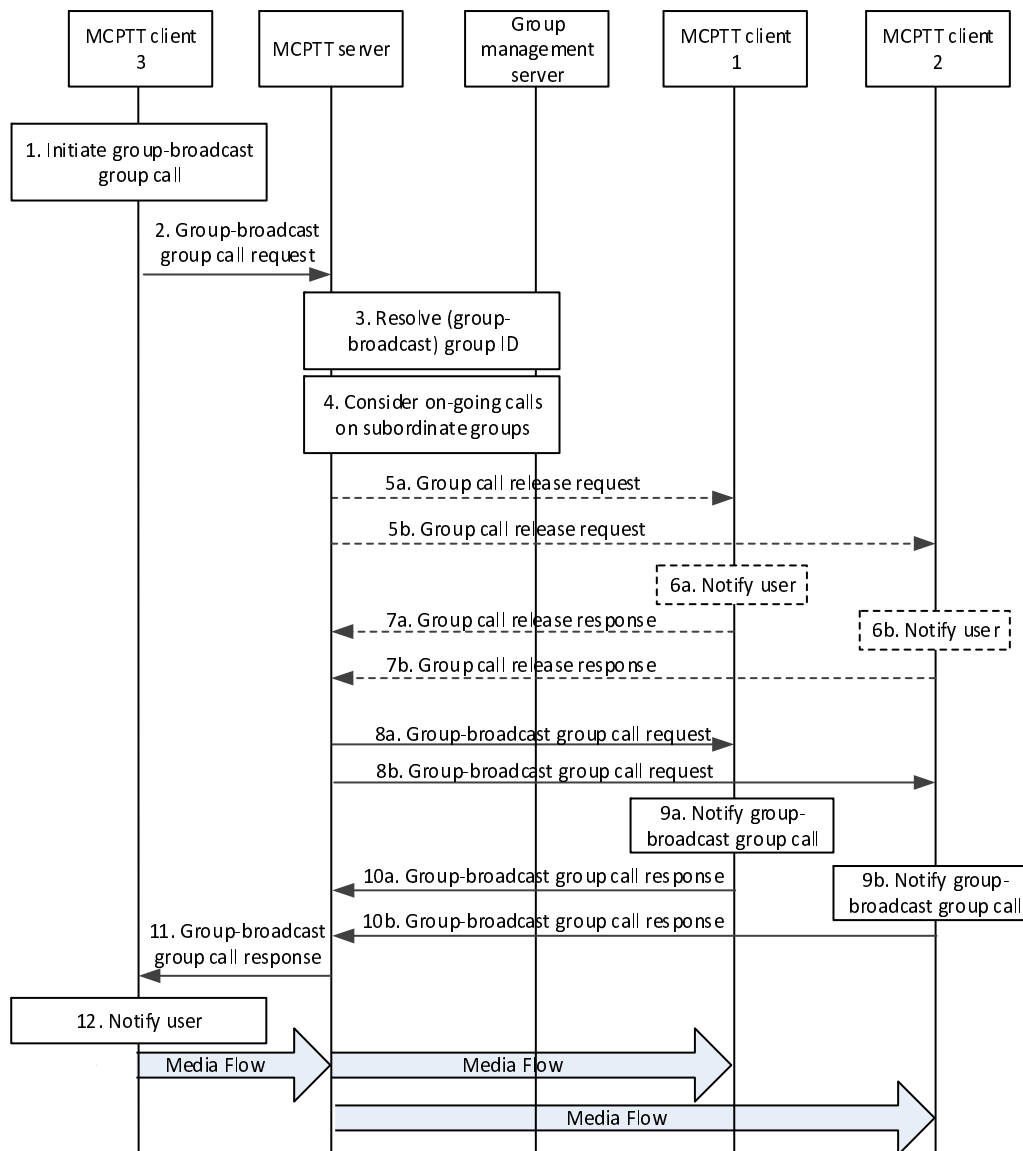
The group-broadcast group is defined as a set of groups, not a set of MCPTT users. The group-broadcast group is also defined with a hierarchy. It is expected that the MCPTT user that originates the group-broadcast group call is the only one transmitting media during the group-broadcast group call and that the group-broadcast group call is terminated when the transmission is complete. However, if the override feature is enabled, then the call originator may be overridden.

Figure 10.6.2.5.2.1-1 illustrates the procedure for group-broadcast group call establishment.

Pre-conditions:

1. The group (e.g. A) to which MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 are members is a subordinate group of the group-broadcast group (i.e., the group-broadcast group was defined with group A as a subordinate group).
2. The group (e.g. A) currently has an on-going MCPTT group call that is not an MCPTT emergency group call.
3. The call initiator of the group-broadcast group is a member of another group (e.g., X, not group A) which is also a subordinate group of the group-broadcast group (i.e., the group-broadcast group was defined with group X as a subordinate group).
4. The group-broadcast group and its subordinated groups are defined in the same group management server and served by the same MCPTT server.

5. Optionally, MCPTT client 3 may have an activated functional alias for the group communication.
6. The MCPTT server may have subscribed to the MCPTT functional alias controlling server within the MC system for functional alias activation/de-activation updates.



**Figure 10.6.2.5.2.1-1: Group-broadcast group call**

1. MCPTT user at MCPTT client 3 initiates the group-broadcast group call setup procedure.
2. The MCPTT client 3 sends a group-broadcast group call request to the MCPTT server. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 may include a functional alias used for the broadcast group call.
3. The MCPTT server checks whether the provided functional alias can be used and has been activated for the MCPTT user. The MCPTT server needs to resolve the group-broadcast group ID into its subordinate groups in order to contact the affiliated MCPTT users of those subordinate groups.
4. The MCPTT server then needs to consider any on-going group calls on those subordinate groups because this may affect the behaviour for what happens next. In this case a group call exists on a subordinate group. Thus, the MCPTT users involved in the group call on this subordinate group.
5. Optionally the on-going group call on a subordinate group may be terminated in which case the MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 need to be sent a Group call release request.
6. The MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 then notify their users of the group call release request.

7. The MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 respond to the group call release request by sending a group call release response.
8. A group-broadcast group call request is sent to both the MCPTT client 1 and the MCPTT client 2. The request may contain the functional alias of the calling party.
9. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 notify their users of the incoming group-broadcast group call. The functional alias of the calling party, if available, is presented to the users.
10. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 respond to the group-broadcast group call request by sending a group-broadcast group call response.
11. The MCPTT server responds to MCPTT client 3 (the call initiator) that the group-broadcast group call has been established by sending a group-broadcast group call response.
12. The MCPTT client 3 notifies its user that the user can begin transmitting using the group-broadcast group call resources.

Resources are now available for the transmission from MCPTT client 3 to MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2. Once the user of MCPTT client 3 completes transmitting, the group-broadcast group call is released as are the resources.

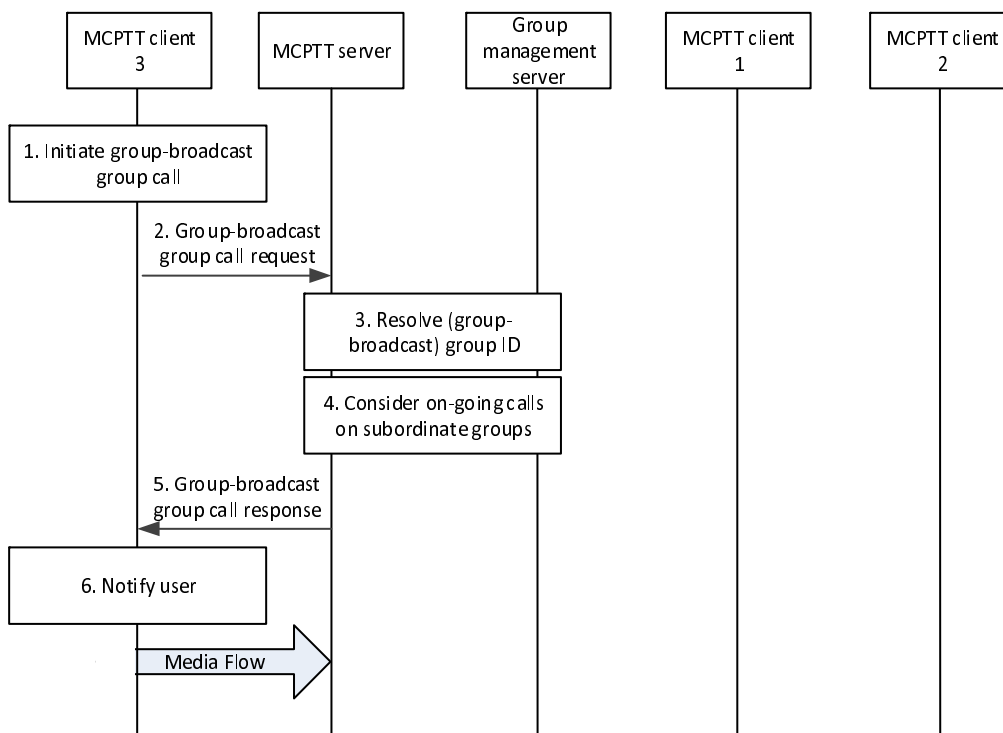
#### 10.6.2.5.2.2 Group-broadcast group call procedure when a subordinate group has an on-going MCPTT emergency group call

The group-broadcast group is defined as a set of groups, not MCPTT users. The affiliated MCPTT group members of a subordinate group with an on-going MCPTT emergency group call are not interrupted by a group-broadcast group call.

Figure 10.6.2.5.2.2-1 illustrates the procedure for group-broadcast group call when a subordinate group has an on-going MCPTT emergency group call.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT The group (e.g. A) to which MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 are members is a subordinate group of the group-broadcast group (i.e., the group-broadcast group was defined with group A as a subordinate group).
2. The group (e.g. A) currently has an on-going MCPTT emergency group call.
3. The call initiator (user of MCPTT client 3) of the group-broadcast group is a member of another group (e.g., X, not group A) which is also a subordinate group of the group-broadcast group (i.e., the group-broadcast group was defined with group X as a subordinate group).



**Figure 10.6.2.5.2.2-1: Group-broadcast group call when an emergency group call is on-going in one of the subordinate groups**

1. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 3 initiates the group-broadcast group call setup procedure.
2. The MCPTT client 3 sends a group-broadcast group call request to the MCPTT server.
3. The MCPTT server needs to resolve the group-broadcast group ID into its subordinate groups in order to contact the affiliated MCPTT group members of those subordinate groups.
4. The MCPTT server then considers any on-going group calls on those subordinate groups (e.g. A) because this may effect the behaviour for what happens next. In this case an emergency group call exists on a subordinate group.

NOTE: Not shown - The group-broadcast group call request is sent to the MCPTT clients of the MCPTT users who are affiliated members of any other subordinate groups of the group-broadcast group being set up

5. The MCPTT server responds to the call initiator that the group-broadcast group call has been established.
6. The MCPTT client 3 notifies its user that the user can begin transmitting using the group-broadcast group call resources.

Resources are now available for the transmission from MCPTT client 3 to the MCPTT clients (not shown) of other subordinate groups (i.e., not A). Once the user of MCPTT client 3 completes transmitting, the group-broadcast group call is released as are the resources.

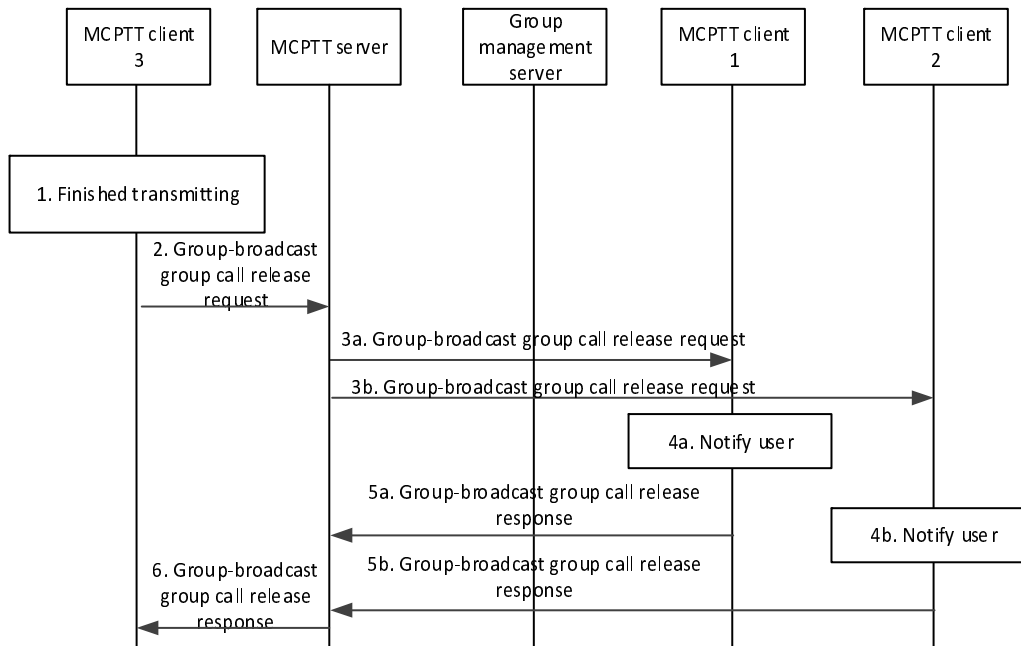
#### 10.6.2.5.2.3 Group-broadcast group call release procedure

When the call originator has completed transmitting, the group-broadcast group call is terminated and resources released.

Figure 10.6.2.5.2.3-1 illustrates the procedure for group-broadcast group call release.

Pre-conditions:

1. An on-going group-broadcast group call involving MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2, and MCPTT client 3 exists.



**Figure 10.6.2.5.2.3-1: Group-broadcast group call transmission ended**

1. MCPTT user on MCPTT client 3 finished transmitting.
2. A group-broadcast group call release request is sent to the MCPTT server of the group-broadcast group.
3. The MCPTT users of MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 of the group-broadcast group's subordinate groups are sent a group-broadcast group call release request
4. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 notify their users that the group-broadcast group call has ended.
5. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 respond to confirm the release of the group-broadcast group call by sending a group-broadcast group call release response.
6. The MCPTT server sends a group-broadcast group call release response indicating to the initiator that the call is now terminated.

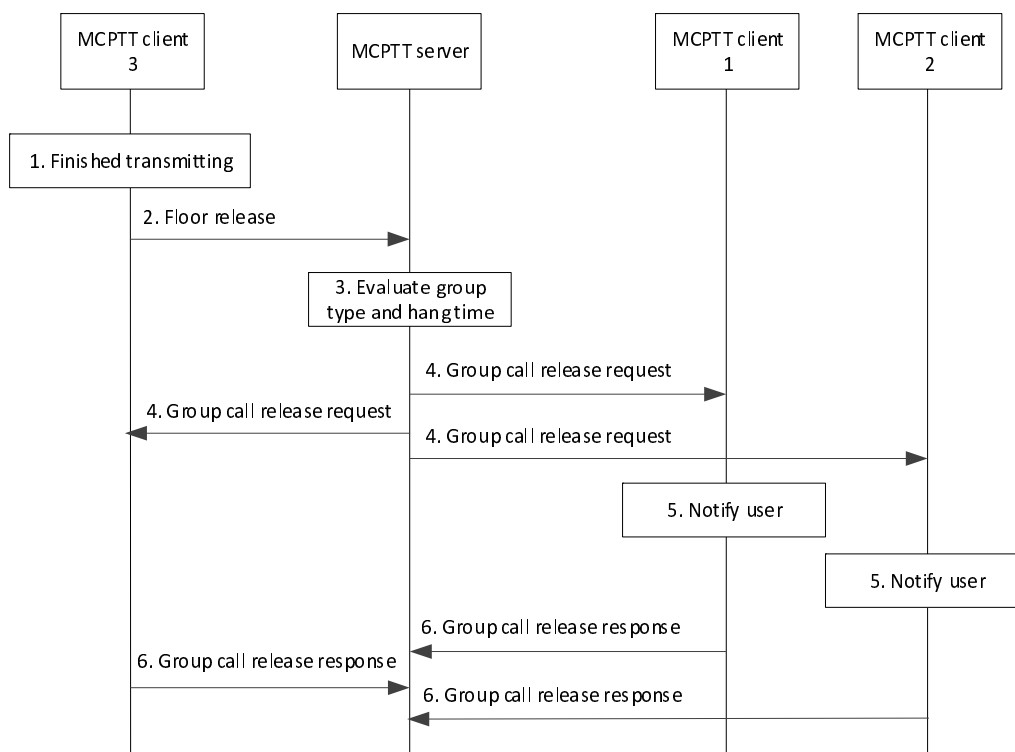
10.6.2.5.2.4 Server-initiated broadcast group call release procedure

In a broadcast group call, when the call originator has completed transmitting, the MCPTT client releases the floor. Upon receiving the floor release message the MCPTT server then determines if the broadcast call should be released.

Figure 10.6.2.5.2.4-1 illustrates the procedure for server-initiated broadcast group call release.

Pre-conditions:

1. An on-going broadcast group call involving MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2, and MCPTT client 3 exists.
2. MCPTT client 3 is transmitting.



**Figure 10.6.2.5.2.4-1: Server-initiated broadcast group call release**

1. MCPTT user on MCPTT client 3 finished transmitting.
2. MCPTT client 3 sends a Floor release message to the MCPTT server of the group.
3. The MCPTT Server determines that the group is a broadcast group and decides that the call should be released.

NOTE 1: Whether the MCPTT server uses the Broadcast indicator in the originating group call request message or uses the configured Group call hang timer to determine whether the call should be released is left to implementation.

4. The MCPTT server sends a Group call release request to MCPTT clients 1, 2, and 3.
5. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 notify their users that the group call has ended.
6. MCPTT clients 1, 2, and 3 respond to confirm the release of the group call by sending a group call release response.

NOTE 2: If the group call release request is sent from the MCPTT server via MBMS, no response is expected from the MCPTT clients.

#### 10.6.2.5.3 Void

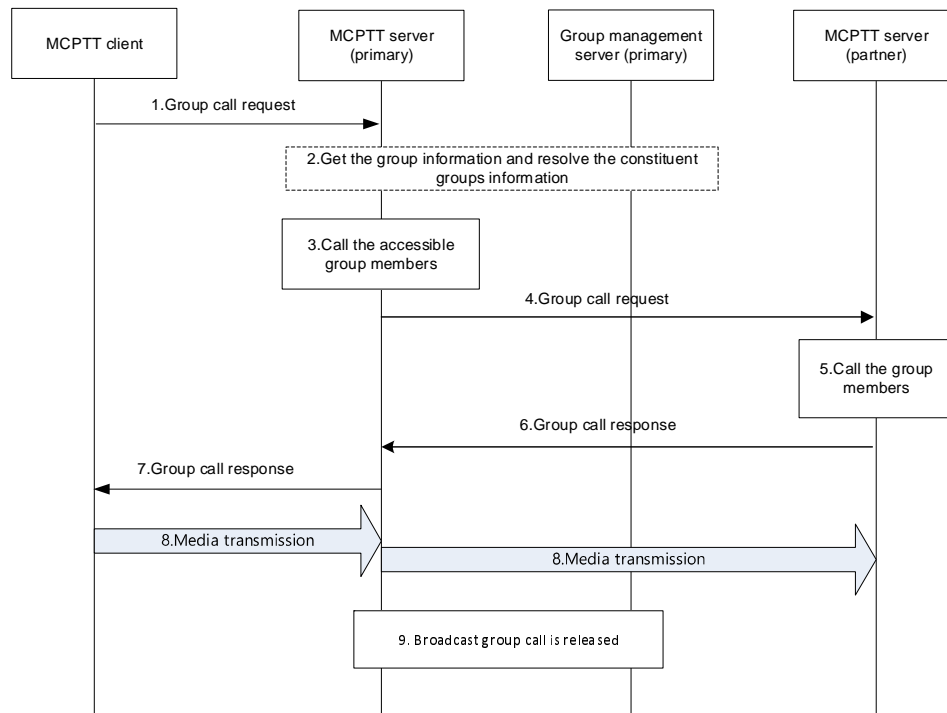
#### 10.6.2.5.4 Group call for broadcast temporary groups across multiple MCPTT systems

Figure 10.6.2.5.4-1 illustrates the procedure for broadcast temporary group calls across multiple MCPTT systems.

Pre-conditions:

1. The security aspects of sharing the user information between primary and partner MCPTT systems shall be governed as per the service provider agreement between them. In this case, we consider the partner MCPTT system does not share their users' information to the primary MCPTT system.

2. A broadcast temporary group is formed on the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system by an authorized MCPTT user (e.g. dispatcher) by the group regroup procedure (subclause 10.2.4.2 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]) and identified via a temporary MCPTT group ID.
3. The affiliated MCPTT group members of the constituent MCPTT groups have been implicitly affiliated to the temporary group.
4. The MCPTT user of the MCPTT client is authorized to transmit on a broadcast temporary group.
5. One or more of the constituent groups of the temporary group may belong to MCPTT servers of partner MCPTT systems.



**Figure 10.6.2.5.4-1: Group call involving a broadcast temporary group across multiple MCPTT systems**

1. The MCPTT user via MCPTT client initiates a group call for a broadcast temporary group with an MCPTT group ID, temporary group indicator, and the broadcast indicator. A group call request message with the MCPTT group ID is routed to the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system, which owns the group and is where the authorized MCPTT user/dispatcher created the broadcast temporary group. The MCPTT group ID is a temporary MCPTT group ID.
2. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system obtains the temporary group information (either from group management server or itself) including the constituent MCPTT groups' identities, accessible group members list of the constituent groups, the broadcast group type, and other related data.
3. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system initiates directly a call request to the accessible group members using the detailed user information and/or location information. The group members upon receipt of the call request may accept or reject the call.
4. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system may not have access to group members' information of the constituent group belonging to the partner MCPTT system. For such group members, the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system initiates a group call request message to the MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system with the target group's MCPTT group ID information.
5. The MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system further initiates a call request to the clients of the constituent group's members as described in step 3.

6. The MCPTT server of the partner MCPTT system provides a group call response to the MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system with success or failure result and/or detailed reason information if there is a failure.
7. The MCPTT server of the primary MCPTT system provides a group call response message to the MCPTT client of the affiliated MCPTT user upon receiving responses to the call requests sent to members of primary and partner MCPTT systems. The group call response message will consist of the success or failure result and/or detailed reason information if there is a failure.

NOTE 1: The group call response message is triggered depending on the conditions to proceed with the call.

8. Upon successful call setup completion a broadcast group call is established for the group members from constituent groups of multiple MCPTT servers. The call originating MCPTT user starts transmitting media to other group call participants. The media is also distributed to the partner MCPTT system.

NOTE 2: Only the call originating MCPTT user is allowed to transmit media on a broadcast temporary group call.

9. At the completion of the media transmission, the broadcast temporary group call is released.

## 10.6.2.6 Emergency and imminent peril procedures

### 10.6.2.6.1 MCPTT emergency group call

#### 10.6.2.6.1.1 MCPTT emergency group call commencement

The procedure describes the case where an MCPTT client is initiating an MCPTT emergency group call with the affiliated MCPTT members of that MCPTT group. An MCPTT client in the MCPTT emergency state gains elevated access privilege for all of the MCPTT user's mission critical applications. Initiating an MCPTT emergency group call puts the MCPTT group into the in-progress emergency state. While in the in-progress emergency state, all MCPTT group calls in the MCPTT group are processed as MCPTT emergency group calls by the MCPTT server until the in-progress emergency state of the MCPTT group is cancelled.

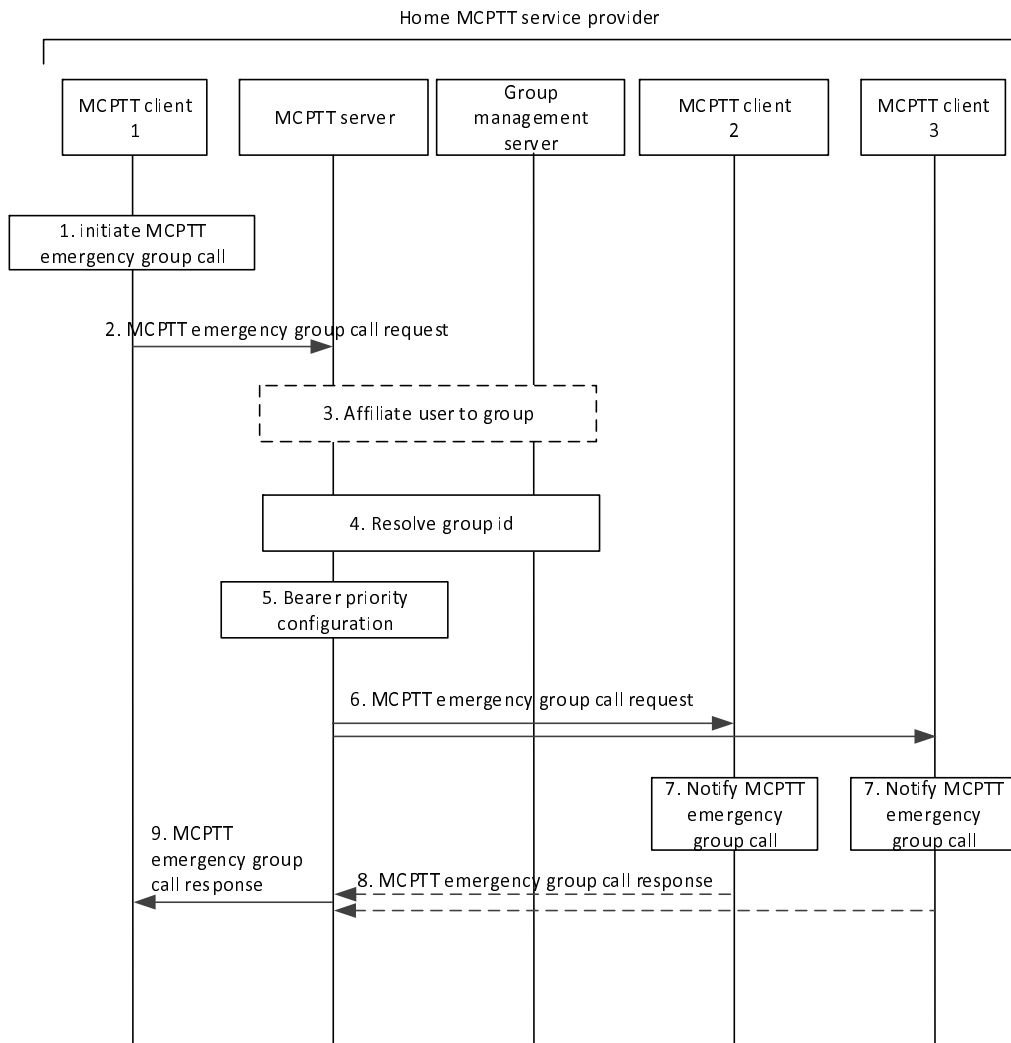
Figure 10.6.2.6.1.1-1 shows the procedures for the MCPTT client initiating establishment of an MCPTT emergency group call with an MCPTT group i.e., MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 belong to the same MCPTT group which is defined on MCPTT group management server.

NOTE 1: For simplicity, a single MCPTT server is shown in place of a user home MCPTT server and a group hosting MCPTT server.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT group is previously defined on the group management server with MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 affiliated to that MCPTT group.
2. All members of the MCPTT group belong to the same MCPTT system.
3. The initiating MCPTT client 1 has been provisioned with an MCPTT group that has been designated via provisioning as the MCPTT emergency group.
4. Optionally, MCPTT client 1 may use an activated functional alias for the group communication.
5. The MCPTT server may have subscribed to the MCPTT functional alias controlling server within the MC system for functional alias activation/de-activation updates.

NOTE 2: Alternatively, the client could have been provisioned for emergency behaviour on the selected group.



**Figure 10.6.2.6.1.1-1: MCPTT emergency group call**

1. The user at the MCPTT client 1 initiates an MCPTT emergency group call. MCPTT client 1 sets its MCPTT emergency state. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 may select a functional alias used for the call. The MCPTT emergency state of MCPTT client 1 is retained until explicitly cancelled by the user of MCPTT client 1.

NOTE 3: While MCPTT client 1 is in the emergency state, all MCPTT group and private calls initiated by MCPTT client 1 are initiated as MCPTT emergency calls.

2. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT emergency group call request towards the MCPTT server. The MCPTT server records the identity of the MCPTT user that initiated the MCPTT emergency group call until the MCPTT emergency state of the group is cancelled. Once an MCPTT emergency call has been initiated, the MCPTT group is considered to be in an in-progress emergency state until the emergency state of the group is cancelled. If configured to send an MCPTT emergency alert when initiating an MCPTT emergency group call, the request also contains an indication that an MCPTT emergency alert is to be initiated. The request may contain an indication of an implicit floor request.

NOTE 4: While the MCPTT group is in the in-progress emergency state, all MCPTT group calls within the group are processed as emergency group calls by the MCPTT server. MCPTT group members that are not in the emergency state do not indicate emergency in group call requests but set the requested priority of all group call requests to high priority.

3. The MCPTT server implicitly affiliates MCPTT client 1 to the emergency group if the client is not already affiliated.
4. MCPTT server checks whether the MCPTT user of MCPTT client 1 is authorized for initiation of MCPTT emergency calls on the indicated MCPTT group, and if authorized, it resolves the MCPTT group ID to determine

the members of that MCPTT group and their affiliation status, based on the information from group management server. The MCPTT server checks whether the provided functional alias, if present, can be used and has been activated for the user.

5. The MCPTT server configures the priority of the underlying bearers for all participants in the MCPTT group.

NOTE 5: Successive calls during the MCPTT group's in-progress emergency state will all receive the adjusted bearer priority.

6. MCPTT server sends the MCPTT emergency group call request towards the MCPTT clients of each of those affiliated MCPTT group members. The request contains an indication of the in-progress emergency. The request contains an indication of an MCPTT emergency alert if the request from the originator indicated MCPTT emergency alert.
7. MCPTT users are notified of the incoming MCPTT emergency group call. The functional alias of the group call initiating MCPTT user may be displayed.
8. The receiving MCPTT clients send the MCPTT emergency group call response to the MCPTT server to acknowledge the MCPTT emergency group call request. For a multicast call, these acknowledgements are not sent. The receiving MCPTT client check whether it is already involved in an MCPTT emergency group call when using this functional alias and whether the maximum number of parallel MCPTT emergency group calls when using this functional alias has been reached.
9. The MCPTT server sends the MCPTT emergency group call response to the MCPTT user 1 to inform the successful MCPTT emergency call establishment.

NOTE 6: Step 9 can occur at any time following step 5, and prior to step 10 depending on the conditions to proceed with the call.

MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 have successfully established media plane for communication. MCPTT floor participant 1, floor participant 2 and floor participant 3 exchange floor control information e.g., MCPTT client 1 receives the floor granted information over the established media plane, while the other MCPTT client's receive floor taken information. MCPTT client 1 indicates to the MCPTT user that the floor is available to send media, while the other MCPTT clients in the MCPTT emergency group call will be receiving that media. MCPTT client 1 can override other clients in the call except those that are also in the MCPTT emergency state.

#### 10.6.2.6.1.2 MCPTT group call upgraded to an MCPTT emergency group call

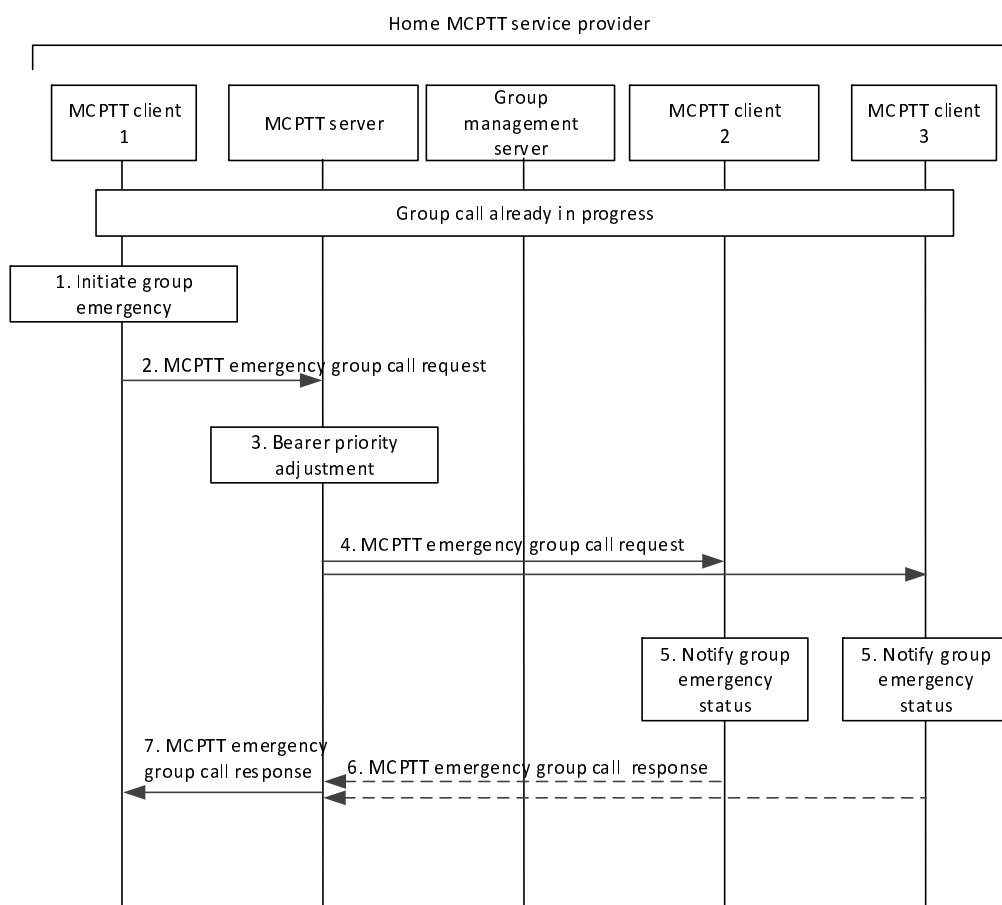
The procedure focuses on the case where an authorized MCPTT user is upgrading an MCPTT group call to an MCPTT emergency group call while the MCPTT group call is already in progress.

Procedures in figure 10.6.2.6.1.2-1 are the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT client upgrading an MCPTT group call on an MCPTT group to an MCPTT emergency group call.

NOTE 1: For simplicity, a single MCPTT server is shown in place of a user home MCPTT server and a group hosting MCPTT server.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT group is previously defined on the group management server with MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 affiliated to that MCPTT group.
2. All members of the MCPTT group belong to the same MCPTT system.
3. An MCPTT group call is already in progress.
4. The initiating MCPTT client 1 has been configured to send an MCPTT emergency alert when upgrading an MCPTT emergency group call.



**Figure 10.6.2.6.1.2-1: MCPTT group call upgraded to an MCPTT emergency group call**

1. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 initiates a group emergency. MCPTT client 1 sets its MCPTT emergency state. The MCPTT emergency state of MCPTT client 1 is retained until explicitly cancelled by the user of MCPTT client 1.

NOTE 2: While MCPTT client 1 is in the emergency state, all MCPTT group and private calls initiated by MCPTT client 1 are initiated as MCPTT emergency calls.

2. MCPTT client 1 requests the MCPTT server to upgrade the MCPTT group to an in-progress emergency state by sending an MCPTT emergency group call request. If configured to send an MCPTT alert when initiating an MCPTT emergency upgrade, the request also contains an indication that an MCPTT alert is to be initiated. The request may contain an indication of an implicit floor request.

NOTE 3: While the MCPTT group is in the in-progress emergency state, all MCPTT group calls within the group are processed as emergency group calls by the MCPTT server. MCPTT group members that are not in the emergency state do not indicate emergency in group call requests but set the requested priority of all group call requests to high priority.

3. The MCPTT server adjusts the priority of the underlying bearer for all or selected participants in the MCPTT group call that receive the communication over unicast.

NOTE 4: The determination of the selected participants whose bearers have to be upgraded is left to implementation.

4. MCPTT server sends the MCPTT emergency group call request towards the MCPTT clients of each of those affiliated MCPTT group members. The request contains an indication of an MCPTT emergency alert if the request from the originator indicated MCPTT emergency alert.

5. MCPTT users are notified of the in-progress emergency state of the MCPTT group.
6. The receiving MCPTT clients send the MCPTT emergency group call response to the MCPTT server to acknowledge the MCPTT group emergency request. For a multicast call, these acknowledgements are not sent.
7. The MCPTT server sends the MCPTT emergency group call response to the MCPTT user 1 to confirm the upgrade request.

NOTE 5: Step 7 can occur at any time following step 3, and prior to step 8 depending on the conditions to proceed with the call.

MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 continue with the MCPTT group call, which has been transformed into an MCPTT emergency group call. MCPTT client 1 can override other clients in the call except those that are also in the MCPTT emergency state.

#### 10.6.2.6.1.3 MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel

NOTE 1: In Rel-14 and Rel-13 versions of this specification the title of this subclause is "MCPTT emergency group call cancel".

The procedure describes the case where an MCPTT client cancels an MCPTT group's in-progress emergency state. The emergency state of the group may alternatively be cancelled by the emergency alert cancellation procedure specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16], subclause 10.10.1.2.2.2.

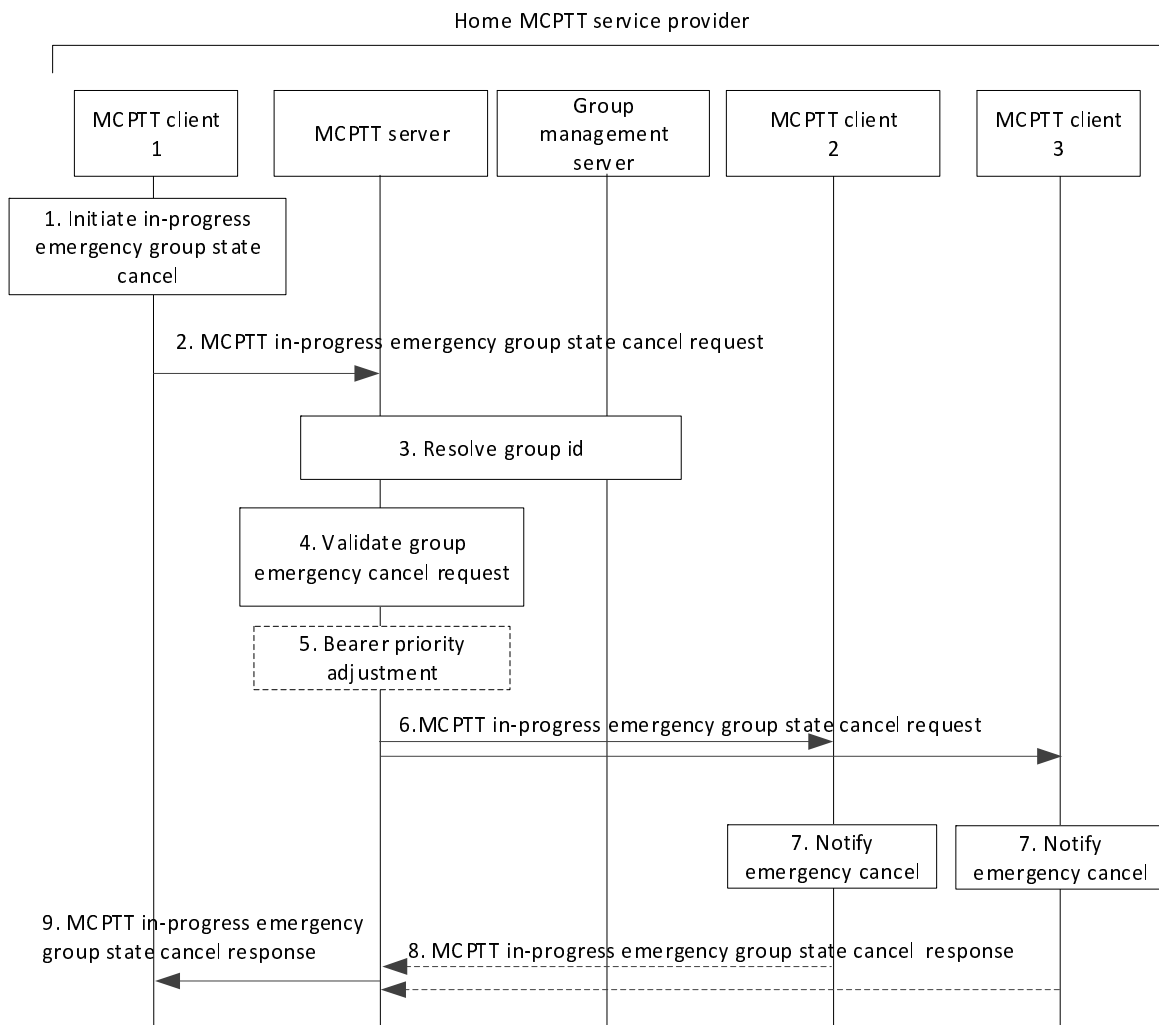
Procedures in figure 10.6.2.6.1.3-1 are the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT client cancelling an in-progress emergency of a group.

NOTE 2: For simplicity, a single MCPTT server is shown in place of a user home MCPTT server and a group hosting MCPTT server.

NOTE 3: The end of the MCPTT emergency group call does not cancel the MCPTT group's in-progress emergency state. It is explicitly cancelled by an authorized user using this procedure, or by the emergency alert cancellation procedure specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16], subclause 10.10.1.2.2.2.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT group is previously defined on the group management server with MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 affiliated to that MCPTT group.
2. All members of the MCPTT group belong to the same MCPTT system.
3. MCPTT group members have been notified about the in-progress emergency.
4. The MCPTT group is in the in-progress emergency state and has prioritized bearer support when a call is in progress.
5. MCPTT client 1 is authorized to cancel an in-progress emergency for the group.



**Figure 10.6.2.6.1.3-1: MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel**

1. The user at the MCPTT client 1 initiates an MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel.

NOTE 4: An authorized user (e.g. dispatcher, supervisor) can cancel either or both the in-progress emergency state of the group and the MC service emergency alert of another user. However, only the initiator of an MCPTT emergency alert can cancel the initiator's local MCPTT emergency state. Determination of authorized users is implementation dependent.

2. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel request to the MCPTT server.

NOTE 5: If an MCPTT emergency alert relating to MCPTT client 1 is in effect together with an MCPTT in-progress emergency group state on the MCPTT group, the MCPTT emergency alert of MCPTT client 1 can be cancelled at the same time. In that case, the MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel request carries an indication that the emergency alert of MCPTT client 1 is also being cancelled.

NOTE 6: If an MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel request is received by the MCPTT server while a group member that is in the emergency state is transmitting, the MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel request is rejected by the MCPTT server.

3. MCPTT server resolves the MCPTT group ID to determine the members of that MCPTT group and their affiliation status, based upon the information from group management server.

4. The MCPTT server verifies that the user of MCPTT client 1 is authorized to cancel the emergency state of this MCPTT group. The MCPTT server cancels/resets the in-progress emergency state of the MCPTT group.
5. If a call is currently in progress, the MCPTT server adjusts the priority of the underlying bearer; priority treatment is no longer required.
6. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel request to the MCPTT group members.
7. MCPTT group members are notified of the MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel.
8. The receiving MCPTT clients send the MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel response to the MCPTT server to acknowledge the MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel. For a multicast call scenario, these acknowledgements are not sent.
9. The MCPTT server sends the MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel response to the MCPTT user 1 to confirm the MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel. If the MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel request (in step 2) contained the "Alert indicator" IE, the MCPTT client 1 resets its local emergency status.

NOTE 7: Step 9 can occur at any time following step 4, depending on the conditions to proceed with the call.

#### 10.6.2.6.2 MCPTT imminent peril group call

##### 10.6.2.6.2.1 MCPTT imminent peril group call commencement

The procedure focuses on the case where an authorized MCPTT user is initiating an imminent peril group call for communicating with the affiliated MCPTT members of that MCPTT group. This procedure will gain elevated access privilege for the MCPTT client if it is not already in that state. The access privilege for other applications will not necessarily be affected.

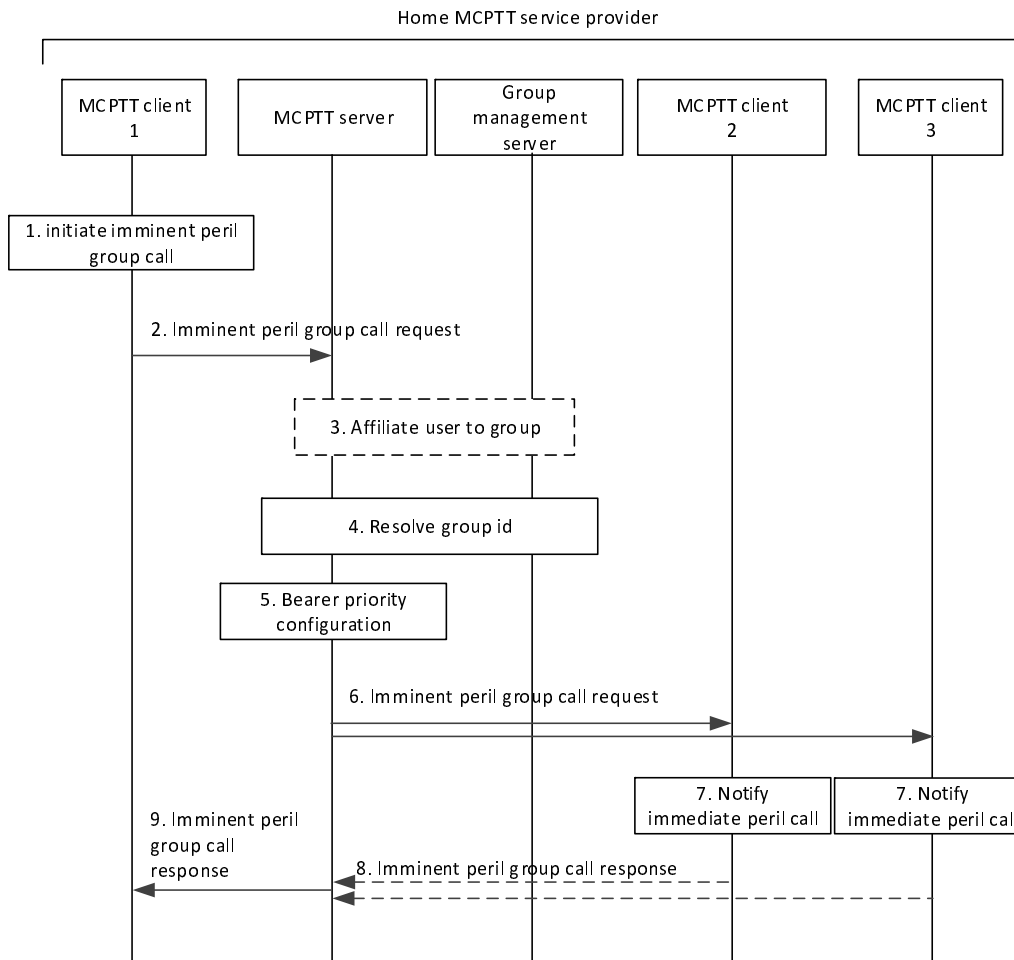
Procedures in figure 10.6.2.6.2.1-1 are the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT client initiating establishment of an imminent peril group call with an MCPTT group i.e., MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 belong to the same MCPTT group which is defined on MCPTT group management server.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT group is previously defined on the group management server with MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 affiliated to that MCPTT group.
2. All members of the MCPTT group belong to the same MCPTT system.
3. The initiating MCPTT client 1 has been provisioned with an MCPTT group that has been designated in the provisioning to be used for imminent peril communications.

NOTE 1: Alternatively, the client could have been provisioned for imminent peril behaviour on the selected group.

4. Optionally, MCPTT client 1 may use an activated functional alias for the group communication.
5. The MCPTT server may have subscribed to the MCPTT functional alias controlling server within the MC system for functional alias activation/de-activation updates.



**Figure 10.6.2.6.2.1-1: MCPTT imminent peril group call**

1. The user at the MCPTT client 1 initiates an imminent peril group call. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 may select a functional alias used for the call.
2. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT imminent peril group call request towards the MCPTT server. The request contains an indication of the in-progress imminent peril. The MCPTT server records the identity of the MCPTT user that initiated the imminent peril group call until the in-progress imminent peril state is cancelled. Once an imminent peril group call has been initiated, the MCPTT group is considered to be in an in-progress imminent peril state until cancelled. The request may contain an indication of an implicit floor request. If the group call request includes an implicit floor request it may also include location information.
3. The MCPTT server implicitly affiliates MCPTT client 1 to the imminent peril group if the client is not already affiliated.
4. MCPTT server checks whether the MCPTT user of MCPTT client 1 is authorized for initiation of imminent peril group calls on the indicated MCPTT group, and if authorized, it resolves the MCPTT group ID to determine the members of that MCPTT group and their affiliation status, based on the information from group management server. The MCPTT server checks whether the provided functional alias, if present, can be used and has been activated for the user.
5. The MCPTT server configures the priority of the underlying bearers for all participants in the MCPTT group.

NOTE 2: Successive calls during the in-progress imminent peril state will all receive the adjusted bearer priority.

6. MCPTT server sends the imminent peril group call request towards the MCPTT clients of each of those affiliated MCPTT group members. The request contains an indication of the in-progress imminent peril. If location information was included in the imminent peril group call request, the MCPTT server checks the privacy policy

of the MCPTT user to decide if the location information of MCPTT client 1 can be provided to other users on the call (refer to Annex A.3 "Authorisation to provide location information to other MCPTT users on a call when talking").

7. MCPTT users are notified of the incoming imminent peril call. The functional alias of the group call initiating MCPTT user may be displayed.
8. The receiving MCPTT clients send the MCPTT imminent peril group call response to the MCPTT server to acknowledge the imminent peril call request. For a multicast call, these acknowledgements are not set.
9. The MCPTT server sends the MCPTT imminent peril group call response to the MCPTT user 1 to inform the successful imminent peril call establishment.

NOTE 3: Step 9 can occur at any time following step 5, and prior to step 10 depending on the conditions to proceed with the imminent peril call.

MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 have successfully established media plane for communication. MCPTT floor participant 1, floor participant 2 and floor participant 3 exchange floor control information e.g., MCPTT client 1 receives the floor granted information over the established media plane, while the other MCPTT clients receive floor taken information. MCPTT client 1 indicates to the MCPTT user that the floor is available to send media, while the other MCPTT clients in the imminent peril call will be receiving that media.

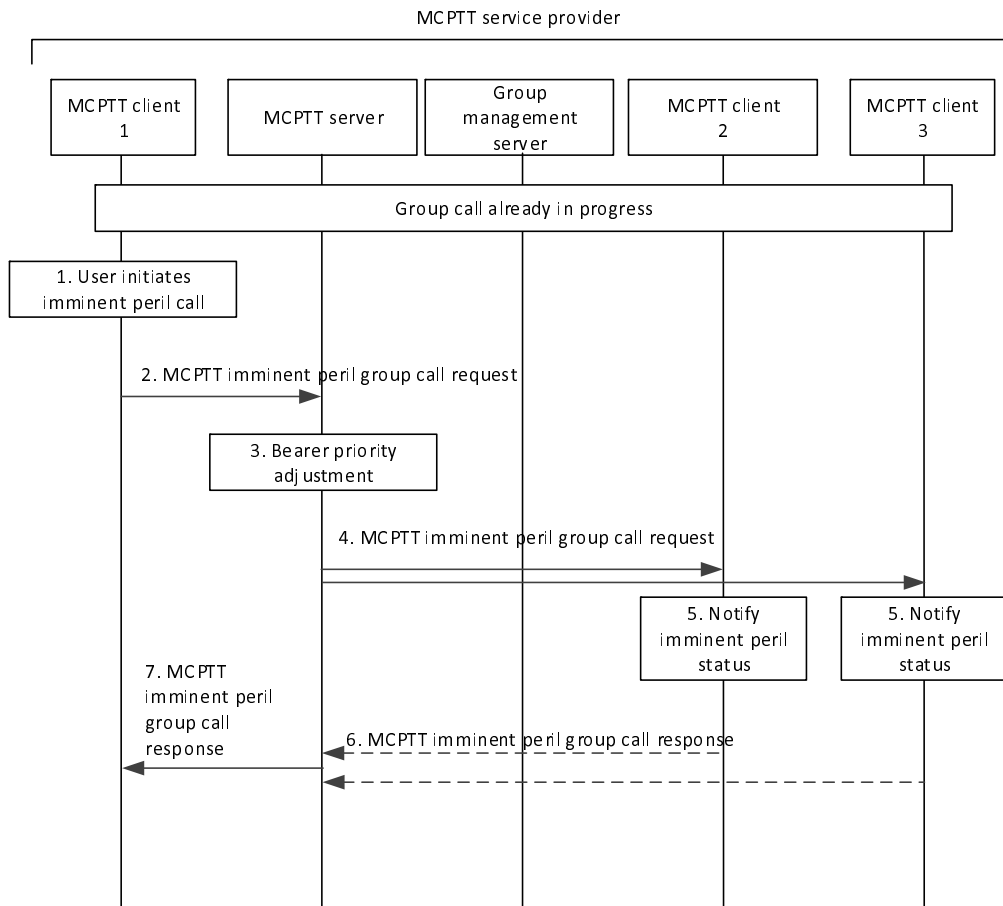
#### 10.6.2.6.2.2 Imminent peril group call upgrade

The procedure focuses on the case where an authorized MCPTT user is upgrading an MCPTT group call to an imminent peril group call while the MCPTT group call is already in progress.

Procedures in figure 10.6.2.6.2.2-1 are the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT client upgrading an MCPTT group call on an MCPTT group to an imminent peril group call.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT group is previously defined on the group management server with MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 affiliated to that MCPTT group.
2. All members of the MCPTT group belong to the same MCPTT system.
3. An MCPTT group call is already in progress.



**Figure 10.6.2.6.2.2-1: MCPTT group call upgrade to an imminent peril group call**

1. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 initiates an imminent peril call.
2. MCPTT client 1 requests the MCPTT server to upgrade the MCPTT group to an in-progress imminent peril state by sending an MCPTT imminent peril group call request. The request may contain an indication of an implicit floor request. If the imminent peril group call request includes an implicit floor request it may also include location information.
3. The MCPTT server adjusts the priority of the underlying bearer for all participants in the MCPTT group.
4. The MCPTT server sends the MCPTT imminent peril group call request towards the MCPTT clients of the affiliated MCPTT group members. If location information was included in the imminent peril group call request, the MCPTT server checks the privacy policy of the MCPTT user to decide if the location information of MCPTT client 1 can be provided to other users on the call (refer to Annex A.3 "Authorisation to provide location information to other MCPTT users on a call when talking").
5. MCPTT users are notified of the in-progress imminent peril state of the MCPTT group.
6. The receiving MCPTT clients send the MCPTT imminent peril group call response to the MCPTT server to acknowledge the MCPTT imminent peril group call request. For a multicast call, these acknowledgements are not set.
7. The MCPTT server sends the MCPTT imminent peril group call response to the MCPTT user 1 to confirm the upgrade request.

NOTE: Step 7 can occur at any time following step 4, and prior to step 8 depending on the conditions to proceed with the call.

MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 continue with the MCPTT group call, which has been transformed into an imminent peril group call.

10.6.2.6.2.3 MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel

NOTE 1: In Rel-14 and Rel-13 versions of this specification the title of this subclause is "MCPTT imminent peril group call cancel".

The procedure focuses on the case where an authorized MCPTT user cancels an MCPTT group's in-progress imminent peril state.

Procedures in figure 10.6.2.6.2.3-1 are the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT client cancelling an MCPTT group's in-progress imminent peril state.

NOTE 2: The end of the imminent peril call does not cancel the MCPTT group's in-progress imminent peril state. It is explicitly cancelled by an authorized user using this procedure.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT group is previously defined on the group management server with MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 affiliated to that MCPTT group.
2. All members of the MCPTT group belong to the same MCPTT system.
3. The MCPTT group is in an in-progress imminent peril state and has prioritized bearer support.
4. MCPTT group members have been notified about the MCPTT group's in-progress imminent peril state.
5. MCPTT client 1 previously initiated the in-progress imminent peril.

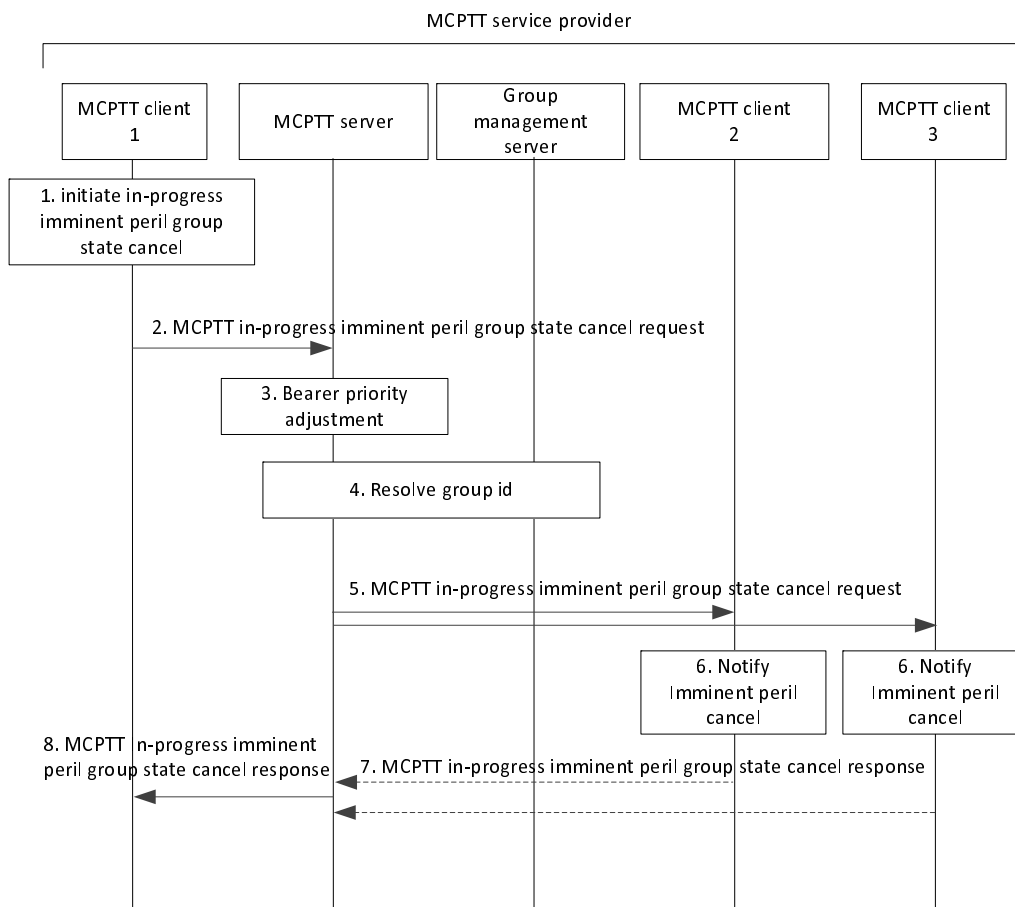


Figure 10.6.2.6.2.3-1: MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel

1. The user at the MCPTT client 1 initiates an in-progress imminent peril group state cancel.

2. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel request to the MCPTT server.
3. The MCPTT server adjusts the priority of the underlying bearer; priority treatment is no longer required. The MCPTT server cancels/resets the in-progress imminent peril group state.
4. MCPTT server resolves the MCPTT group ID to determine the members of that MCPTT group and their affiliation status, based upon the information from group management server.
5. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT imminent peril group state cancel request to the MCPTT group members.
6. MCPTT group members are notified of the in-progress imminent peril group state cancel.
7. The receiving MCPTT group members send the MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel response to the MCPTT server to acknowledge the MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel request. For a multicast scenario, these acknowledgements are not set.
8. The MCPTT server sends the MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel response to the MCPTT user 1 to confirm the MCPTT in-progress imminent peril group state cancel request.

NOTE 3: Step 8 can occur at any time following step 4, depending on the conditions to proceed with the call.

#### 10.6.2.6.3 MCPTT emergency alert (on-network)

The MCPTT service shall support the procedures and related information flows as specified in subclauses 10.10.1 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [5] with the following clarifications:

- The MC service client is the MCPTT client;
- The MC service server is the MCPTT server;
- The MC service group ID is the MCPTT Group ID; and
- The MC service user profile index is the MCPTT user profile index.

#### 10.6.2.6.3a MCPTT ad hoc group emergency alert (on-network)

The MCPTT service shall support the procedures and related information flows as specified in subclauses 10.10.3 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [5] with the following clarifications:

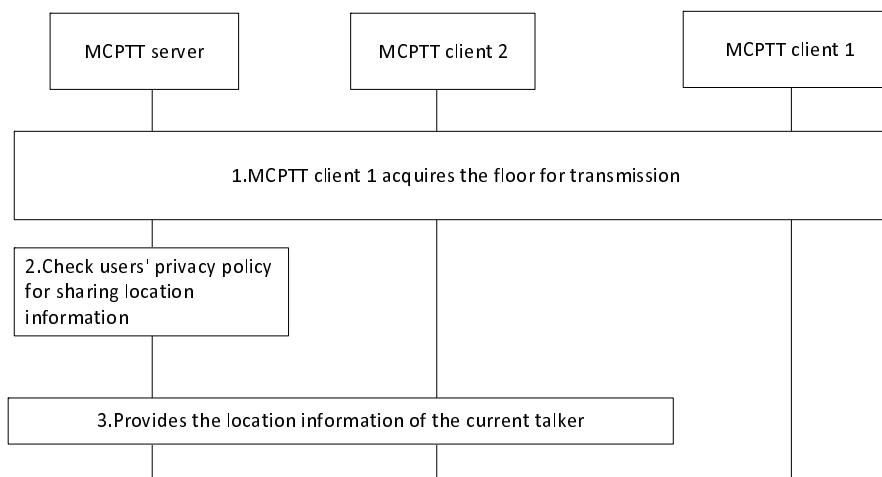
- The MC service client is the MCPTT client;
- The MC service server is the MCPTT server;
- The MC service group ID is the MCPTT Group ID; and
- The MC service user profile index is the MCPTT user profile index.

#### 10.6.2.7 Location of current talker

Figure 10.6.2.7-1 shows the high level procedure to for MCPTT service to provide the location information about the current talking user to all the receiving MCPTT users.

Precondition:

1. There is on-going group call involving MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2.
2. MCPTT client 1 is the current talking user.
3. MCPTT server has obtained the location information of MCPTT client 1 according to subclause 10.9 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].



**Figure 10.6.2.7-1: Providing location information of the current talker**

1. MCPTT client 1 gets the floor to transmit voice media.
2. MCPTT server checks the privacy policy (authorisation to provide location information to other MCPTT users on a call when talking, as defined in Annex A.3) of the current talking MCPTT user to decide if the location information of MCPTT client 1 can be provided to other MCPTT users on the call. MCPTT server acquires the location of the current talker from the location management server as described in subclause 10.9.3.6 in 3GPP TS 23.280[16]. Optionally, the MCPTT server acquires the location of the current talker directly from the floor request received from MCPTT client 1 in step 1.
3. MCPTT server provides the location information of MCPTT client 1 to MCPTT client 2. Optionally, the location information may be provided in the floor taken message sent to MCPTT client 2 according to subclause 10.9.1.3.1.

#### 10.6.2.8 Void

##### 10.6.2.8.1 Void

##### 10.6.2.8.2 Void

##### 10.6.2.8.3 Void

#### 10.6.2.9 Group regroup with preconfigured group

##### 10.6.2.9.1 General

A group regroup may be achieved by regrouping MCPTT groups into a new MCPTT regroup group which uses the configuration of a separate preconfigured MCPTT group. The MCPTT regroup group configuration needs to be provided to the relevant MCPTT group members of the MCPTT groups that will be regrouped in advance of the regrouping operation.

NOTE 1: A preconfigured group which is intended only to provide configuration for the preconfigured regroup process is identified by a parameter in the group configuration described in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

NOTE 2: The configuration may alternatively be taken from any MCPTT group that has been configured in the user profile of all the relevant MCPTT users who will be regrouped.

NOTE 3: Regroup groups may be defined according to the organizational structure of a mission critical organization, or by some other means which allows the MCPTT client of an authorized user to be aware of an appropriate regroup group for sets of MCPTT groups that will be regrouped together.

The preconfigured MCPTT group that provides the configuration is not used as the MCPTT regroup group itself, it only provides configuration for one or more MCPTT regroup groups. The MCPTT group ID of the regroup group is provided by the authorized user when the preconfigured regrouping is carried out.

The MCPTT regroup group can be specified to be a broadcast or non-broadcast type according to the configuration of the MCPTT group whose configuration is specified by the regroup request. The broadcast type of regroup is used for one-way communication where only an authorized MCX user is allowed to transmit and all other regroup members are only allowed to receive the communication (e.g. a call from a dispatcher to all regroup members). The non-broadcast type is used for two-way communication where all regroup members can transmit and receive (i.e. the regroup group call behaves like a normal non-broadcast group call).

These procedures provide a regrouping service for MCPTT only and are independent of group regrouping procedures specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]. If the MCPTT server has been notified by the group management server that one of the MCPTT groups that has been requested for regrouping by means of this procedure has already been regrouped by the group regrouping procedure specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16], the MCPTT server shall reject the request for regrouping described in the following procedure.

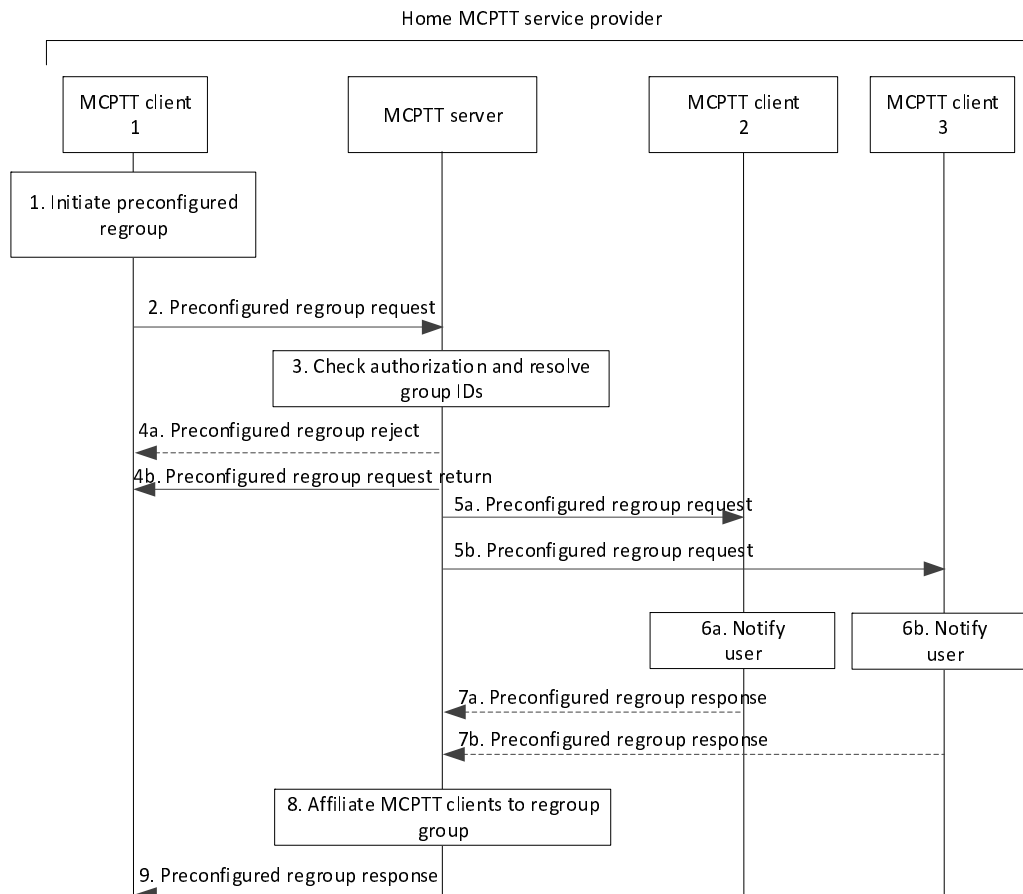
#### 10.6.2.9.2 Regroup procedures in single MCPTT system

##### 10.6.2.9.2.1 Regroup formation using preconfigured group in single MCPTT system

Figure 10.6.2.9.2.1-1 illustrates the procedure to initiate a group regroup procedure using a preconfigured MCPTT group. The procedure takes place prior to the establishment of a group call to the regroup group.

Pre-conditions:

- MCPTT client 2 is an affiliated member of MCPTT group 1 and MCPTT client 3 is an affiliated member of MCPTT group 2.
- The MCPTT group identity and group configuration for the regroup MCPTT group have been preconfigured in MCPTT clients 2 and 3, and MCPTT clients 2 and 3 have received the relevant security related information to allow them to communicate in the regroup MCPTT group.
- MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate a preconfigured regroup procedure.
- MCPTT client 1 is aware of a suitable preconfigured regroup group whose configuration has been preconfigured in the MCPTT UEs of the group members who will be regrouped.
- In order to be aware whether the group is regrouped, the MCPTT server is subscribed to the group configuration in GMS.
- The GMS has subscribed group dynamic data as specified in subclause 10.1.5.5.1 from the MCPTT server using the procedures defined in subclause 10.1.5.6 in TS 23.280 [16].



**Figure 10.6.2.9.2.1-1: Regroup procedure using preconfigured group in single MCPTT system**

1. The authorized user of MCPTT client 1 initiates the regroup procedure, specifying the list of MCPTT groups to be regrouped (MCPTT groups 1 and 2), the MCPTT group ID of the regroup group (if available) and the MCPTT group ID of the group from which configuration information for the regroup group is to be taken.
2. MCPTT client 1 sends the preconfigured regroup request to the MCPTT server.
3. The MCPTT server checks that MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate a preconfigured regroup procedure, and resolves the group identities of the MCPTT groups requested in step 1. The MCPTT server also checks which group members are affiliated to MCPTT groups 1 and 2. The MCPTT server may retrieve the configuration for the regroup group from the GMS if that configuration information is not already known to the MCPTT server. The MCPTT server also checks that none of the MCPTT groups that are requested for regrouping are already regrouped by any mechanism. If the preconfigured regroup request is authorized, the MCPTT server assigns a MCPTT group ID for this regroup group call if:
  - i. one is not provided in the request or
  - ii. the one provided in the request is not accepted.

NOTE 1: This procedure does not require that the authorized user of MCPTT client 1 is a group member of MCPTT groups 1 or 2, or that the authorized user of MCPTT client 1 is an affiliated group member of MCPTT groups 1 or 2.

NOTE 2: The list of groups included in the regroup is held in dynamic data in the MCPTT server, and is not used to update group configuration information in the group management server.

- 4a. If the MCPTT server determines that any of the groups requested for regrouping, including the regroup group, have been regrouped by other group regrouping procedures, the MCPTT server then sends a preconfigured regroup reject back to MCPTT client 1 with a reject reason indicating that one of the groups has already been regrouped, and this procedure terminates.

4b. The MCPTT server shall send the preconfigured regroup request return message to MCPTT client 1 containing the below:

- i. the MCPTT group ID is generated by the MCPTT server; and
- ii. result of whether the ad hoc group call is authorized or not

If the preconfigured regroup request is not authorized, MCPTT client 1 shall not proceed with the rest of the steps.

5. The MCPTT server sends the preconfigured regroup requests to MCPTT clients 2 and 3 in steps 5a and 5b respectively.

NOTE 3: Only group members that are affiliated to the MCPTT groups that are to be regrouped are sent a preconfigured regroup request.

6. MCPTT clients 2 and 3 notify their users of the regrouping in steps 6a and 6b respectively.

7. MCPTT clients 2 and 3 may send the preconfigured regroup response to the MCPTT server to acknowledge the regrouping action. These acknowledgements are not sent in response to a multicast transmission of the preconfigured regroup request.

8. The MCPTT server affiliates the regrouped MCPTT clients to the regroup group.

9. The MCPTT server sends a preconfigured regroup response to MCPTT client 1.

After the group regrouping procedure, the regrouping remains in effect until explicitly cancelled by the procedure in 10.6.2.9.2.2.

MCPTT client participation in the ongoing regroup persists until the MCPTT client is no longer affiliated to any of the regrouped groups (group 1 or 2 in this procedure).

MCPTT client affiliation to the regroup group may cease when the UE's MCPTT service ceases, e.g. when the UE is powered down, or by performing a log-off operation.

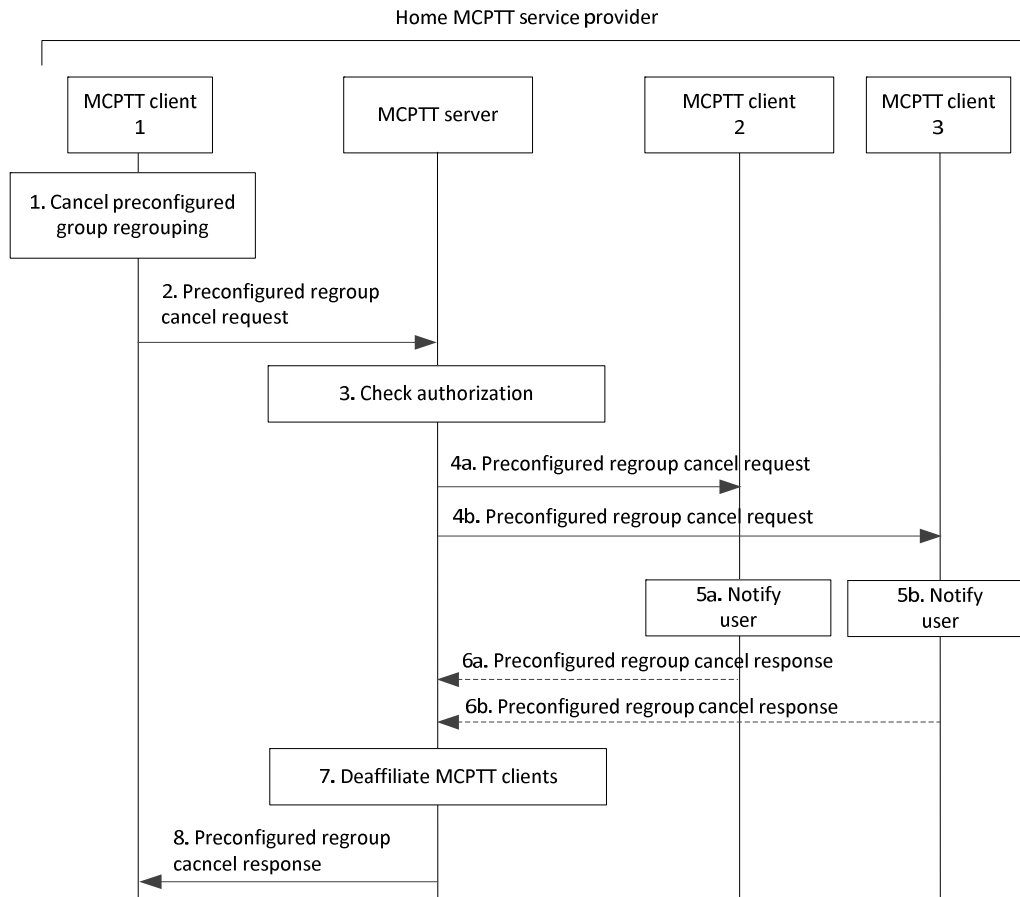
**Editor's note: Data persistence in the MCPTT client following a user log-off or power down needs further study.**

#### 10.6.2.9.2.2 Regroup cancellation in single MCPTT system

Figure 10.6.2.9.2.2-1 illustrates the procedure to cancel a regrouping that uses a preconfigured MCPTT group.

Pre-conditions:

- MCPTT clients 2 and 3 have been regrouped into an MCPTT regroup group.
- MCPTT client 1 is authorized to cancel a regrouping that uses a preconfigured MCPTT group.
- The GMS has subscribed to group dynamic data as specified in subclause 10.1.5.5.1 from the MCPTT server using the procedures defined in subclause 10.1.5.6 in TS 23.280 [16].



**Figure 10.6.2.9.2.2-1: Cancel preconfigured regroup procedure in single MCPTT system**

1. The authorized user of MCPTT client 1 initiates the cancellation of the regrouping that uses a preconfigured MCPTT group.
2. MCPTT client 1 sends the preconfigured regroup cancel request to the MCPTT server, specifying the MCPTT group ID of the regroup group.
3. The MCPTT server checks that MCPTT client 1 is authorized to cancel a regrouping that uses a preconfigured group regroup procedure.
4. The MCPTT server sends the preconfigured regroup cancel requests to MCPTT clients 2 and 3 (steps 4a and 4b respectively).
5. MCPTT clients 2 and 3 notify their users of the cancellation of the group regrouping in steps 5a and 5b respectively.
6. MCPTT clients 2 and 3 may send the preconfigured regroup cancel response to the MCPTT server to acknowledge the cancellation of the regrouping function. These acknowledgements are not sent in response to a multicast transmission of the preconfigured regroup cancel request.
7. The MCPTT server de-affiliates MCPTT clients 2 and 3 from the MCPTT regroup group.
8. The MCPTT server sends a preconfigured regroup cancel response to MCPTT client 1.

### 10.6.2.9.3 Regroup procedures in multiple MCPTT systems

#### 10.6.2.9.3.1 Regroup formation using preconfigured group in multiple MCPTT systems

Figure 10.6.2.9.3.1-1 illustrates the procedure to initiate a regroup procedure using a preconfigured MCPTT group, where at least one of the groups to be regrouped is configured in a partner MCPTT system. The primary MCPTT system where the preconfigured group regrouping is initiated does not need to be aware of the list of group members

belonging to groups whose group home system is the partner MCPTT system. If the group management server in the primary MCPTT of the regroup group shares the necessary security related parameters together with the group configuration of the MCPTT regroup group with the group management server in the partner MCPTT system and the group management server in the partner MCPTT system distributes this configuration including those security parameters to its served MCPTT users according to the procedures in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16] subclause 10.2.7, the primary MCPTT system does not need to be aware of the list of group members of the preconfigured regroup group that are receiving service in the partner MCPTT system.

The procedure takes place prior to the establishment of a group call to the regroup group.

In this procedure, any gateway MC servers in the primary or partner MCPTT systems are not shown.

Pre-conditions:

- MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiated a preconfigured regroup procedure, and is receiving MCPTT service in the primary MCPTT system of MCPTT client 1.
- MCPTT client 2 is an affiliated member of MCPTT group 1 where MCPTT group 1 is defined in the partner MCPTT system and MCPTT client 2 is receiving service in the partner MCPTT system of MCPTT client 1.
- The MCPTT group identity and group configuration for the regroup MCPTT group have been preconfigured in MCPTT client 2, and MCPTT client 2 has received the relevant security related information to allow communication in the regroup MCPTT group.
- In order to be aware whether the group is regrouped, the MCPTT server is subscribed to the group configuration in GMS.
- The GMS has subscribed group dynamic data as specified in subclause 10.1.5.5.1 from the MCPTT server within the same MCPTT system using the procedures defined in subclause 10.1.5.6 in TS 23.280 [16].

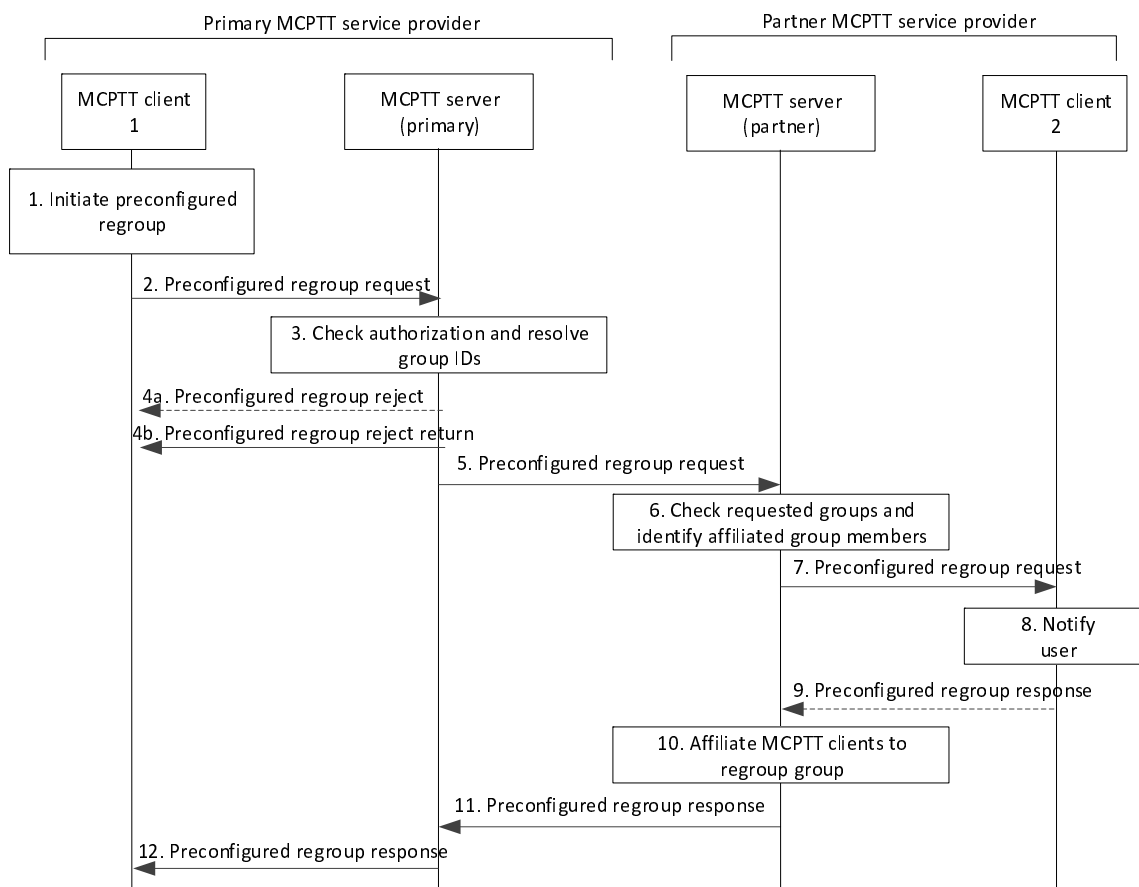


Figure 10.6.2.9.3.1-1: Regroup procedure using preconfigured group in multiple MCPTT systems

1. The authorized user of MCPTT client 1 initiates the regroup procedure, specifying the list of MCPTT groups to be regrouped including MCPTT group 1, the MCPTT group ID of the regroup group (if available) and the MCPTT group ID of the group from which configuration information for the regroup group is to be taken.
2. MCPTT client 1 sends the preconfigured regroup request to the MCPTT server.
3. The MCPTT server checks that MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate a preconfigured regroup procedure, and resolves the group identities of the MCPTT groups requested in step 1. The MCPTT server also checks which group members are affiliated to the requested MCPTT groups that are homed in the primary MCPTT system. The MCPTT server identifies any partner systems which are the group home systems for MCPTT groups identified in the list of groups to be regrouped. The MCPTT server may retrieve the configuration for the regroup group from the GMS if that configuration information is not already known to the MCPTT server. If the preconfigured regroup request is authorized, the MCPTT server assigns a MCPTT group ID for this regroup group call if:
  - i. one is not provided in the request or
  - ii. the one provided in the request is not accepted.

NOTE 1: This procedure does not require that the authorized user of MCPTT client 1 is a group member of the MCPTT groups listed in the regroup request, or that the authorized user of MCPTT client 1 is an affiliated group member of any of the listed MCPTT groups.

- 4a. If the MCPTT server determines that any of the groups requested for regrouping, including the regroup group, have been regrouped by other group regrouping procedures, the MCPTT server then sends a preconfigured regroup reject back to MCPTT client 1 with a reject reason indicating that one of the groups has already been regrouped, and this procedure terminates.
- 4b. The MCPTT server shall send the preconfigured regroup request return message to MCPTT client 1 containing the below:
  - i. the MCPTT group ID is generated by the MCPTT server; and
  - ii. result of whether the ad hoc group call is authorized or not

If the preconfigured regroup request is not authorized, MCPTT client 1 shall not proceed with the rest of the steps.

5. The MCPTT server sends the preconfigured regroup requests to the MCPTT server in the partner MCPTT system.
  6. The partner MCPTT server checks the status of any MCPTT groups hosted by that partner MCPTT server, and identifies affiliated group members of any of the identified MCPTT groups (both MCPTT groups that are hosted in the primary MCPTT system and MCPTT groups that are hosted in the partner MCPTT system) that are receiving MCPTT service in the partner MCPTT system, which include MCPTT client 2.
  7. The partner MCPTT server sends the preconfigured regroup request to MCPTT client 2.
- NOTE 2: Only group members that are affiliated to the MCPTT groups that are to be regrouped are sent a preconfigured regroup request.
8. MCPTT client 2 notifies the user of the regrouping.
  9. MCPTT client 2 may send the preconfigured regroup response to the partner MCPTT server to acknowledge the regrouping action. This acknowledgement is not sent in response to a multicast transmission of the preconfigured regroup request.
  10. The partner MCPTT server affiliates the regrouped MCPTT client 2 to the regroup group.
  11. The MCPTT server sends a preconfigured regroup response to the primary MCPTT server.
  12. The primary MCPTT server sends the preconfigured regroup response to MCPTT client 1.

After the group regrouping procedure, the regrouping remains in effect until explicitly cancelled by the procedure in 10.6.2.9.3.2.

MCPTT client participation in the ongoing regroup persists until the MCPTT client is no longer affiliated to any of the regrouped groups (group 1 or 2 in this procedure).

MCPTT client affiliation to the regroup group may cease when the UE's MCPTT service ceases, e.g. when the UE is powered down, or by performing a log-off operation.

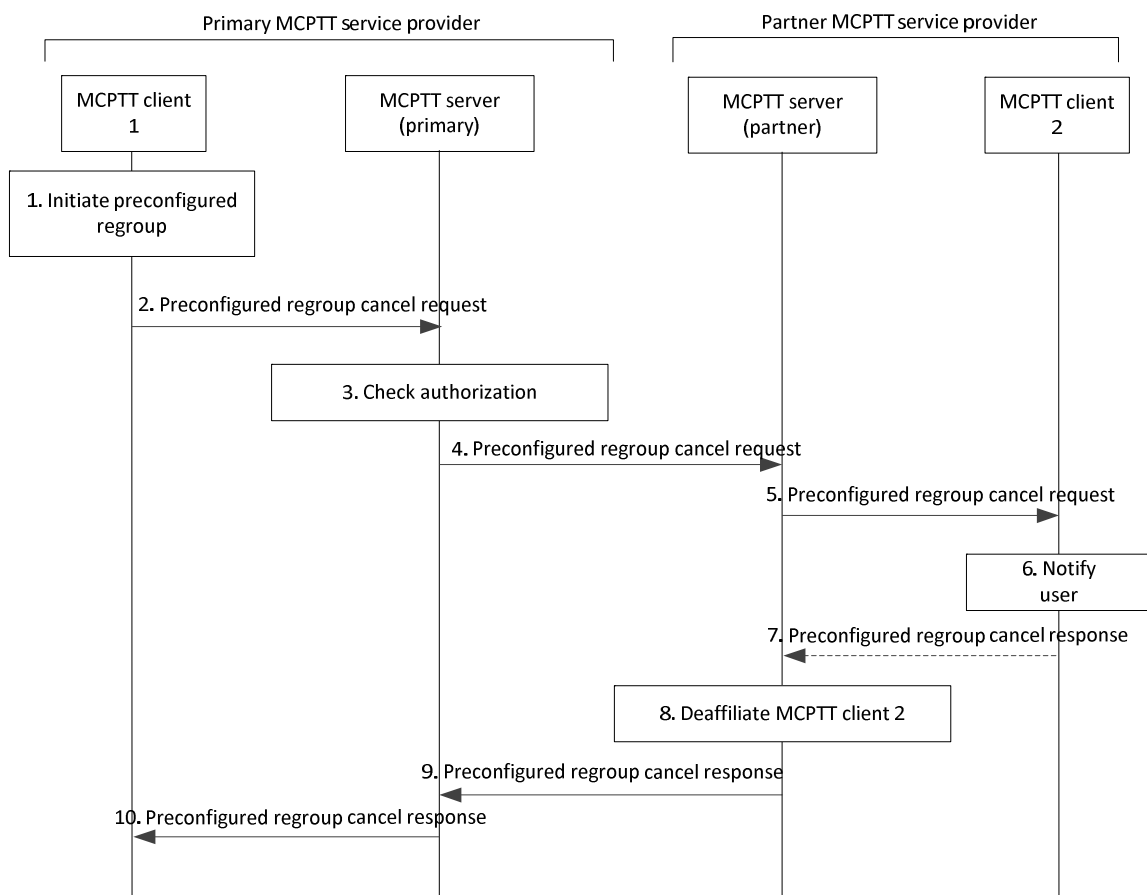
**Editor's note:** Data persistence in the MCPTT client following a user log-off or power down needs further study.

#### 10.6.2.9.3.2 Regroup cancellation using preconfigured group in multiple MCPTT systems

Figure 10.6.2.9.3.2-1 illustrates the procedure to cancel a regrouping that uses a preconfigured MCPTT group where multiple MCPTT systems were involved in the regrouping.

Pre-conditions:

- MCPTT client 2 has been regrouped into an MCPTT regroup group, and is receiving MCPTT service in the partner MCPTT system of the regroup group.
- MCPTT client 1 is authorized to cancel a regrouping that uses a preconfigured MCPTT group, and is receiving MCPTT service in the primary MCPTT system of the regroup group.
- The GMS has subscribed to group dynamic data as specified in subclause 10.1.5.5.1 from the MCPTT server within the same MCPTT system using the procedures defined in subclause 10.1.5.6 in TS 23.280 [16].



**Figure 10.6.2.9.3.2-1: Cancel preconfigured regroup procedure using preconfigured group in multiple MCPTT systems**

1. The authorized user of MCPTT client 1 initiates the cancellation of the regrouping that uses a preconfigured MCPTT group.
2. MCPTT client 1 sends the preconfigured regroup cancel request to the MCPTT server, specifying the MCPTT group ID of the regroup group.

3. The MCPTT server checks that MCPTT client 1 is authorized to cancel a regrouping that uses a preconfigured group regroup procedure.
4. The primary MCPTT server sends the regroup cancel request to the partner MCPTT server.
5. The partner MCPTT server sends the preconfigured regroup cancel requests to MCPTT client 2.
6. MCPTT client 2 notifies the user of the cancellation of the group regrouping.
7. MCPTT client 2 may send the preconfigured regroup remove response to the partner MCPTT server to acknowledge the cancellation of the regrouping function. This acknowledgement is not sent in response to a multicast transmission of the preconfigured regroup cancel request.
8. The partner MCPTT server de-affiliates MCPTT client 2 from the MCPTT regroup group.
9. The partner MCPTT server sends the preconfigured regroup cancel response to the primary MCPTT server.
10. The primary MCPTT server sends a preconfigured regroup cancel response to MCPTT client 1.

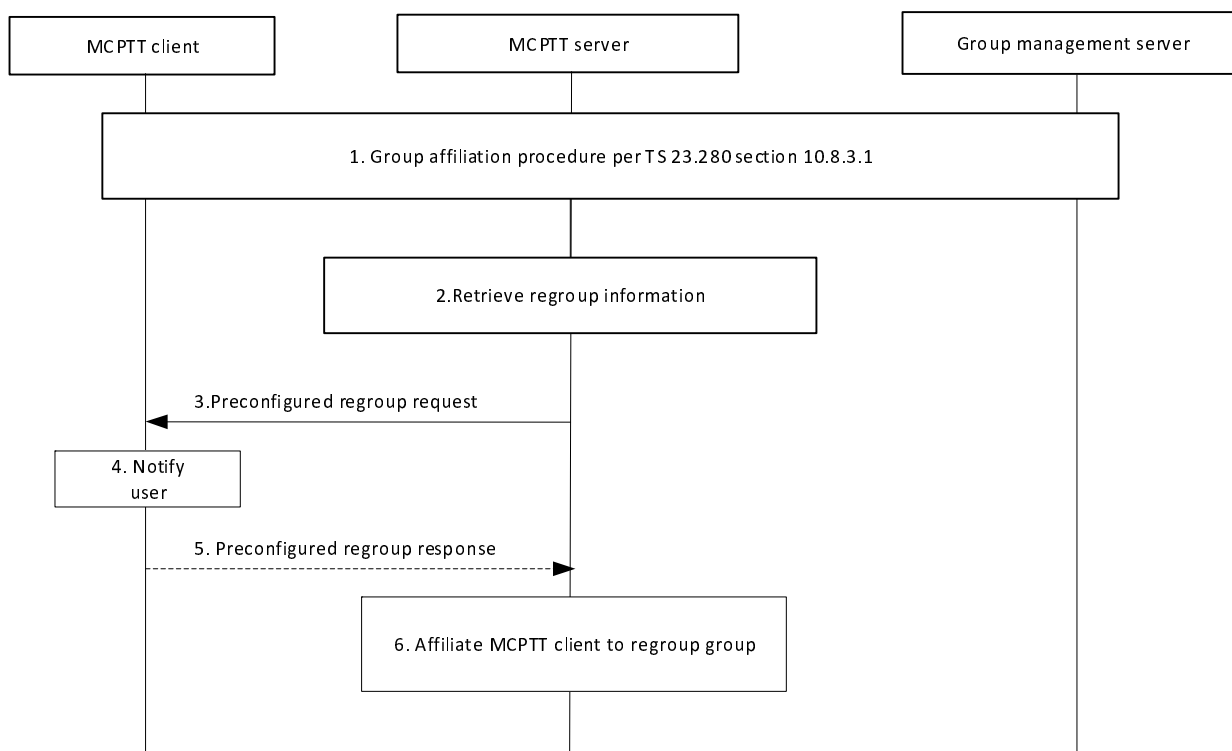
10.6.2.9.3.3            Void

#### 10.6.2.9.4            Adding newly affiliated user to preconfigured group regroup

Figure 10.6.2.9.4-1 illustrates the procedure to add a newly affiliated user to an in-progress preconfigured MCPTT group regroup operation.

Pre-conditions:

- The MCPTT client is a member of a MCPTT group that is part of an in-progress preconfigured group regroup operation.
- The MCPTT group identity and group configuration for the regroup MCPTT group has been preconfigured in the MCPTT client, and the MCPTT client has received the relevant security related information to allow it to communicate in the regroup MCPTT group.



**Figure 10.6.2.9.4-1: Procedure to add a newly affiliated user to a preconfigured regroup**

1. The MCPTT client affiliates to an MCPTT group that is currently part of an in-progress preconfigured group regroup. The affiliation follows the procedure in clause 10.8.3.1 of TS 23.280 [16].
2. The MCPTT server retrieves the MCPTT group ID of the regroup group and the MCPTT group ID of the group from which configuration information for the regroup group is to be taken.
3. The MCPTT server sends the preconfigured regroup request to the MCPTT client.
4. The MCPTT client notifies the user of the regrouping.
5. The MCPTT client may send the preconfigured regroup response to the MCPTT server to acknowledge the regrouping action. These acknowledgements are not sent in response to a multicast transmission of the preconfigured regroup request.
6. The MCPTT server affiliates the regrouped MCPTT client to the regroup group.

**Editor's Note:** It is FFS whether this procedure can be generalized to apply to both preconfigured and GMS-based group regrouping.

**Editor's Note:** Affiliations of the MCPTT client to the pre-configured regroup group in the MCPTT server and coordination to the MC System is FFS.

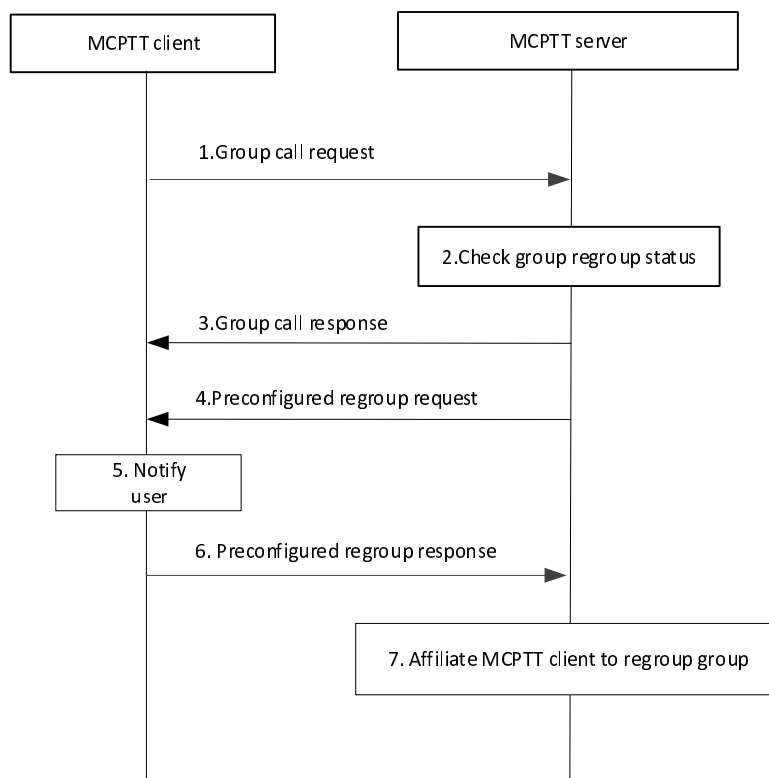
#### 10.6.2.9.5 Preconfigured regroup update procedures

##### 10.6.2.9.5.1 MCPTT client PTTs on MCPTT group during an in-progress preconfigured group regroup

Figure 10.6.2.9.5.1-1 illustrates the procedure when a user attempts to setup an MCPTT group call on a group involved in an in-progress preconfigured MCPTT group regroup.

Pre-conditions:

- The MCPTT client is an affiliated member of MCPTT group A that is part of an in-progress preconfigured group regroup with MCPTT groups B and C.
- MCPTT group D is being used as the preconfigured regroup group.
- The MCPTT client has missed the preconfigured regroup request message (e.g. poor signalling conditions, race condition).



**Figure 10.6.2.9.5.1-1: Procedure for MCPTT client PTTs on MCPTT group during an in-progress preconfigured group regroup**

1. The MCPTT client attempts to start a call on MCPTT group A. The MCPTT client sends a group call request message to the MCPTT server containing MCPTT group A as the target group.
2. The MCPTT server checks to see whether MCPTT group A is currently part of a preconfigured group regroup. In this case the group is part of an active preconfigured group regroup.
3. The MCPTT server sends a group call response to the MCPTT client indicating that the call setup is denied because the group is part of an in-progress group regroup.
4. The MCPTT server sends the preconfigured regroup request to the MCPTT client containing MCPTT group D, the group ID of the preconfigured group.

NOTE 1: This message should be sent over unicast.

5. The MCPTT client notifies the user of the group call setup failure and of the regrouping procedure.
6. The MCPTT client sends the preconfigured regroup response to the MCPTT server to acknowledge the regrouping action.
7. The MCPTT server affiliates the regrouped MCPTT client to the regroup group.

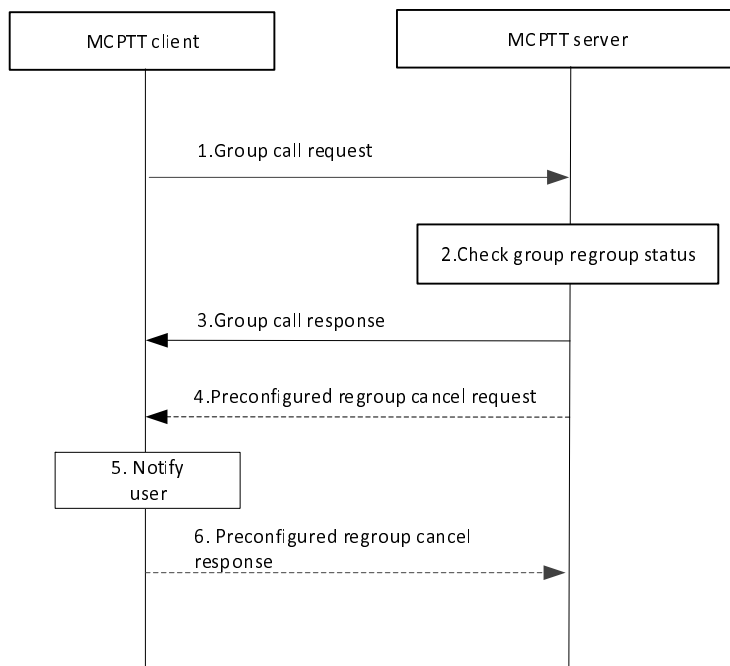
NOTE 2: If there is a call currently in progress on the regroup group then this MCPTT client can be added to the call using the late entry procedure. If there is no call currently in progress, then the MCPTT user can retry the group call setup.

### 10.6.2.9.5.2 MCPTT client PTTs on preconfigured regroup group after group regroup has been cancelled

Figure 10.6.2.9.5.2-1 illustrates the procedure when a user attempts to setup a MCPTT group call on a preconfigured regroup group after the preconfigured MCPTT group regroup has been cancelled.

Pre-conditions:

- The MCPTT client is a member of MCPTT group A that was part of an in-progress preconfigured group regroup with MCPTT groups B and C that has been cancelled. MCPTT group D was used as the MCPTT regroup group.
- The MCPTT client has missed the preconfigured regroup cancel request message (e.g. poor signalling conditions, race condition).



**Figure 10.6.2.9.5.2-1: Procedure for MCPTT client PTTs on regroup group after the group regroup is cancelled**

1. The MCPTT client attempts to start a call on MCPTT group D, the MCPTT regroup group. The MCPTT client sends a group call request message to the MCPTT server containing MCPTT group D as the target group.
2. The MCPTT server checks to see whether MCPTT group D is currently being used as part of a preconfigured group regroup. In this case the preconfigured group regroup is no longer active.

NOTE 1: The regroup group D can be a group in the MCPTT client's profile, and the MCPTT client can be a member of group D.

3. The MCPTT server sends a group call response to the MCPTT client indicating that the call setup is denied because the group regroup is no longer active.

NOTE 2: In the following, steps 4 and 6 are optional.

4. The MCPTT server sends the preconfigured regroup cancel request to the MCPTT client.

NOTE 3: This message should be sent over unicast.

5. The MCPTT client notifies the user of the group call setup failure and of the regrouping cancellation.

6. The MCPTT client sends the preconfigured regroup cancel response to the MCPTT server to acknowledge the regrouping cancellation.

NOTE 4: If there is a call currently in progress on MCPTT group A that was previously part of the group regroup then this MCPTT client can be added to the call using the late entry procedure. If there is no call currently in progress then the MCPTT user can retry the group call setup on MCPTT group A.

## 10.6.2.10 User regroup using group creation procedure

### 10.6.2.10.1 General

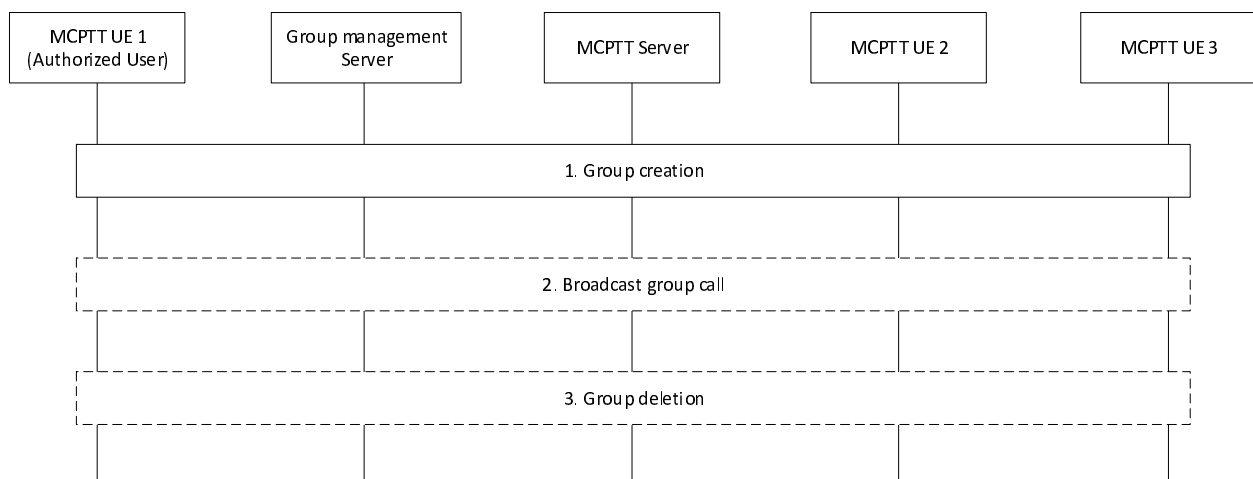
User regroup using the group creation procedure can be initiated by an authorized user creating a temporary group with a list of MCPTT users. The group ID for this temporary group can be provided at the time of group creation. The temporary group can be used by all MCPTT users in the list for two-way (non-broadcast) communication until deleted by an authorized user. Optionally, the group can be used for one-way (broadcast) communication where the creator of the temporary group can make a broadcast group call, but the other MCPTT users can only listen to the group call and cannot respond.

### 10.6.2.10.2 Temporary group creation and broadcast group call by authorized user

Figure 10.6.2.10.2-1 below illustrates the temporary group creation, and optional broadcast call setup procedure and temporary group deletion initiated by an authorized user.

Pre-conditions:

1. The authorized user is aware of the MCPTT users who will be included in the temporary group.



**Figure 10.6.2.10.2-1: User regroup using group creation procedure**

1. The authorized user of MCPTT UE 1 makes use of the group management client of MCPTT UE 1 to create the temporary group according to the group creation procedure in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16] subclause 10.2.3. The configuration identifies the group as a temporary group. As part of this procedure, the MCPTT users are notified of their membership to the temporary group, and the MCPTT server is notified about the creation of the group and the list of group members. Alternatively, the MCPTT client 1 (not shown in the figure) on MCPTT UE 1 can provide the criteria which allows the MCPTT server to determine the list of MCPTT users to be regrouped.

The authorized user can create the group as a broadcast group by configuring it as a broadcast group.

NOTE 1: After step 1 the temporary group can be used by all members of the group for two-way (non-broadcast) communication until deleted by an authorized user.

NOTE 2: The following two steps are optional and can be used for broadcast communication where only the creator of the temporary group is allowed to transmit media on this temporary group.

2. The creator of the temporary group, the authorized user of MCPTT UE 1, initiates a broadcast group call according to the procedure described in subclause 10.6.2.5.2 of the present document. The authorized user of MCPTT UE 1 is implicitly affiliated to the temporary group. The receiving MCPTT clients of MCPTT UEs 2 and 3 are implicitly affiliated to the group and are notified of this affiliation during the call setup.
3. The authorized user of MCPTT UE 1 ends the use of the temporary group according to the procedure for group deletion described in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

#### 10.6.2.10.3 Temporary group deletion by authorized user

If the authorized user wishes to end the use of the temporary group, the procedure for group deletion described in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16] is followed.

### 10.6.2.11 Broadcast group regroup call using preconfigured group

#### 10.6.2.11.1 General

The temporary group created using a preconfigured group can be a broadcast group or a non-broadcast group. The broadcast regroup is used for one-way communication where only an authorized MCPTT user is allowed to transmit and all other regroup members are only allowed to receive the communication (e.g. a call from a dispatcher to all regroup members). The non-broadcast regroup is used for two-way communication where all regroup members can transmit and receive (i.e. the regroup group call behaves like a normal non-broadcast group call). The broadcast regroup satisfies the temporary group-broadcast group requirements defined in 3GPP TS 22.280 [2].

A broadcast group regroup call using preconfigured groups can be achieved by first regrouping MCPTT groups into an MCPTT regroup group, making the broadcast group call on the regroup group, and then cancelling the preconfigured group regroup.

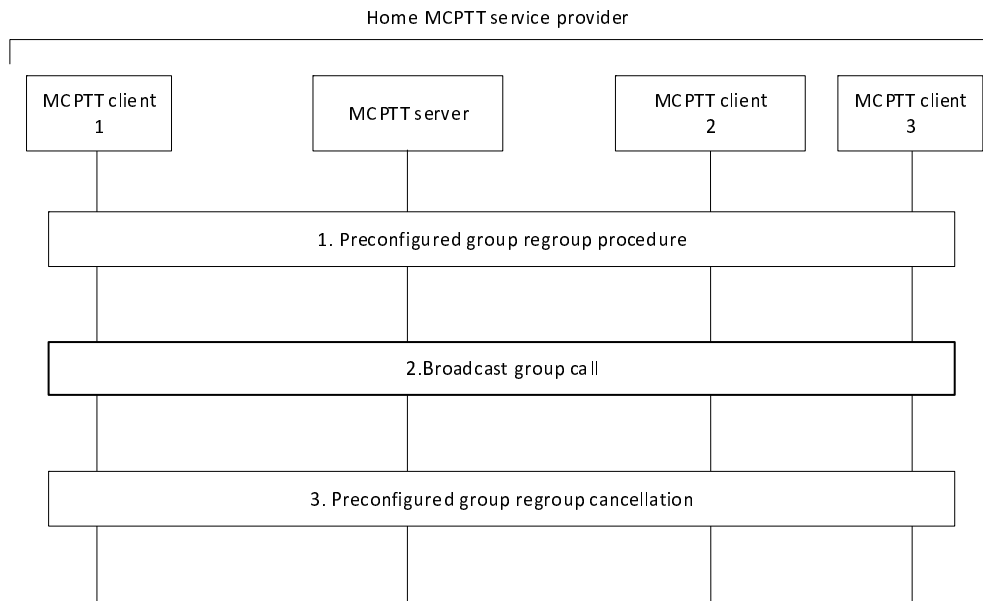
#### 10.6.2.11.2 Broadcast group regroup call procedure using preconfigured group in a single MCPTT system

The broadcast group regroup call procedure using preconfigured group allows an authorized MCPTT user to initiate a broadcast call to a set of MCPTT groups, which are regrouped only for the duration of the broadcast call. The regroup is cancelled at the end of the broadcast call to prevent users from talking back on the regroup group. This procedure requires that the authorized MCPTT user is a group member of at least one of the MCPTT groups included in the regroup operation.

Figure 10.6.2.11.2-1 illustrates the procedure to initiate a broadcast group regroup call using a preconfigured MCPTT group.

Pre-conditions:

- MCPTT clients 1, 2, and 3 are registered with the MCPTT service.
- The group configuration for the MCPTT regroup group have been preconfigured in MCPTT clients 1, 2, and 3, and MCPTT clients 1, 2 and 3 have received the relevant security related information to allow them to communicate in the regroup MCPTT group.
- MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate a group regroup using the preconfigured regroup procedure.
- MCPTT client 1 is aware of a suitable preconfigured group whose configuration has been preconfigured in the MC service UEs of the MCPTT users who will be regrouped.
- MCPTT client 1 is affiliated to group 1, MCPTT client 2 is affiliated to group 2, and MCPTT client 3 is affiliated to group 3. Group 4 is used as the regroup group.



**Figure 10.6.2.11.2-1: Broadcast group regroup call using preconfigured group in a single MCPTT system**

1. The authorized user of MCPTT client 1 initiates the group regroup formation procedure using preconfigured groups as specified in 10.6.2.9.2.1. MCPTT groups 1, 2, and 3 are regrouped into group 4.
2. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 performs the broadcast group call procedure as specified in 10.6.2.5.2.
3. If the broadcast group call is made on the regroup group 4, the MCPTT client 1 initiates the preconfigured group regroup cancellation procedure as specified in 10.6.2.9.2.2.

## 10.6.2.12 User regroup with preconfigured group

### 10.6.2.12.1 General

A user regroup may be achieved by regrouping MCPTT users into a new regroup group which uses the configuration of a separate preconfigured MCPTT group. The MCPTT regroup group configuration needs to be provided to the relevant MCPTT users who will be regrouped in advance of the regrouping operation. User regroup with preconfigured group satisfies user regroup requirements in 3GPP TS 22.180 [17], particularly [R-6.6.4.2-003].

NOTE 1: A preconfigured group which is intended only to provide configuration for the preconfigured regroup process is identified by a parameter in the group configuration described in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

NOTE 2: The configuration may alternatively be taken from any MCPTT group that has been configured in the user profile of all of the relevant MCPTT users who will be regrouped.

The preconfigured MCPTT group that provides the configuration is not used as the MCPTT regroup group itself, it only provides configuration for one or more MCPTT regroup groups. The MCPTT group ID of the regroup group is provided by the authorized user when the preconfigured regrouping is carried out.

### 10.6.2.12.2 User regroup procedures in a single MCPTT system

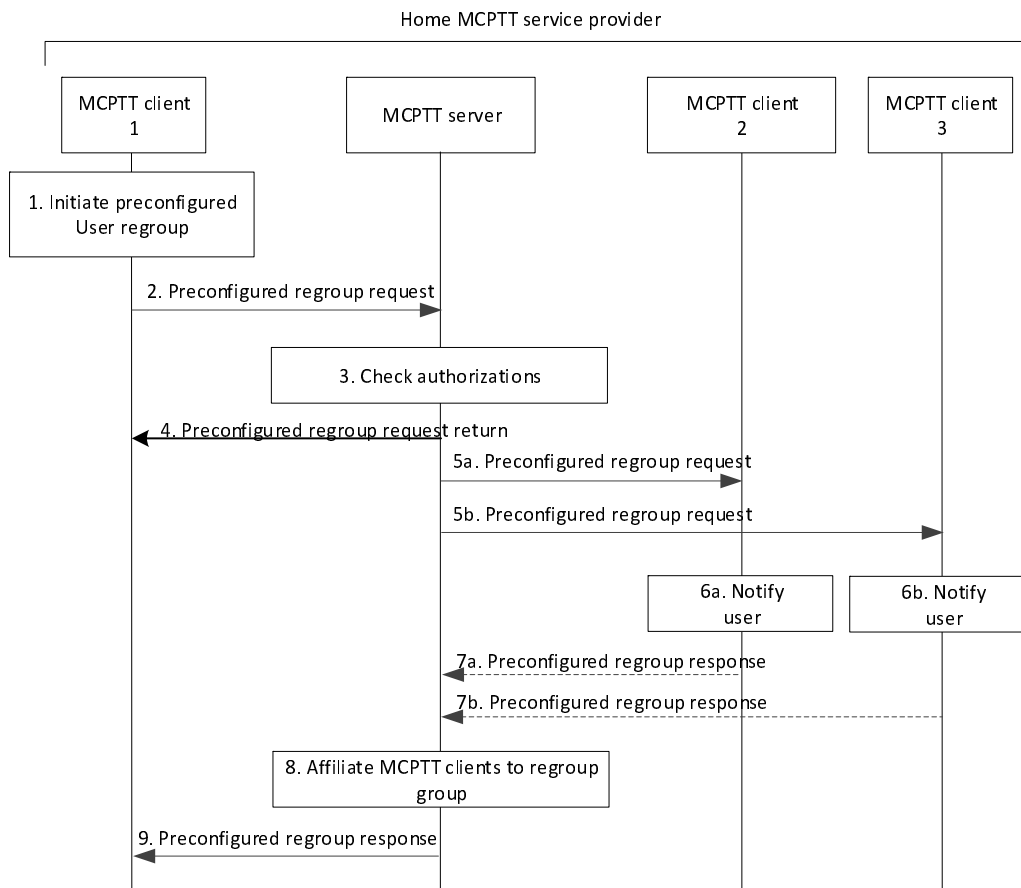
#### 10.6.2.12.2.1 User regroup formation in a single MCPTT system

Figure 10.6.2.12.2.1-1 illustrates the procedure to initiate a user regroup procedure using a preconfigured MCPTT group. The procedure takes place prior to the establishment of a group call to the MCPTT regroup group.

Pre-conditions:

- MCPTT clients 2 and 3 are registered with the MCPTT service.

- An MCPTT group that will be used for configuration of the temporary user regroup group has been preconfigured in MCPTT clients 2 and 3, and MCPTT clients 2 and 3 have received the relevant security related information to allow them to communicate in the temporary user regroup group.
- MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate a user regroup using the preconfigured regroup procedure.
- MCPTT client 1 is aware of a suitable preconfigured group whose configuration has been preconfigured in the MCPTT UEs of the MCPTT users who will be regrouped.



**Figure 10.6.2.12.2.1-1: User regroup procedure using preconfigured group in single MCPTT system**

1. The authorized user of MCPTT client 1 initiates the user regroup procedure, specifying the list of MCPTT users to be regrouped (MCPTT clients 2 and 3), the MCPTT group ID of the regroup group (if available), and the MCPTT group ID of the group from which configuration information for the regroup group is to be taken. Alternatively, the MCPTT client 1 can provide the criteria which allows the MCPTT server to determine the list of MCPTT users to be regrouped.
2. MCPTT client 1 sends the preconfigured regroup request to the MCPTT server. The request indicates the list of users to be included in the regroup operation.
3. The MCPTT server checks that MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate a preconfigured regroup procedure. If the preconfigured regroup request is authorized, the MCPTT server assigns a MCPTT group ID for this regroup group call if:
  - i. one is not provided in the request or
  - ii. the one provided in the request is not accepted.

NOTE 1: MCPTT clients can be involved in multiple user and group regroups simultaneously.

4. The MCPTT server shall send the preconfigured regroup request return message to MCPTT client 1 containing the below:

- i. the MCPTT group ID is generated by the MCPTT server; and
- ii. result of whether the ad hoc group call is authorized or not

If the preconfigured regroup request is not authorized, MCPTT client 1 shall not proceed with the rest of the steps.

5. The MCPTT server sends the preconfigured regroup requests to MCPTT clients 2 and 3 in steps 4a and 4b respectively.

NOTE 2: When using multicast, the MCPTT server can periodically rebroadcast the preconfigured regroup request.

6. MCPTT clients 2 and 3 notify their users of the regrouping in steps 5a and 5b respectively.
7. MCPTT clients 2 and 3 may send the preconfigured regroup response to the MCPTT server to acknowledge the regrouping action. These acknowledgements are not sent in response to a multicast transmission of the preconfigured regroup request.
8. The MCPTT server affiliates the regrouped MCPTT clients to the regroup group.
9. The MCPTT server sends a preconfigured regroup response to MCPTT client 1.

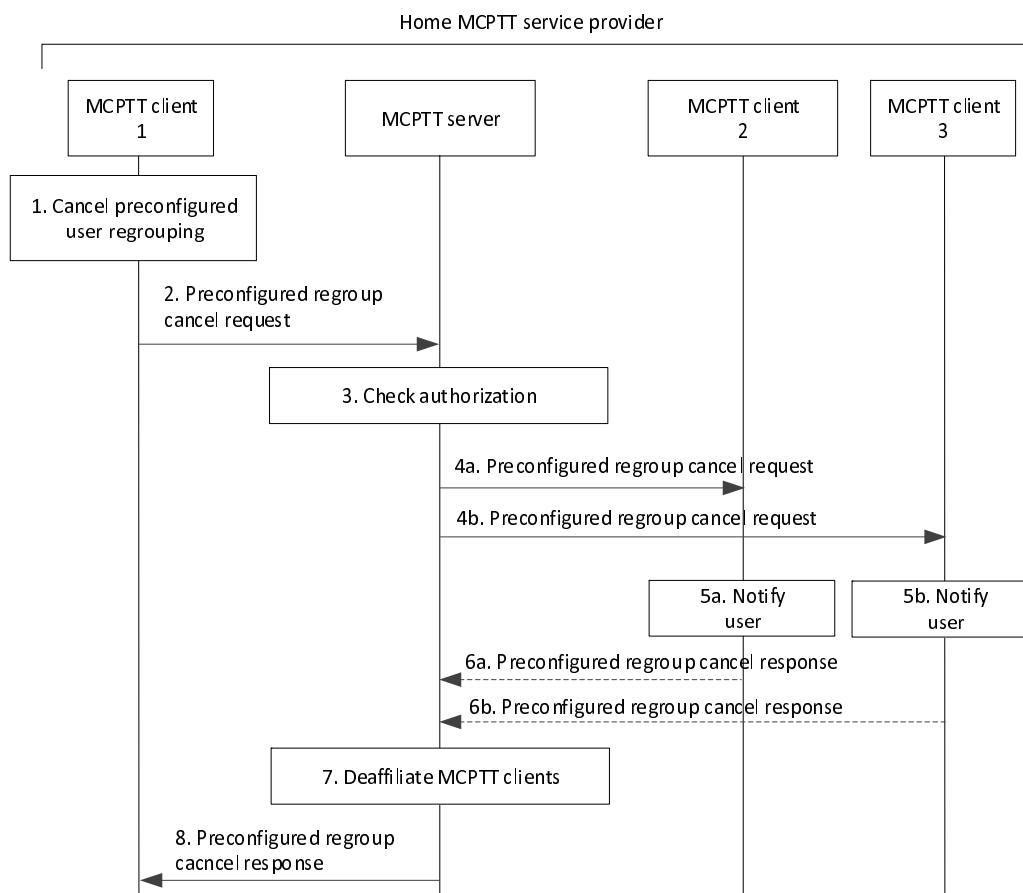
NOTE 3: After the user regrouping procedure, the regrouping remains in effect until explicitly cancelled by the procedure in 10.6.2.12.2.2.

#### 10.6.2.12.2.2 User regroup cancellation in single MCPTT system

Figure 10.6.2.12.2.2-1 illustrates the procedure to cancel a user regrouping that uses a preconfigured MCPTT group.

Pre-conditions:

- MCPTT clients 2 and 3 have been regrouped into an MCPTT regroup group.
- MCPTT client 1 is authorized to cancel a user regrouping that uses a preconfigured MCPTT group.



**Figure 10.6.2.12.2.2-1: Cancel preconfigured user regroup procedure in single MCPTT system**

1. The authorized user of MCPTT client 1 initiates the cancellation of the user regrouping that uses a preconfigured MCPTT group.
2. MCPTT client 1 sends the preconfigured regroup cancel request to the MCPTT server, specifying the MCPTT group ID of the regroup group.
3. The MCPTT server checks that MCPTT client 1 is authorized to cancel a regrouping that uses a preconfigured user regroup procedure.
4. The MCPTT server sends the preconfigured regroup cancel requests to MCPTT clients 2 and 3 (steps 4a and 4b respectively).
5. MCPTT clients 2 and 3 notify their users of the cancellation of the user regrouping in steps 5a and 5b respectively.
6. MCPTT clients 2 and 3 may send the preconfigured regroup cancel response to the MCPTT server to acknowledge the cancellation of the regrouping function. These acknowledgements are not sent in response to a multicast transmission of the preconfigured regroup cancel request.
7. The MCPTT server de-affiliates MCPTT clients 2 and 3 from the MCPTT regroup group.
8. The MCPTT server sends a preconfigured regroup cancel response to MCPTT client 1.

### 10.6.2.12.3 User regroup MCPTT ID list update

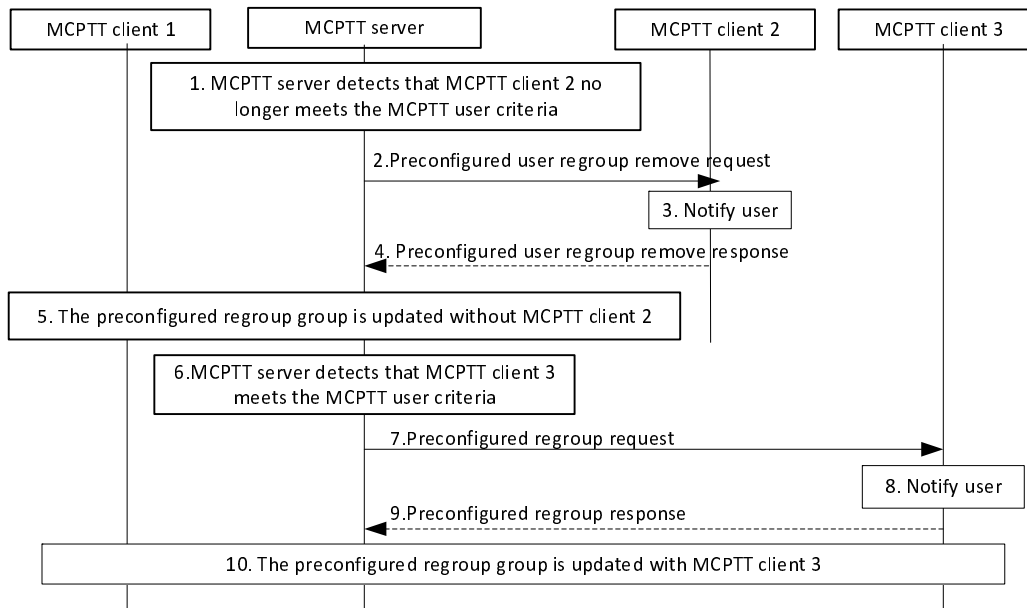
Figure 10.6.2.12.3-1 illustrates the procedure to add or remove an MCPTT user based on the MCPTT user criteria known at the MC service server.

NOTE 1: This procedure applies to MCPTT users that have been added and are to be added to the preconfigured regroup group based on MCPTT user criteria known at the MCPTT server. If only the criteria are to be applied, then only the criteria are included in the request and both the group and user lists are not included

Preconditions:

- A preconfigured regroup group has been established.
- The MCPTT server has selected MCPTT user 2 to participate in the preconfigured regroup group based on MCPTT user criteria known at the MCPTT server.

NOTE 2: Other participants of the preconfigured regroup group are not shown in figure 10.6.2.12.x-1 for simplicity.



**Figure 10.6.2.12.3-1: Procedure to update the MCPTT ID list**

1. The MCPTT server detects that MCPTT client 2, which has been earlier included in the preconfigured regroup group, no longer meets the MCPTT user criteria known at the MCPTT server.
2. The MCPTT server sends MCPTT client 2 a preconfigured user regroup remove request.
3. The MCPTT client 2 notifies the MCPTT user of the preconfigured user regroup removal.
4. The MCPTT client 2 may send the MCPTT server a preconfigured user regroup remove response to acknowledge the preconfigured user regroup removal.
5. The MCPTT server updates the preconfigured regroup group (including the MCPTT user ID list) and potential group communication.
6. The MCPTT server detects that the MCPTT client 3 meets the MCPTT user criteria.
7. The MCPTT server sends the MCPTT client 3 a preconfigured regroup request.
8. The MCPTT client 3 notifies the MCPTT user of the preconfigured regroup request.
9. The MCPTT client 3 may send the MCPTT server a preconfigured regroup response.
10. The MCPTT server updates the preconfigured regroup group (including the MCPTT ID list), and potential group communication.

## 10.6.3 Off-network group call

### 10.6.3.1 General

When an MCPTT user using a ProSe-enabled UE wants to communicate with a specific MCPTT group using ProSe capabilities, the MCPTT client enables the use of the ProSe layer procedures for public safety, as specified in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7].

The MCPTT client obtains configuration data such as the user info ID of the calling MCPTT user and the ProSe Group IP multicast address and ProSe Layer-2 Group ID associated to the target MCPTT group (as described in clause 8.1.3.2 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]), and provides it to the ProSe layer. The ProSe Layer-2 Group ID of the target MCPTT group may be used by the ProSe layer as the target group info and the discovery group ID (defined in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7]).

Prior to the establishment of an off-network group call, a group member discovery procedure may be initiated to identify whether other members of the target MCPTT group are in the proximity of the calling MCPTT user, as described in the ProSe direct discovery for public safety use procedure in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7]. The establishment of an off-network group call using the ProSe capability is based on the one-to-many ProSe direct communication procedure for public safety use described in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7].

Off-network group calls can use pre-defined configuration information provided to MCPTT clients prior to the off-network group call or configuration information that is transmitted to MCPTT clients during group call setup or late entry procedures.

If off-network group configuration information is pre-defined (e.g. codec to be used) and provided to the MCPTT clients prior to the off-network group call (e.g. as part of group metadata), the MCPTT client will be able to participate in the off-network group call without needing to follow the group call setup or late joining procedures as they will be able to receive the media and signalling without the need for the announcement or invitation.

If off-network group configuration information is not pre-defined or provided, call parameters need to be transmitted to MCPTT clients via group call announcement or invitation.

**NOTE:** When the MCPTT client receives a message that is not addressed to either its MCPTT ID or to any MCPTT group of which the MCPTT client is an affiliated group member, the MCPTT client ignores the message.

### 10.6.3.2 Information flows for group call in off-network

#### 10.6.3.2.1 Group call announcement

Table 10.6.3.2.1-1 describes the information flow for the group call announcement from the MCPTT client to other MCPTT clients.

**Table 10.6.3.2.1-1: Group call announcement**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the calling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID on which the call is to be conducted
Media type	M	Type of the media to be used for the call
Media codec	M	The media codec to be used for the call
Multi-cast port	M	Multicast port number for media
Floor control port number	M	Port number for floor control protocol
Announcement period	M	Period of the group call announcement
Encryption parameters	O	Encryption parameters to be used for the call, if the call is to be encrypted
Confirm mode indicator	O	Indicates whether the MCPTT group call is to be confirmed
Emergency indicator	O	Indicates that the MCPTT group call is an MCPTT emergency call
Imminent peril indicator	O	Indicates that the MCPTT group call is an MCPTT imminent peril call

#### 10.6.3.2.2 MCPTT upgrade to emergency call

Table 10.6.3.2.2-1 describes the information flow for the MCPTT upgrade to emergency call from the MCPTT client to other MCPTT clients.

**Table 10.6.3.2.2-1: MCPTT upgrade to emergency call**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the upgrading party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID on which the call is to be conducted

#### 10.6.3.2.3 MCPTT emergency group state cancel

Table 10.6.3.2.3-1 describes the information flow for the MCPTT emergency group state cancel from the MCPTT client to other MCPTT clients.

NOTE: In Rel-14 and Rel-13 versions of this specification the name of this information flow is "MCPTT emergency group cancel".

**Table 10.6.3.2.3-1: MCPTT emergency group state cancel**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the cancelling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID which emergency state is to be cancelled

#### 10.6.3.2.4 Response

Table 10.6.3.2.4-1 describes the information flow for the response.

**Table 10.6.3.2.4-1: Response**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the called party

10.6.3.2.5 Void

10.6.3.2.6 Void

10.6.3.2.7 MCPTT upgrade to imminent peril call

Table 10.6.3.2.7-1 describes the information flow for the MCPTT upgrade to imminent peril call from the MCPTT client to other MCPTT clients.

**Table 10.6.3.2.7-1: MCPTT upgrade to imminent peril call**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the upgrading party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the group to be upgraded

10.6.3.2.8 MCPTT imminent peril group call cancel

Table 10.6.3.2.8-1 describes the information flow MCPTT imminent peril group call cancel from the MCPTT client to other MCPTT clients.

**Table 10.6.3.2.8-1: MCPTT imminent peril group call cancel**

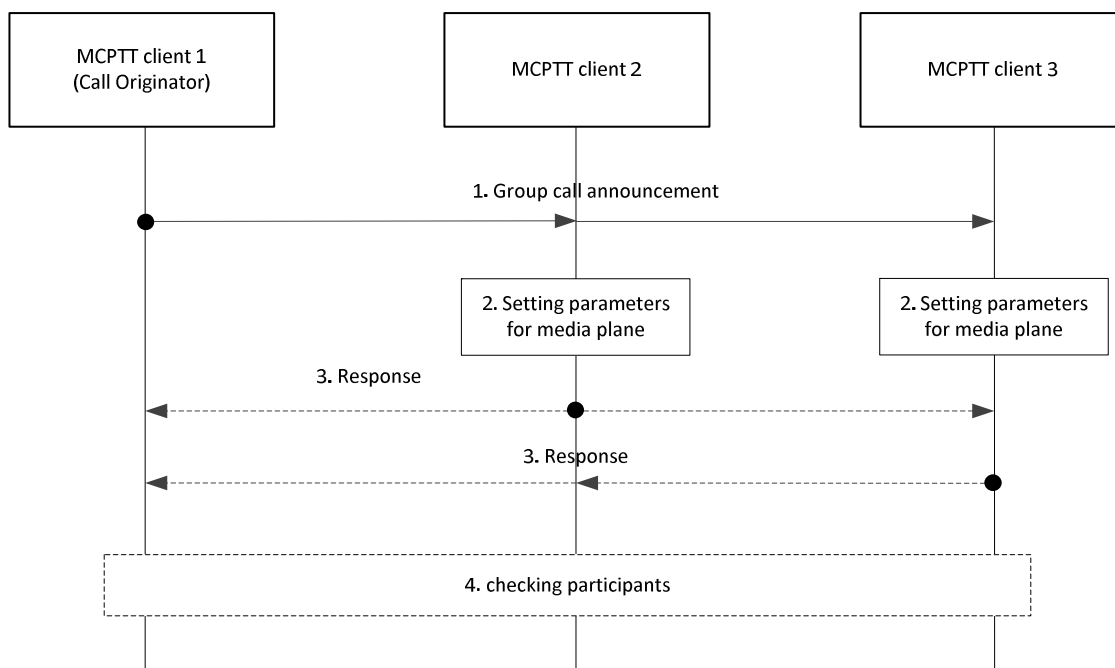
Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the cancelling party
MCPTT group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID on which the imminent peril is to be cancelled

### 10.6.3.3 Group call setup

The flow in figure 10 6.3.3-1 illustrates the control plane procedures for MCPTT group call establishment for off-network. The procedure describes how an MCPTT client initiates an MCPTT group call with other MCPTT client within the off-network radio coverage and how the group call is established.

Pre-conditions:

- It is assumed that information for ProSe direct communications corresponding to the mappings of MCPTT group ID and ProSe Layer-2 Group ID (see subclause 8.1.3.2 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]) are pre-configured;
- It is assumed that a multicast IP address and port for the call setup signalling are pre-configured;
- All messages exchanged between the MCPTT clients for the MCPTT group follows ProSe direct communications as defined in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7]; and
- The MCPTT users of MCPTT client 1, 2 and 3 belong to the same MCPTT group.



**Figure 10.6.3.3-1: Off-network group call setup**

1. MCPTT client 1 as the group call originator sends group call announcement message to the group. This message contains the following parameters such as MCPTT group ID, group call originator identity, media type, media codec, multicast port number for media, port number for floor control protocol, period of group call announcement, and any encryption key for the media encryption if needed, and optionally confirm mode indication.

NOTE 1: The group call announcement includes at least one common set of parameters and values for media transfer. Additional values per parameter will not be prohibited for the better user experience.

NOTE 2: By using the ProSe Layer-2 Group ID mapping with the MCPTT group ID, ProSe layer ensures that the messages sent for the corresponding MCPTT group are only received by its group's members.

2. MCPTT client 2, 3 join the group call. The MCPTT clients configure the parameters for media delivery by making use of the received parameters in group call announcement.
3. MCPTT client 2, 3 may send the response message to the group when the group call announcement from originator includes confirm mode indication. This message contains MCPTT ID.
4. MCPTT client 2, 3 recognize the group call originator through the group call announcement and MCPTT client 1 checks the participants of the group call through the received response message.

NOTE 3: Due to the movement of the participants (in and out of the radio coverage) during the off-network group call, the group call announcement message including parameters for media delivery is periodically sent.

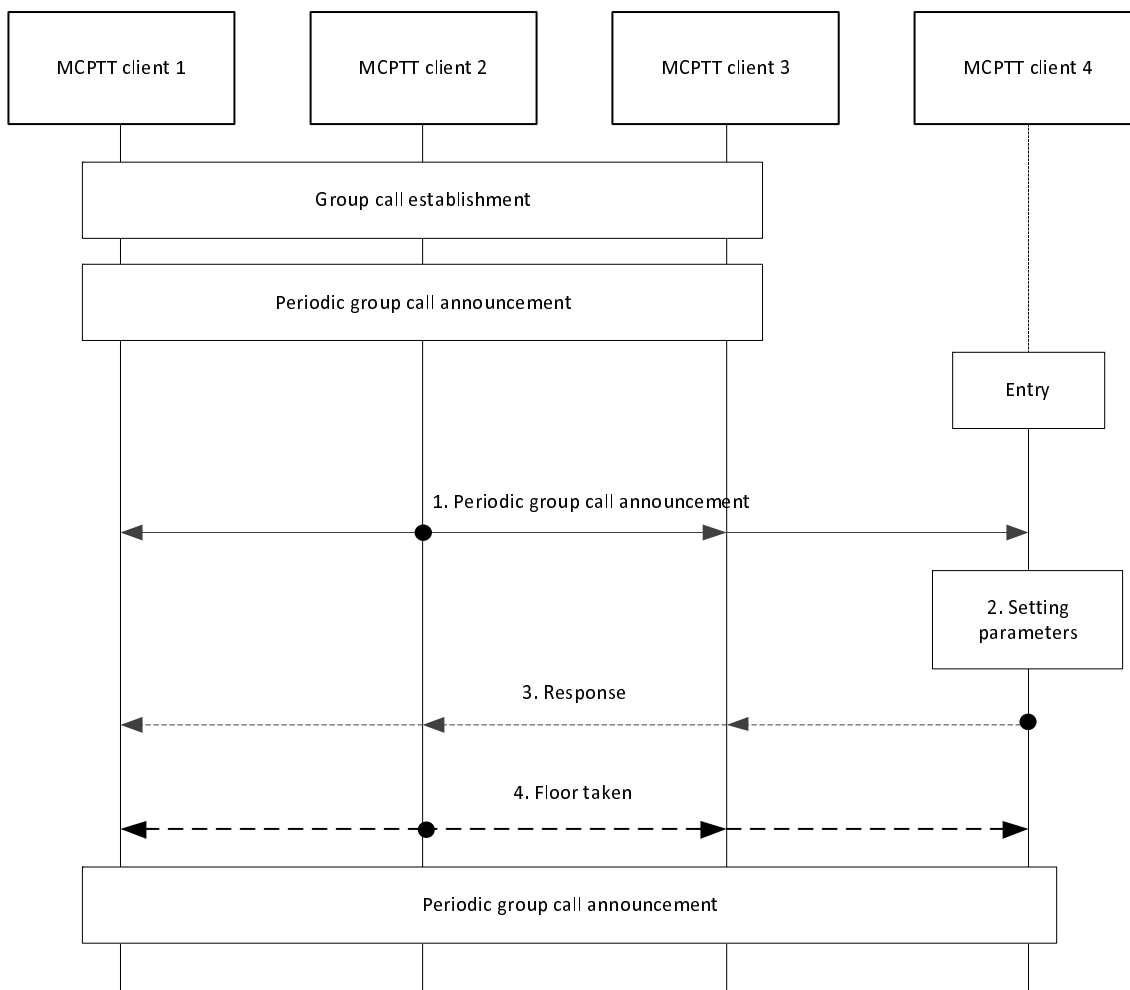
NOTE 4: The participating MCPTT clients do not need to respond to the periodic group call announcement.

#### 10.6.3.4 Passive join to group call

Figure 10.6.3.4-1 illustrates the control plane procedures for the passive MCPTT client to join the on-going MCPTT group call. The passive MCPTT client does not initiate to establish an MCPTT group call, but receives the group call announcement to be transferred periodically. When receiving the announcement message with parameters for media transfer, the passive MCPTT client configures the parameter to receive the voice and joins the announced MCPTT group call.

This procedure happens after the MCPTT group call is established. The group call announcement including the parameters for the media transfer has been performed periodically, in order for the MCPTT client later to join the MCPTT group call.

The MCPTT client 4 enters the coverage of the MCPTT group call lately.



**Figure 10.6.3.4-1: Passive join to group call**

1. MCPTT client 2 sends the group call announcement message. This message contains parameters such as MCPTT group ID, group call originator identity, media type, media codec, multicast port number for media, port number for floor control protocol, any encryption key for the media encryption if needed, and optionally confirm mode indication.

NOTE 1: The group call announcement includes at least one common set of parameters and values for media transfer. Additional values per parameter will not be prohibited for the better user experience.

2. MCPTT client 4 configures the parameters for media transfer by making use of the received parameters in group call announcement.
3. MCPTT client 4 may send the response message to the group when the periodic group call announcement includes confirm mode indication. This message contains the MCPTT ID.
4. MCPTT client 1, 2, 3 check through the received response message that the MCPTT client 4 joins the group call. The MCPTT client 2, as the floor control arbitrator, may send a floor taken message.

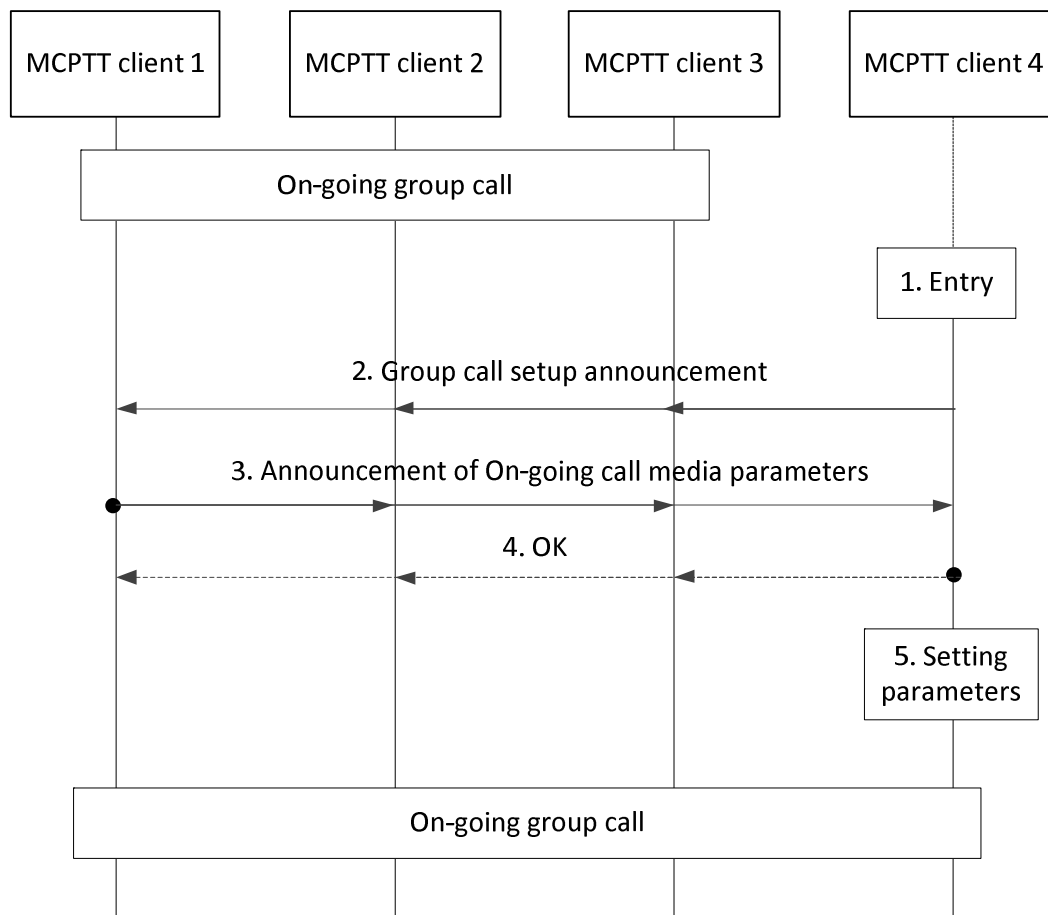
NOTE 2: Due to the movement of the participants (in and out of the radio coverage) during the off-network group call, the group call announcement message including parameters for media delivery is periodically sent.

NOTE 3: The participating MCPTT clients do not need to respond to the periodic group call announcement.

### 10.6.3.5 Join to ongoing group call when new entry member initiates the call with on-going group call id

Figure 10 6.3.5-1 illustrates the control plane procedures for an MCPTT client to join an on-going MCPTT group call. When entering the coverage of on-going group call, new MCPTT client may send group call setup announcement

message with on-going group call id. Upon receiving the group call setup announcement, the MCPTT client as a participant of on-going MCPTT group call sends parameters for media transfer to the newly entered MCPTT client (entrant) to join the on-going MCPTT group call. When receiving the parameters for media transfer of on-going MCPTT group call, the MCPTT client configures the parameters to receive the voice and becomes the participant of the on-going MCPTT group call.



**Figure 10.6.3.5-1: Late entry join when receiving MCPTT group call announcement with on-going MCPTT group ID**

1. MCPTT client 4 enters the coverage of the on-going MCPTT group call.
2. The new entry of MCPTT client 4 sends group call setup announcement with MCPTT group call id.
3. MCPTT client 1 as a participant of on-going MCPTT group call acknowledges that on-going MCPTT group call exists with MCPTT group call id sent by MCPTT client 4 and sends parameters for media transfer to MCPTT client 4.
4. MCPTT client 4 may send a response message.
5. MCPTT client 4 sets the parameters for media delivery in the on-going MCPTT group call.

MCPTT client 4 joins and becomes participants of the on-going MCPTT group call.

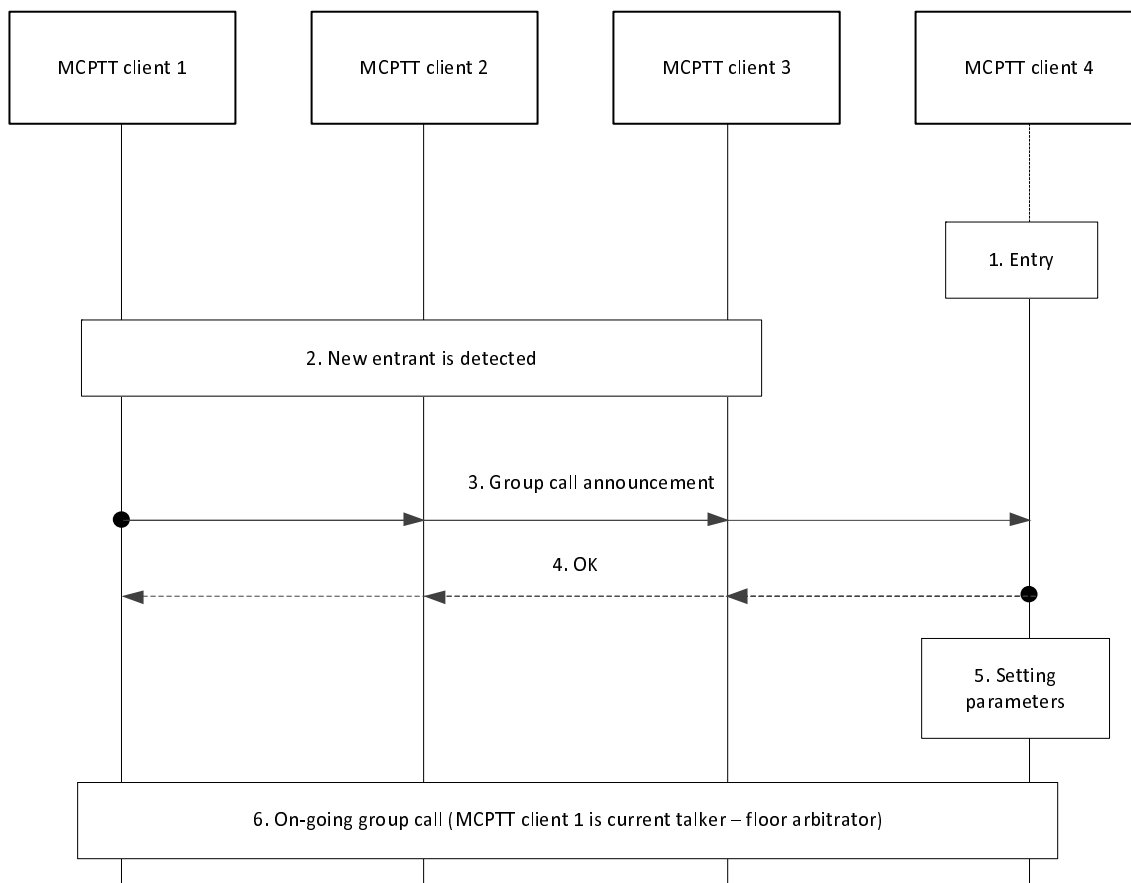
### 10.6.3.6 Immediate group call announcement to join an ongoing group call

Figure 10.6.3.6-1 illustrates the control plane procedures for an MCPTT client to immediately join an on-going MCPTT group call. Upon the detection of a new entrant, the MCPTT client that is the current talker (floor arbitrator) immediately sends the group call announcement. When receiving the group call announcement message with

parameters for media transfer, that MCPTT client configures the parameters to receive the voice and joins the on-going MCPTT group call.

Pre-conditions:

1. There is on-going group call. MCPTT client 1 is the current talker and therefore the floor arbitrator.



**Figure 10.6.3.6-1: Immediate group call announcement to join an ongoing group call**

1. MCPTT client 4 enters the coverage of the on-going MCPTT group call.
2. The entry of MCPTT client 4 is detected by the current participants.
3. Since MCPTT client 1 is the current talker (floor arbitrator), MCPTT client 1 immediately sends the group call announcement with the call parameters to the group.
4. MCPTT client 4 may send a response message.
5. MCPTT client 4 sets the parameters for the group call.
6. All participants are now considered part of the on-going group call.

### 10.6.3.7 Group call release due to inactivity

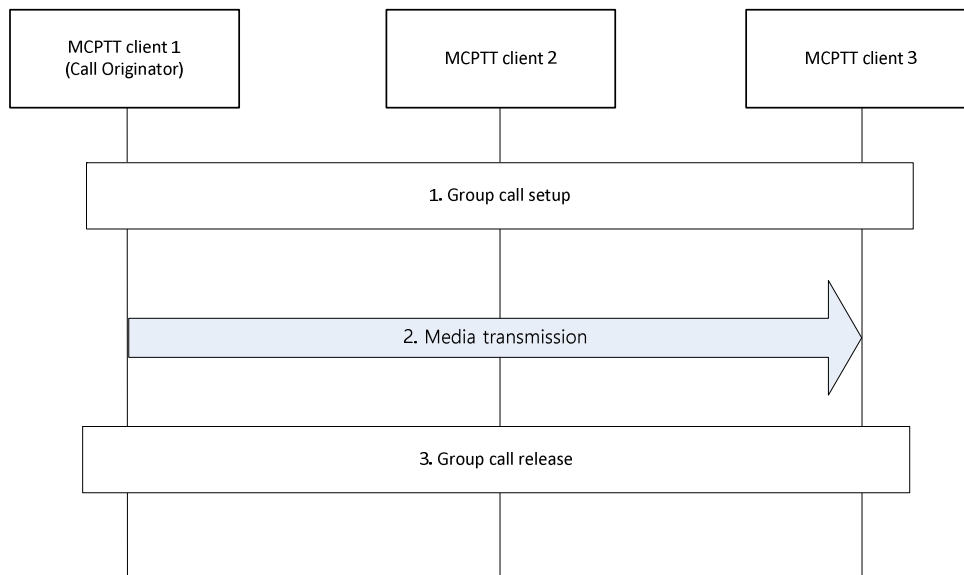
If the on-going MCPTT group call is inactive for a specific duration, the participating MCPTT clients release the MCPTT group call by themselves.

NOTE: Inactivity time can be set according to the policy of MCPTT service provider.

### 10.6.3.8 Broadcast group call

Group call on group-broadcast group and user-broadcast group are handled without distinction in off-network.

Figure 10.6.3.8.1-1 illustrates the control plane procedures for broadcast group call in off-network.



**Figure 10.6.3.8.1-1: Broadcast group call in off-network**

1. An authorized MCPTT client 1 initiates broadcast group call setup as described in subclause 10.6.3.3. The group call announcement message includes the indication of broadcast group call.
  2. The MCPTT client 1 initiating broadcast group call starts to transmit media.
- NOTE: Other clients of group member are not allowed to transmit media in broadcast group call.
3. The broadcast group call is released as described in subclause 10.6.3.7.

### 10.6.3.9 Emergency and imminent peril procedures

#### 10.6.3.9.1 Emergency group call

The off-network emergency group call is a special case of off-network (non-emergency) group call as defined in subclauses 10.6.3.2, 10.6.3.3, 10.6.3.4, 10.6.3.5, 10.6.3.6 and 10.6.3.7. The following are modifications to the aforementioned subclauses to support MCPTT emergency group calls:

- As a pre-condition, the client initiating the emergency call has previously been provisioned with an MCPTT group designated as the MCPTT emergency group. The MCPTT client initiates MCPTT emergency group calls on this group. Alternatively, the MCPTT client could have been provisioned for emergency behaviour on the selected MCPTT group.
- The group call announcement contains an indication that the MCPTT group call is to be an MCPTT emergency call regardless of whether or not the MCPTT client is in call. Group call participants learn of the MCPTT group's in-progress emergency state from the indication.
- Every call initiated by the MCPTT client will be an emergency call while the MCPTT client is in MCPTT emergency state.
- The MCPTT client enters the MCPTT emergency state when initiating an MCPTT emergency call or MCPTT emergency alert. Only the MCPTT user of the MCPTT client can clear the client's local MCPTT emergency state.
- The MCPTT group in-progress emergency state is cancelled when the call ends.

- The MCPTT user who initiated an emergency call, or upgraded a group call to an emergency call, or an authorized user, may cancel the in-progress emergency state with an MCPTT emergency group state cancel message. The message is sent to the call participants.
- When the MCPTT group is no longer in the in-progress emergency state, every client returns its default value of ProSe Per Packet Priority.
- An MCPTT group call in-progress is upgraded to an emergency group call when the periodic group call announcement contains the emergency indicator.
- The value of ProSe Per Packet Priority is upgraded according to emergency state of MCPTT group call.
- An MCPTT group call becoming an emergency group call does not affect the state of other MCPTT call(s) in the client.
- The MCPTT group remains in the in-progress emergency state until the emergency group call ends or the in-progress emergency state is cancelled.

#### 10.6.3.9.2 MCPTT imminent peril

The off-network imminent peril group call is a special case of off-network (non-imminent peril) group call as defined in subclauses 10.6.3.2, 10.6.3.3, 10.6.3.4, 10.6.3.5, 10.6.3.6 and 10.6.3.7. The following are modifications to the aforementioned subclauses to support MCPTT imminent peril calls:

- As a pre-condition, the user initiating the imminent peril call has previously an MCPTT group to be used as the MCPTT imminent peril group. The MCPTT client initiates MCPTT imminent peril group calls on this group.
- The group call announcement contains an indication that the MCPTT group call is to be an MCPTT imminent peril call. Group call participants learn of the MCPTT group in-progress imminent peril condition from the indication.
- The MCPTT group in-progress imminent peril state is considered cancelled when the call ends.
- The originating MCPTT user of the in-progress imminent peril or an authorized user may cancel the in-progress imminent peril state with an MCPTT imminent peril group cancel. The message is sent to the call participants.
- When the MCPTT in-progress imminent peril is no longer in the in-progress imminent peril state, every MCPTT client returns its bearer to the priority it had prior to the in-progress imminent peril state.
- An MCPTT upgrade to imminent peril call is used to upgrade an MCPTT group call already in progress. The message is sent to all call participants so that they are aware of the in-progress imminent peril.
- The bearer is upgraded by all participants for the MCPTT group call already in progress when the MCPTT group call is upgraded to in-progress imminent peril state.
- An MCPTT imminent peril call puts the MCPTT group into the in-progress imminent peril state.

#### 10.6.3.9.3 MCPTT emergency alert (off-network)

The MCPTT service shall support the procedures and related information flows as specified in subclauses 10.10.2 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [5] with the following clarifications:

- The MC service client is the MCPTT client;
- The MC service server is the MCPTT server;
- The MC service group ID is the MCPTT Group ID; and
- The MC service user profile index is the MCPTT user profile index.

## 10.7 Private call

### 10.7.1 General

Private calls are enabled in both on-network and off-network.

Private calls can be setup in two different commencement modes, automatic commencement mode and manual commencement mode.

Private calls in on-network can be with or without floor control. Private calls in off-network are with floor control.

### 10.7.2 Private call in on-network

#### 10.7.2.1 Information flows for private call in on-network

##### 10.7.2.1.1 MCPTT private call request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server)

Table 10.7.2.1.1-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.7.2.1.1-1: MCPTT private call request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ID (see NOTE)	O	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Functional alias (see NOTE)	O	The functional alias of the called party
Use floor control indication	M	This element indicates whether floor control will be used for the private call.
SDP offer	O	Media parameters of MCPTT client.
Requested commencement mode	O	An indication that is included if the user is requesting a particular commencement mode
Implicit floor request	O	An indication that the user is also requesting the floor.
Location information	O	Location of the calling party
Requested priority	O	Application priority level requested for this call
Transfer indicator	O	Indicates that the MCPTT private call request is a result of a call transfer (true/false)
Forwarding indicator	O	Indicates that the MCPTT private call request is a result of a call forwarding.(true/false)
Remotely initiated call request indicator	O	Indicates that the MCPTT private call request is a result of receiving of a remotely initiated call request and may be included only for remotely initiated call
NOTE:		At least one identity shall be present. If both are present the MCPTT ID shall be used to route the call request and the functional alias is just for information.

### 10.7.2.1.2 MCPTT private call request (MCPTT server to MCPTT server)

Table 10.7.2.1.2-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.7.2.1.2-1: MCPTT private call request (MCPTT server to MCPTT server) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the called party
Use floor control indication	M	This element indicates whether floor control will be used for the private call.
SDP offer	M	Media parameters of MCPTT client.
Requested commencement mode	O	An indication of the commencement mode to be used.
Implicit floor request	O	An indication that the user is also requesting the floor.
Requested priority	O	Priority level requested for the call.
Forwarding indicator	O	Indicates whether the MCPTT private call request is a result of a call forwarding. (true/false)
Transfer indicator	O	Indicates that the MCPTT private call request is a result of a call transfer (true/false)
Location information	O	Location of the calling party
Remotely initiated call request indicator	O	Indicates that the MCPTT private call request is a result of receiving of a remotely initiated call request and may be included only for remotely initiated call

### 10.7.2.1.2a MCPTT private call request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client)

Table 10.7.2.1.2a describes the information flow MCPTT private call request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.2.1.2a: MCPTT private call request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the called party
Use floor control indication	M	This element indicates whether floor control will be used for the private call.
SDP offer	M	Media parameters of MCPTT client.
Requested commencement mode	O	An indication of the commencement mode to be used.
Implicit floor request	O	An indication that the user is also requesting the floor.
Remotely initiated call request indicator	O	Indicates that the MCPTT private call request is a result of receiving of a remotely initiated call request and may be included only for remotely initiated call

### 10.7.2.1.3 MCPTT private call response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server)

Table 10.7.2.1.3-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.7.2.1.3-1: MCPTT private call response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ID	O	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the called party
SDP answer	M	Media parameters selected
Requested commencement mode	O	An indication of the commencement mode to be used.

### 10.7.2.1.4 MCPTT private call response

Table 10.7.2.1.4-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server and the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.2.1.4-1: MCPTT private call response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ID	O	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the called party
Acceptance confirmation	O	An indication whether the user has positively accepted the call.
SDP answer	M	Media parameters selected

#### 10.7.2.1.4a MCPTT private call end request

Table 10.7.2.1.4a-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call end request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.2.1.4a-1: MCPTT private call end request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Private call end reason	O	Indicate that the reason to end the call, e.g., due to migration, or due to user request.

#### 10.7.2.1.4b MCPTT private call end response

Table 10.7.2.1.4b-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call end response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.2.1.4b-1: MCPTT private call end response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	In the direction MCPTT client to MCPTT server this shall be the MCPTT ID of the responding MCPTT client. In the direction MCPTT server to MCPTT client this shall be the MCPTT ID of the destination MCPTT client

#### 10.7.2.1.5 MCPTT emergency private call request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server)

Table 10.7.2.1.5-1 describes the information flow MCPTT emergency private call request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.7.2.1.5-1: MCPTT emergency private call request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ID (see NOTE)	O	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Functional alias (see NOTE)	O	The functional alias of the called party
Emergency indicator	M	Indicates that the private call request is an MCPTT emergency call
Alert indicator	M	Indicates whether an emergency alert is to be sent
Requested commencement mode	O	An indication of the commencement mode to be used.
Implicit floor request	O	An indication that the user is also requesting the floor.
SDP offer	M	Media parameters of MCPTT client.
Requested priority	O	Priority level requested for the call.
Location information	O	Location of the calling party
NOTE: Only one identity shall be present.		

**10.7.2.1.5a MCPTT emergency private call request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client)**

Table 10.7.2.1.5a-1 describes the information flow MCPTT emergency private call request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.2.1.5a-1: MCPTT emergency private call request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Emergency indicator	M	Indicates that the private call request is an MCPTT emergency call
Alert indicator	M	Indicates whether an emergency alert is to be sent
Requested commencement mode	O	An indication of the commencement mode to be used.
Implicit floor request	O	An indication that the user is also requesting the floor.
SDP offer	M	Media parameters of MCPTT client.

**10.7.2.1.6 MCPTT progress indication**

Table 10.7.2.1.6-1 describes the information flow MCPTT progress indication from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.2.1.6-1: MCPTT progress indication information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Progress indication	O	Indication to the caller.

#### 10.7.2.1.7 MCPTT ringing

Table 10.7.2.1.7-1 describes the information flow MCPTT ringing from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server, from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server, and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.2.1.7-1: MCPTT ringing information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Ringing indication	O	Indication to the caller.

#### 10.7.2.1.8 MCPTT functional alias resolution response

Table 10.7.2.1.8-1 describes the information flow MCPTT functional alias resolution response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.2.1.8-1: MCPTT functional alias resolution response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The corresponding MCPTT ID of the called functional alias

#### 10.7.2.1.9 MCPTT private call cancel request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client)

Table 10.7.2.1.9-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call cancel request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.2.1.9-1: MCPTT private call cancel request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party

#### 10.7.2.1.10 MCPTT private call cancel response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server)

Table 10.7.2.1.10-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call cancel response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.7.2.1.10-1: MCPTT private call cancel response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party

10.7.2.2 Private call within one MCPTT system

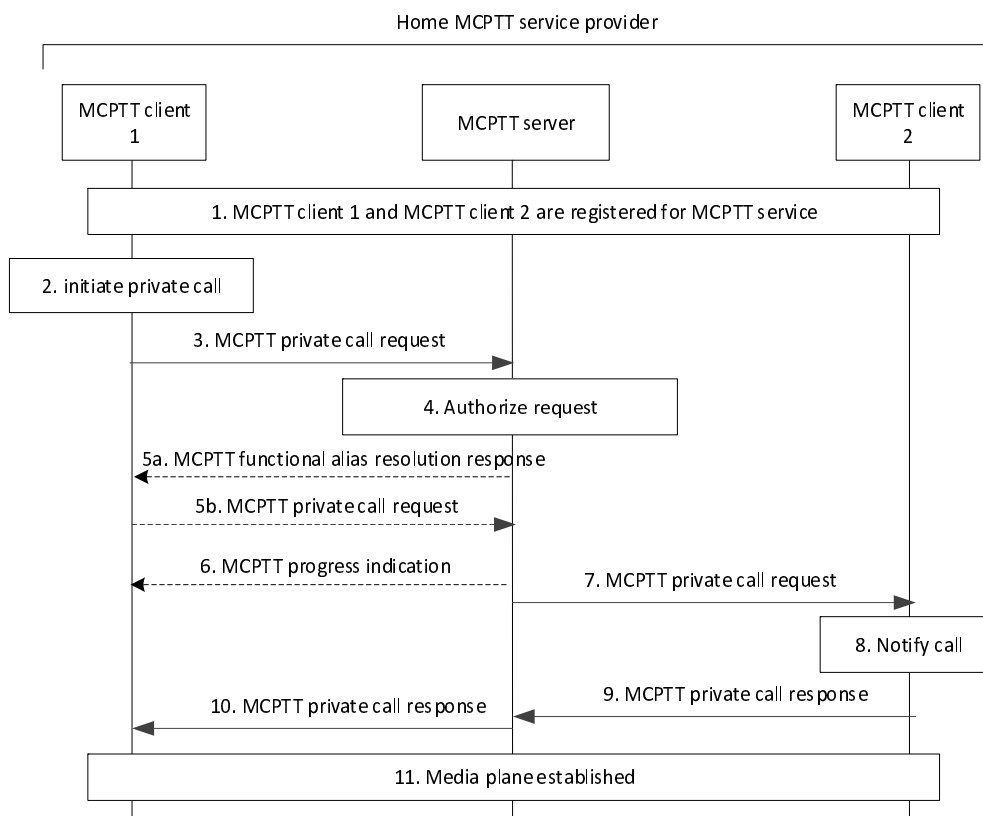
10.7.2.2.1 Private call setup in automatic commencement mode

The procedure focuses on the case where an MCPTT user is initiating an MCPTT private call for communicating with another MCPTT user, with or without floor control enabled, in an automatic commencement mode.

Procedures in figure 10.7.2.2.1-1 are the basic signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT client initiating establishment of MCPTT private call with the chosen MCPTT user.

Pre-conditions:

1. The calling MCPTT user has selected automatic commencement mode for the call; or
2. The called MCPTT client is set to automatic commencement mode.
3. Optionally, MCPTT client 1 may use an activated functional alias for the call.
4. The MCPTT server has subscribed to the MCPTT functional alias controlling server within the MC system for functional alias activation/de-activation updates.



**Figure 10.7.2.2.1-1: Private call setup in automatic commencement mode– MCPTT users in the same MCPTT system**

1. MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 are already registered for receiving MCPTT service, as per procedure in subclause 10.2.

2. User at MCPTT client 1 would like to initiate an MCPTT private call for the chosen MCPTT user. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 may include a functional alias used within the MCPTT private call. For a private call with floor control, floor control is to be established.
3. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT server (via SIP core) using a service identifier as defined in 3GPP TS 23.228 [5] for MCPTT, for establishing a private call with the chosen MCPTT user. The MCPTT private call request contains the MCPTT ID or the functional alias of the invited user, an SDP offer containing one or more media types. For a private call with floor control, the MCPTT private call request also contains an element that indicates that MCPTT client 1 is requesting the floor. The MCPTT client 1 may include a Requested commencement mode that indicates that the call is to be established in automatic commencement mode if automatic commencement mode is requested by the initiating user.

NOTE 1: As part of this step, MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 set up a security association (when no functional alias is present), if end-to-end encryption is used for this call.

4. If the MCPTT private call request contains a functional alias instead of an MCPTT ID as called party, the MCPTT server shall resolve the functional alias to the corresponding MCPTT ID(s) for which the functional alias is active. The MCPTT server shall also check whether MCPTT client 1 is allowed to use the functional alias of MCPTT client 2 to setup a private call and whether MCPTT client 2 is allowed to receive a private call from MCPTT client 1 using the functional alias. If authorized, proceed with step 5. Otherwise, the MCPTT server checks whether the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate the private call, and that MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2 is authorized to receive the private call. If the MCPTT private call request requested automatic commencement mode then the MCPTT server also checks whether the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate a private call in automatic commencement mode and proceed with step 6.

NOTE 2: Depending on implementation the MCPTT server can apply additional call restrictions and decide whether the call is allowed to proceed with the resolved MCPTT ID(s) (e.g. whether the MCPTT ID is within the allowed area of the functional alias). If the MCPTT server detects that the functional alias used as the target of the private call request is simultaneously active for multiple MCPTT users, then the MCPTT server can proceed by selecting an appropriate MCPTT ID based on some selection criteria (e.g. current location of the initiating user to determine the dispatcher who is responsible for the related geographic area). The selection of an appropriate MCPTT ID is left to implementation. This selection criteria can include rejection of the call, if no suitable MCPTT ID is selected.

- 5a. The MCPTT server responds with a functional alias resolution response message that contains the resolved MCPTT ID back to MCPTT client 1.
- 5b. If the MCPTT server replies with a MCPTT functional alias resolution response message, the MCPTT client 1 abandons the first MCPTT private call request in step 3 and sends a new MCPTT private call request towards the resolved MCPTT ID.

NOTE 3: MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 set up a security association for the media, if end-to-end encryption is used for this call.

6. MCPTT server may provide a progress indication to MCPTT client 1 to indicate progress in the call setup process.

NOTE 4: Step 6 can occur at any time following step 5b, and prior to step 10.

7. If authorized, MCPTT server includes information that it communicates using MCPTT service, offers the same media types or a subset of the media types contained in the initial received request, includes the requested automatic commencement mode indication based on a requested automatic commencement mode by the calling user or based upon the setting of the called MCPTT client and sends the corresponding MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT client 2, including the MCPTT ID and, if available, the functional alias of the calling MCPTT user 1. If the called MCPTT user has registered to the MCPTT service with multiple MCPTT UEs and has designated the MCPTT UE for receiving the private calls, then the incoming MCPTT private call request is delivered only to the designated MCPTT UE.
8. The receiving MCPTT client 2 notifies the user about the incoming private call and displays the functional alias of calling MCPTT user 1.
9. The receiving MCPTT client 2 accepts the private call automatically, and an MCPTT private call response is sent to the MCPTT server (via SIP core).

10. Upon receiving the MCPTT private call response from MCPTT client 2 accepting the private call request, the MCPTT server informs the MCPTT client 1 about successful call establishment.

11. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 have successfully established media plane for communication and either user can transmit media. For successful call establishment for private call with floor control request from MCPTT client 1, floor participant at MCPTT client 1 is granted floor by the floor control server, giving it permission to transmit. At the same time floor participant at MCPTT client 2 is informed by the floor control server that floor is taken.

#### 10.7.2.2.2 Private call setup in manual commencement mode

##### 10.7.2.2.2.1 Description

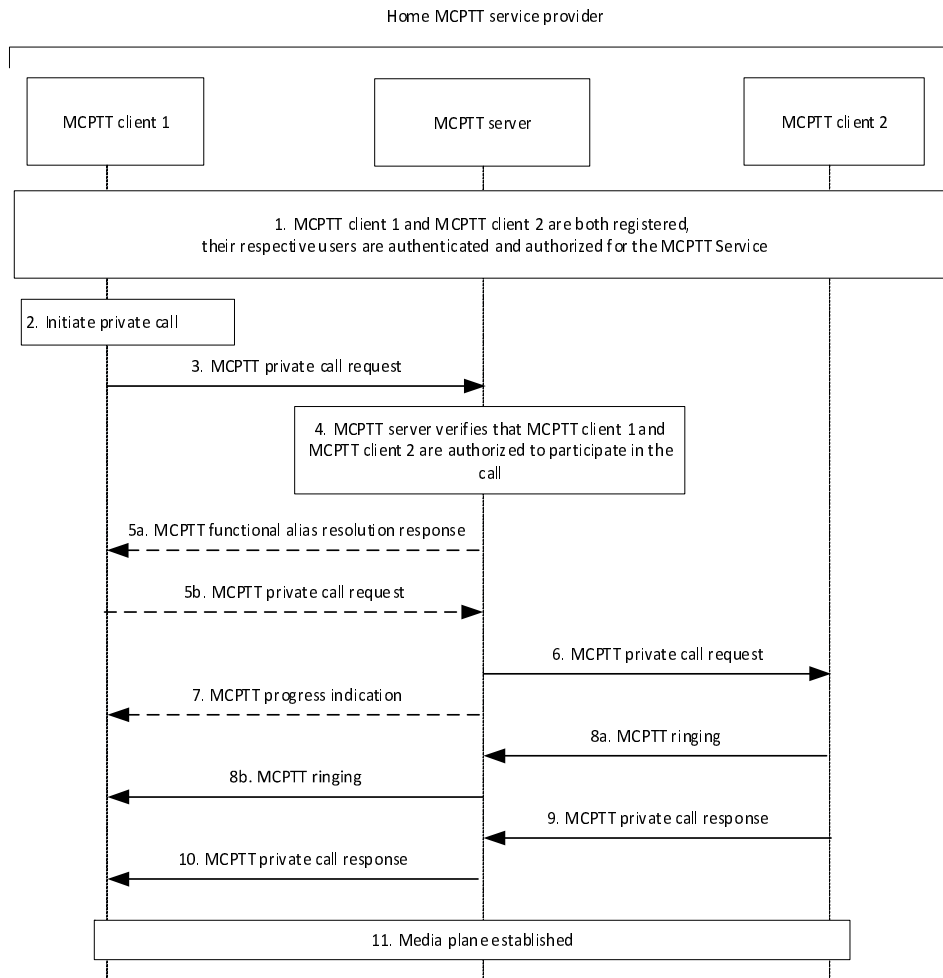
Figure 10.7.2.2.2-1 describes the basic procedure for the MCPTT client initiating an MCPTT private call that uses manual commencement mode. The flow may use a floor request in the MCPTT private call request indicating that the originator will be given the floor when the call starts and eliminates the need for a separate initial floor request message during media plane establishment. Alternatively the call initiation may be sent without the floor request, which allows the called party to request the floor first.

##### 10.7.2.2.2.2 Procedure

Both clients are served by the primary MCPTT service provider in figure 10.7.2.2.2-1.

Pre-conditions:

1. The calling MCPTT user has selected manual commencement mode or has not specified a commencement mode for the call; and
2. The called MCPTT client is set to manual commencement mode.
3. Optionally, MCPTT client 1 may use an activated functional alias for the call.
4. The MCPTT server has subscribed to the MCPTT functional alias controlling server within the MC system for functional alias activation/de-activation updates.



**Figure 10.7.2.2.2-1: MCPTT private call in manual commencement mode– MCPTT users in the same MCPTT system**

1. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 are both registered and their respective users, MCPTT user 1 and MCPTT user 2, are authenticated and authorized to use the MCPTT service, as per procedure in subclause 10.2.
2. MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 would like to initiate an MCPTT private call for the selected MCPTT user. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 may include a functional alias used within the MCPTT private call. For a private call with floor control, floor control is to be established. For private call without floor control, both users will have the ability to transmit without floor arbitration.
3. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request addressed to the MCPTT ID of MCPTT user 2 using an MCPTT service identifier as defined in 3GPP TS 23.228 [5] (possible for the SIP core to route the request to the MCPTT server). The MCPTT private call request contains the MCPTT ID or the functional alias of invited user and an SDP offer containing one or more media types. The MCPTT private call request may also contain a data element that indicates that MCPTT client 1 is requesting the floor, for a private call with floor control. The MCPTT client 1 may include a requested commencement mode that indicates that the call is to be established in manual commencement mode if manual commencement mode is requested by the initiating user.

NOTE 1: As part of this step, MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 set up a security association (when no functional alias is present), if end-to-end encryption is used for this call.

4. The MCPTT server confirms that both MCPTT users are authorized for the private call. MCPTT server verifies whether the provided functional alias, if present, can be used and has been activated for the user. The MCPTT server shall resolve the functional alias to the corresponding MCPTT ID(s) for which the functional alias is active. The MCPTT server shall also check whether MCPTT client 1 is allowed to use the functional alias of MCPTT client 2 to setup a private call and whether MCPTT client 2 is allowed to receive a private call from MCPTT client 1 using the functional alias. The MCPTT server checks the commencement mode setting of the

called MCPTT client and also checks whether the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate a call in manual commencement mode.

NOTE 2: Depending on implementation the MCPTT server can apply additional call restrictions and decide whether the call is allowed to proceed with the resolved MCPTT ID(s) (e.g. whether the MCPTT ID is within the allowed area of the functional alias). If the MCPTT server detects that the functional alias used as the target of the private call request is simultaneously active for multiple MCPTT users, then the MCPTT server can proceed by selecting an appropriate MCPTT ID based on some selection criteria (e.g. current location of the initiating user to determine the dispatcher who is responsible for the related geographic area). The selection of an appropriate MCPTT ID is left to implementation. This selection criteria can include rejection of the call, if no suitable MCPTT ID is selected.

- 5a. If the MCPTT private call request contains a functional alias instead of an MCPTT ID as called party, the MCPTT server responds with a functional alias resolution response message that contains the resolved MCPTT ID back to MCPTT client 1.
- 5b. If the MCPTT server replies with a MCPTT functional alias resolution response message, the MCPTT client 1 abandons the first MCPTT private call request in step 3 and sends a new MCPTT private call request towards the resolved MCPTT ID.

NOTE 3: MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 set up a security association for the media, if end-to-end encryption is used for this call.

6. The MCPTT server includes information that it communicates using MCPTT service, offers the same media types or a subset of the media types contained in the initial received request and sends an MCPTT private call request for the call to MCPTT client 2, including the MCPTT ID and, if available, the functional alias of the calling MCPTT user 1. If the called MCPTT user has registered to the MCPTT service with multiple MCPTT UEs and has designated the MCPTT UE for receiving the private calls, then the incoming MCPTT private call request is delivered only to the designated MCPTT UE.
7. MCPTT server may provide a progress indication to MCPTT client 1 to indicate progress in the call setup process.

NOTE 4: Step 7 can occur at any time following step 5b, and prior to step 8b.

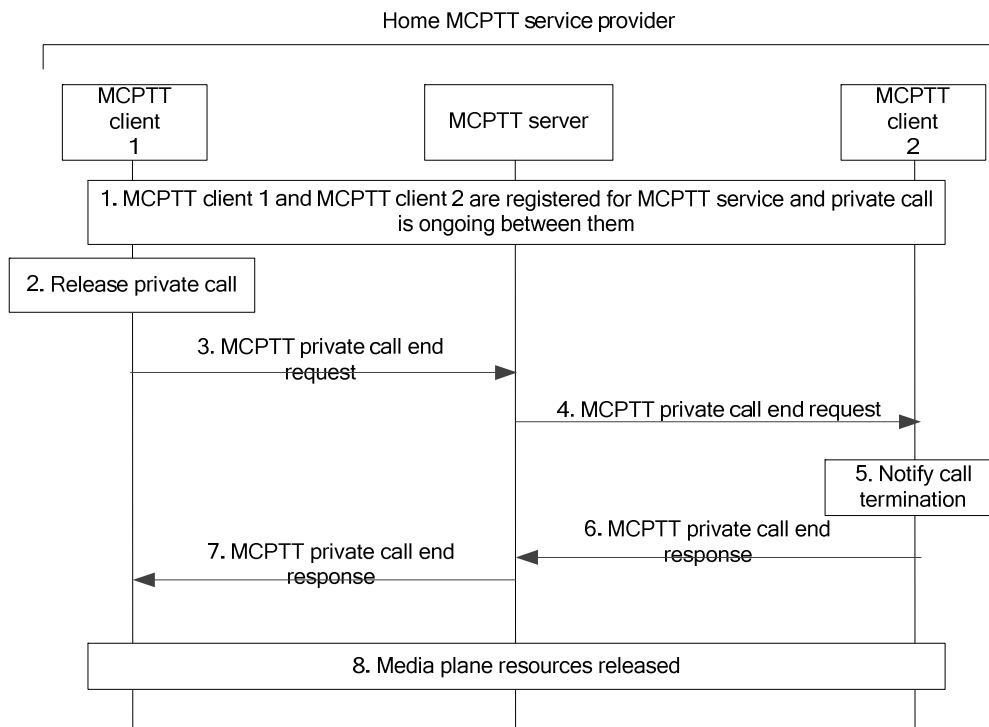
- 8a. The MCPTT user is alerted and may display the functional alias of calling MCPTT user 1. MCPTT client 2 sends an MCPTT ringing to the MCPTT server.
- 8b. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT ringing to MCPTT client 1, indicating that MCPTT client 2 is being alerted.
9. MCPTT user 2 has accepted the call using manual commencement mode (i.e., has taken some action to accept via the user interface) which causes MCPTT client 2 to send an MCPTT private call response to the MCPTT server. If MCPTT user 2 has not accepted the incoming call, the MCPTT client 2 sends a call failure response to the MCPTT server without adding reason for call failure.
10. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call response to MCPTT client 1 indicating that MCPTT user 2 has accepted the call, including the accepted media parameters.
11. The media plane for communication is established. Either user can transmit media individually when using floor control. For successful call establishment for private call with floor request from MCPTT client 1, the floor participant associated with MCPTT client 1 is granted the floor initially. At the same time the floor participant associated with MCPTT client 2 is informed that the floor is taken. The meaning of the floor request (give floor initially to originator [client 1], or give floor initially to target [client 2]) may be configurable. For a private call without floor control both users are allowed to transmit simultaneously.

### 10.7.2.2.3 Private call release

#### 10.7.2.2.3.1 Client initiated

The procedure focuses on the case where an MCPTT client is requesting to release an ongoing MCPTT private call (with or without floor control) and the call established in either of the two commencement modes (manual or automatic).

Procedures in figure 10.7.2.2.3.1-1 are the basic signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT client initiating the release of an ongoing MCPTT private call.



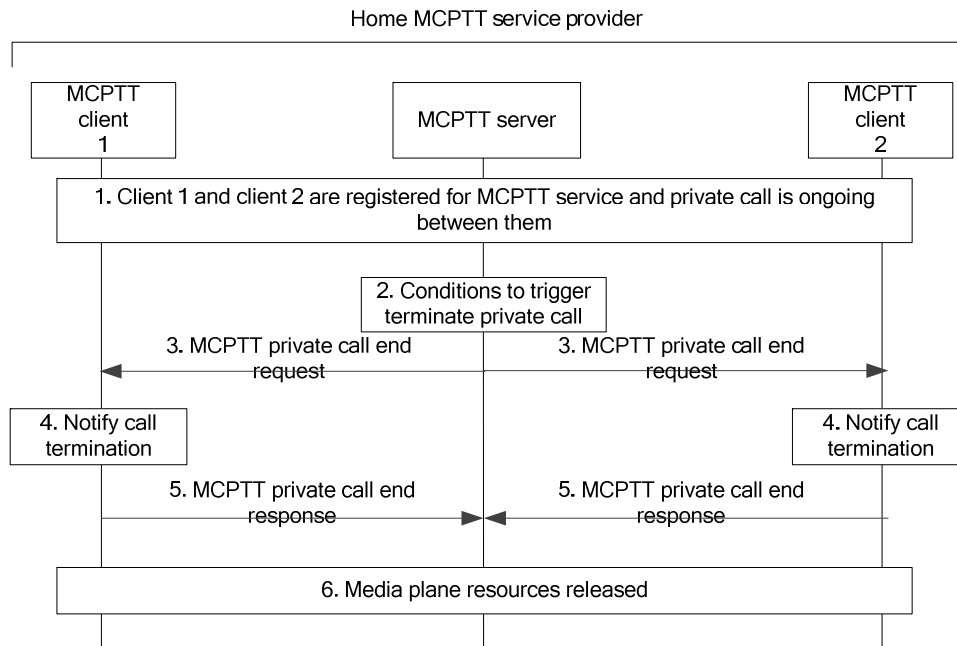
**Figure 10.7.2.2.3.1-1: Private call release – client initiated**

1. It is assumed that MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 are already registered for receiving MCPTT service and are involved in private call with or without floor control established either in manual or automatic commencement mode, as described in subclause 10.7.2.2.1 and subclause 10.7.2.2.2.
2. User at MCPTT client 1 would like to release an ongoing MCPTT private call with MCPTT client 2.
3. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call end request towards the MCPTT server (via SIP core), for tearing down the private call with the other client.
4. MCPTT server sends the corresponding MCPTT private call end request towards the MCPTT client specified in the original MCPTT private call end request.
5. MCPTT user is notified about the release of the private call.
6. The receiving MCPTT client 2 acknowledges the MCPTT private call end request with an MCPTT private call end response.
7. After receiving the MCPTT private call end response from MCPTT client 2, the MCPTT server generates an acknowledgement for the MCPTT client 1's MCPTT private call end request.
8. MCPTT clients release all the media plane resources used for the private call. Further, if the private call was established with floor control, floor control resources are released and MCPTT clients cannot make further requests for floor control or send media.

#### 10.7.2.2.3.2 Server initiated

The procedure focuses on the case where an MCPTT server is terminating an ongoing MCPTT private call (with or without floor control) and the call established in either of the two commencement modes (manual or automatic), upon conditions to terminate call e.g., MCPTT administrator configured maximum duration for MCPTT private calls has expired or timed out due to MCPTT private call without transmission/reception.

Procedures in figure 10.7.2.2.3.2-1 are the basic signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT server initiating termination of an ongoing MCPTT private call.



**Figure 10.7.2.3.2-1: End private call – server initiated**

1. It is assumed that MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 are already registered for receiving MCPTT service and are involved in private call with or without floor control established either in manual or automatic commencement mode.
2. Upon conditions to terminate call e.g., MCPTT administrator configured maximum duration for MCPTT private calls has expired or timed out due to MCPTT private call without transmission/reception, the MCPTT server decides to initiate termination of an ongoing MCPTT private call between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2.
3. MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call end request towards the MCPTT clients 1 and 2 (via SIP core), for tearing down the private call between them.
4. MCPTT users at client 1 and client 2 are notified about the termination of the private call.
5. The MCPTT private call end request receiving MCPTT clients 1 and 2 acknowledge the request with an MCPTT private call end response.
6. MCPTT clients release all the media plane resources used for the private call. Further, if the private call was established with floor control, floor control resources are released and MCPTT clients cannot make further requests for floor control or send media.

### 10.7.2.3 Private call within several MCPTT systems

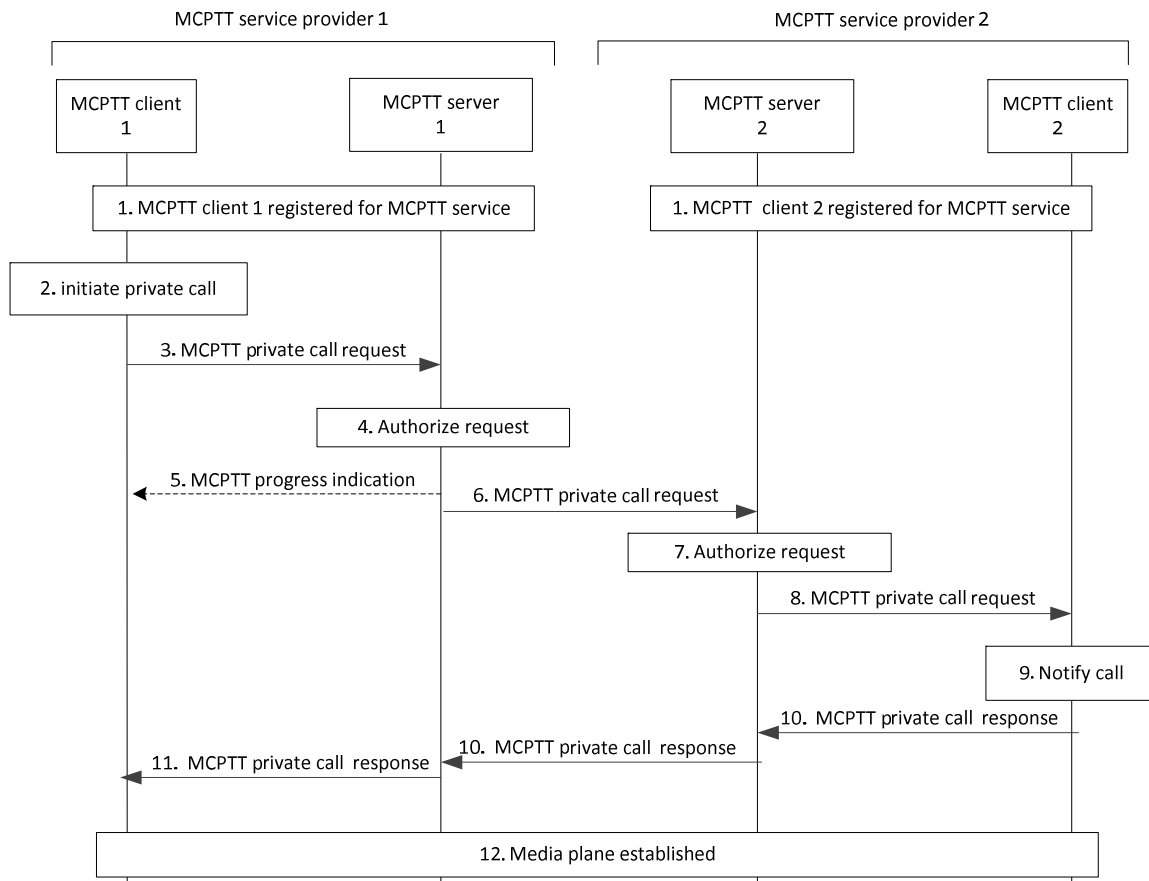
#### 10.7.2.3.1 Private call setup in automatic commencement mode – MCPTT users in multiple MCPTT systems

The procedure focuses on the case where an MCPTT user is initiating an MCPTT private call (automatic commencement mode) for communicating with MCPTT user in another MCPTT system with or without floor control enabled.

Procedures in figure 10.7.2.3.1-1 are the procedures for the MCPTT client initiating establishment of MCPTT private call with the chosen MCPTT user.

Pre-conditions:

1. The calling MCPTT user has selected automatic commencement mode for the call; or
2. The called MCPTT client is set to automatic commencement mode.



**Figure 10.7.2.3.1-1: Private call setup in automatic commencement mode – users in multiple MCPTT systems**

1. It is assumed that MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 are already registered for receiving MCPTT service to their respective MCPTT service provider, as per procedure in subclause 10.2.
2. MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 would like to initiate an MCPTT private call for the chosen MCPTT user. For a private call with floor control, floor control is to be established.
3. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards the home MCPTT server 1 (via SIP core) using a service identifier as defined in 3GPP TS 23.228 [5] for MCPTT, for establishing private call with the MCPTT client 2 registered at MCPTT service provider 2. The MCPTT private call request contains the MCPTT id of invited user and an SDP offer containing one or more media types. For a private call with floor control, the MCPTT private call request also contains an element that indicates that MCPTT client 1 is requesting the floor. If the private call request request the floor it may include location information. The MCPTT client 1 may include a requested commencement mode that indicates that the call is to be established in automatic commencement mode if automatic commencement mode is requested by the initiating user.
4. MCPTT server 1 checks whether the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate the private call. If the MCPTT private call request requested automatic commencement mode then the MCPTT server 1 also checks whether the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate a call in automatic commencement mode.
5. MCPTT server 1 may provide a progress indication to MCPTT client 1 to indicate progress in the call setup process.

NOTE: Step 5 can occur at any time following step 4, and prior to step 11.

6. If authorized, MCPTT server 1 includes information that it communicates using MCPTT service, offers the same media types or a subset of the media types contained in the initial received request, includes an automatic commencement mode indication if automatic commencement mode was requested by and authorised for the

calling user and sends the corresponding MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT system (via SIP core) of the MCPTT client specified in the original MCPTT private call request (MCPTT client 2) i.e., MCPTT server 2. If location information was included in the private call request, the MCPTT server checks the privacy policy of the MCPTT user to decide if the location information of MCPTT client 1 can be provided to the other user on the call (refer to Annex A.3 "Authorisation to provide location information to other MCPTT users on a call when talking").

7. MCPTT server 2 checks whether the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2 is authorized to receive a private call.
8. MCPTT server 2 includes information that it communicates using MCPTT service, offers the same media types or a subset of the media types contained in the initial received request, includes a requested automatic commencement mode indication based on a requested automatic commencement mode by the calling user or based upon the setting of the called MCPTT client and sends the received MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT client specified in the received MCPTT private call request (i.e., MCPTT client 2). If the called MCPTT user has registered to the MCPTT service with multiple MCPTT UEs and has designated the MCPTT UE for receiving the private calls, then the incoming MCPTT private call request is delivered only to the designated MCPTT UE.
9. The receiving MCPTT client 2 notifies the user about the incoming private call.
10. The receiving MCPTT client 2 accepts the private call automatically, and an acknowledgement is sent to the MCPTT server 1 (via SIP core and MCPTT server 2).
11. Upon receiving the MCPTT private call response from MCPTT client 2 accepting the private call request, MCPTT client 1 is informed about successful call establishment.
12. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 have successfully established media plane for communication and either user can transmit media. For successful call establishment of a private call with implicit floor control request from MCPTT client 1, floor participant at MCPTT client 1 is granted floor by the floor control server at MCPTT service provider 1, giving it permission to transmit. At the same time floor participant at MCPTT client 2 is informed by the floor control server at MCPTT service provider 1 that the floor is taken.

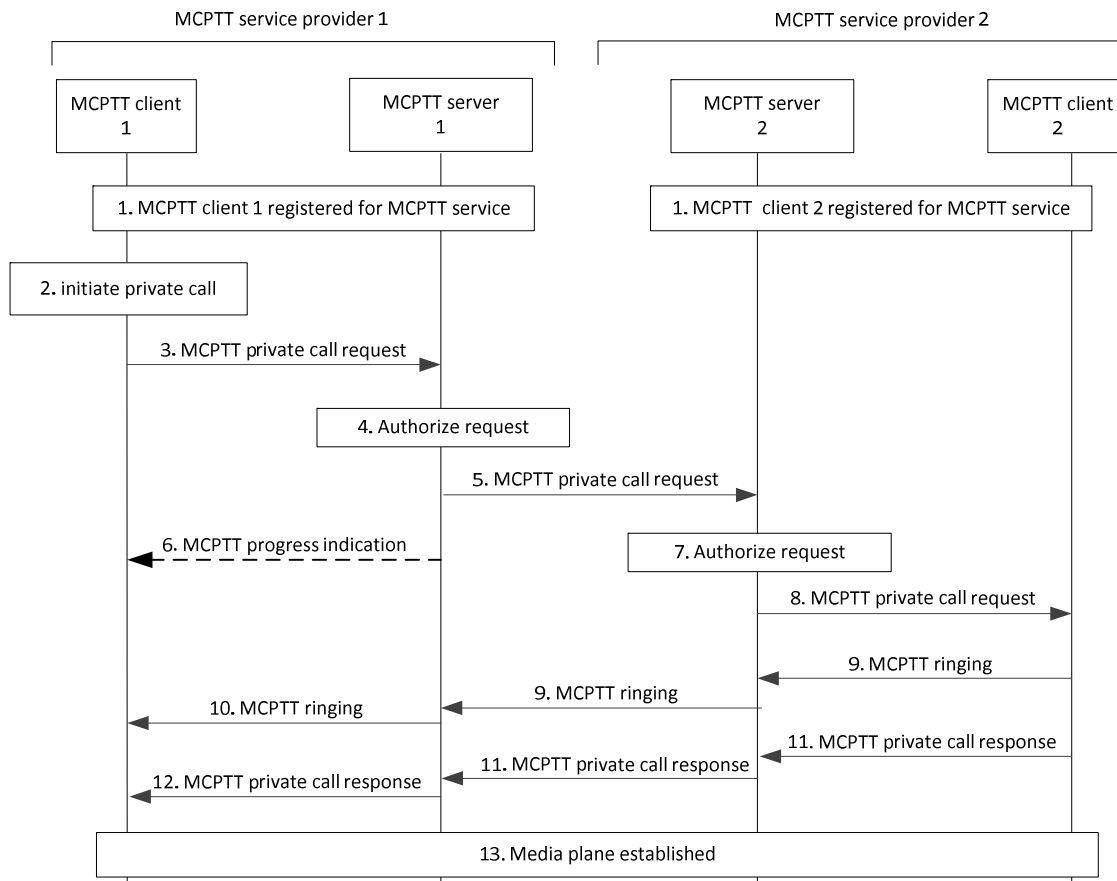
#### 10.7.2.3.2 Private call setup in manual commencement mode – MCPTT users in multiple MCPTT systems

The procedure focuses on the case where an MCPTT user is initiating an MCPTT private call (manual commencement mode) for communicating with MCPTT user in another MCPTT system with or without floor control enabled.

Procedures in figure 10.7.2.3.2-1 are the procedures for the MCPTT client initiating establishment of MCPTT private call with the selected MCPTT user.

Pre-conditions:

1. The calling MCPTT user has selected manual commencement mode or has not specified a commencement mode for the call; and
2. The called MCPTT client is set to manual commencement mode.



**Figure 10.7.2.3.2-1: Private call setup in manual commencement mode – users in multiple MCPTT systems**

1. It is assumed that MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 are already registered for receiving MCPTT service to their respective MCPTT service provider, as per procedure in subclause 10.2.
2. MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 would like to initiate an MCPTT private call for the selected MCPTT user. For a private call with floor control, floor control is to be established.
3. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards the home MCPTT server 1 (via SIP core), for establishing private call with the MCPTT client 2 registered at MCPTT service provider 2. For a private call with floor control, the MCPTT private call request contains an element that indicates that MCPTT client 1 is requesting the floor. If the call request requests the floor the call request may include location information. The MCPTT client 1 may include a requested commencement mode that indicates that the call is to be established in manual commencement mode if manual commencement mode is requested by the initiating user.
4. MCPTT server 1 checks whether the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate the private call. The MCPTT server 1 also checks whether the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate a call in manual commencement mode.
5. If authorized, MCPTT server 1 sends the corresponding MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT system (via SIP core) of the MCPTT client specified in the original MCPTT private call request (MCPTT client 2) i.e., MCPTT server 2. If location information was included in the private call request, the MCPTT server checks the privacy policy of the MCPTT user to decide if the location information of MCPTT client 1 can be provided to the other user on the call (refer to Annex A.3 "Authorisation to provide location information to other MCPTT users on a call when talking").
6. MCPTT server may provide a progress indication to MCPTT client 1 to indicate progress in the call setup process.

NOTE: Step 6 can occur at any time following step 4, and prior to step 10.

7. The MCPTT server 2 checks whether the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2 is authorized to receive a private call and also checks the commencement mode setting of MCPTT client 2.
8. The MCPTT server 2 offers the same media types or a subset of the media types contained in the initial received request and sends an MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT client specified in the received MCPTT private call request (i.e., MCPTT client 2). If the called MCPTT user has registered to the MCPTT service with multiple MCPTT UEs and has designated the MCPTT UE for receiving the private calls, then the incoming MCPTT private call request is delivered only to the designated MCPTT UE.
9. The MCPTT user is alerted. MCPTT client 2 sends an MCPTT ringing to the MCPTT server 1 (via server 2).
10. The MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT ringing to MCPTT client 1, indicating that MCPTT client 2 is being alerted.
11. MCPTT user 2 has accepted the call using manual commencement mode (i.e. has taken some action to accept via the user interface) which causes MCPTT client 2 to send an MCPTT private call response to the MCPTT server 1 (via SIP core and MCPTT server 2)
12. Upon receiving the MCPTT private call response from MCPTT client 2 accepting the private call request, MCPTT client 1 is informed about successful call establishment.
13. MCPTT client 1 and client 2 have successfully established media plane for communication and either user can transmit media. For successful call establishment of a private call with implicit floor control request from MCPTT client 1, floor participant at MCPTT client 1 is granted the floor by the floor control server at MCPTT service provider 1, giving it permission to transmit. At the same time floor participant at MCPTT client 2 is informed by the floor control server at MCPTT service provider 1 that the floor is taken.

#### 10.7.2.3.3 Private call release – MCPTT users in multiple MCPTT systems

The procedure in this subclause is for the case where an MCPTT client is requesting to release an ongoing MCPTT private call (with or without floor control) established in either of the two commencement modes (manual or automatic), and the MCPTT users are in multiple MCPTT systems.

Procedures are similar to those described for private call release when MCPTT users are in single MCPTT system as in subclause 10.7.2.2.3.1, with the addition that the MCPTT call end request and the corresponding acknowledgement are routed through the MCPTT server in partner MCPTT system.

#### 10.7.2.4 MCPTT emergency private call

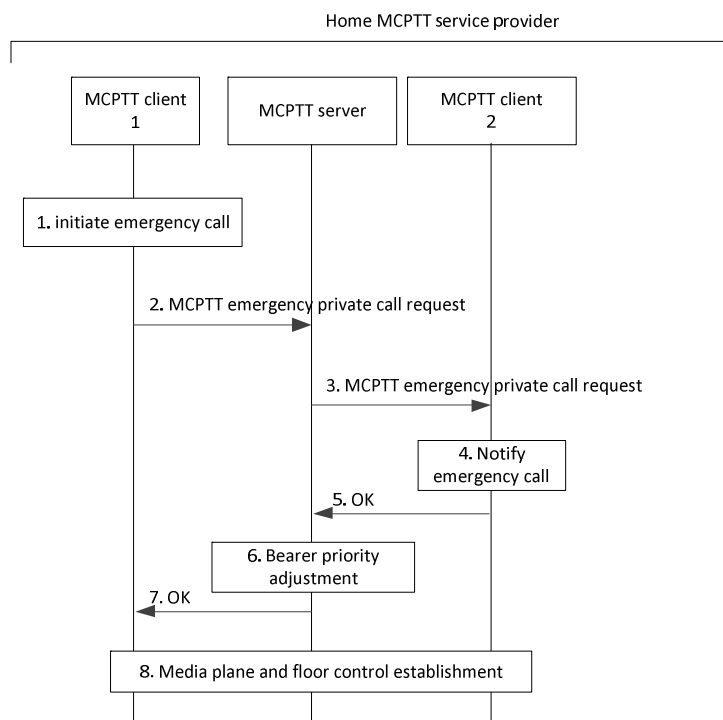
##### 10.7.2.4.1 MCPTT emergency private call commencement

This procedure focuses on the case where an authorized MCPTT user is initiating an MCPTT emergency private call with unicast signalling for communicating with another MCPTT user. An MCPTT client in the MCPTT emergency state gains elevated access privilege for all of the MCPTT user's mission critical applications.

Procedures in figure 10.7.2.4.1-1 are the procedures for the MCPTT client initiating establishment of an MCPTT emergency private call.

Pre-conditions:

1. Both members of the MCPTT private call belong to the same MCPTT system.
2. The initiating MCPTT client 1 has been configured to send an MCPTT emergency alert prior to initiating an MCPTT emergency private call.
3. Optionally, MCPTT client 1 may use an activated functional alias for the call.
4. The MCPTT server has subscribed to the MCPTT functional alias controlling server within the MC system for functional alias activation/de-activation updates.



**Figure 10.7.2.4.1-1 MCPTT emergency private call**

1. The user at the MCPTT client 1 initiates an MCPTT emergency private call. MCPTT client 1 sets its MCPTT emergency state. MCPTT client 1 retains the MCPTT emergency state until explicitly cancelled by the user of MCPTT client 1.

NOTE 1: While MCPTT client 1 is in the emergency state, all MCPTT group and private calls initiated by MCPTT client 1 are initiated as MCPTT emergency calls.

2. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT emergency private call request towards the MCPTT server. The request contains an indication of the MCPTT emergency. MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 may select a functional alias as calling party address and the MCPTT server verifies whether the provided functional alias can be used. Instead of an MCPTT ID the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 may also select a functional alias as called party address, which the MCPTT server replaces by an appropriate MCPTT ID. The MCPTT server records the identity of the MCPTT user that initiated the MCPTT emergency private call until the MCPTT emergency is cancelled. If the MCPTT client is configured to send an MCPTT emergency alert when initiating an MCPTT emergency private call, the request also contains an indication that an MCPTT emergency alert is to be initiated.

NOTE 2: If the MCPTT server detects that the functional alias used as the target of the private call request is simultaneously active for multiple MCPTT users, then the MCPTT server can proceed by selecting an appropriate MCPTT ID based on some selection criteria. This selection of an appropriate MCPTT ID is left to implementation.

3. MCPTT server sends the MCPTT emergency private call request towards the target MCPTT client. The request contains an indication of the in-progress emergency. The request contains an indication of an MCPTT emergency alert if the request from the originator indicated MCPTT emergency alert.
4. The MCPTT user on MCPTT client 2 is notified of the incoming MCPTT emergency private call and may display the functional alias of MCPTT client 1.

NOTE 3: MCPTT client 2 does not set its emergency state as a result of receiving the MCPTT emergency private call.

5. The receiving MCPTT client acknowledges the MCPTT emergency private call request to the MCPTT server.
6. The MCPTT server adjusts the priority of the underlying bearer.

7. The MCPTT server informs MCPTT client 1 about the successful MCPTT emergency private call establishment.
8. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 establish the media plane for communication. The MCPTT client 1 can override MCPTT client 2 unless MCPTT client 2 is also in the MCPTT emergency state.

NOTE 4: The priority for the MCPTT emergency private call is retained until cancelled according to system policy (e.g. timeout or call end) or cancelled by an authorized MCPTT user.

NOTE 5: The initiating MCPTT user's MCPTT emergency state is retained by the system until cancelled as in subclause 10.6.2.6.1.3, or by the emergency alert cancellation procedure specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 subclause 10.10.1.2.2.2. The initiating MCPTT user's MCPTT emergency state is also retained locally by the MCPTT client until explicitly cancelled by the MCPTT user.

#### 10.7.2.4.2 MCPTT private call emergency upgrade

This procedure describes the case where an authorized MCPTT user is upgrading a private call to an MCPTT emergency private call while the private call is already in progress.

Procedures in figure 10.7.2.4.2-1 are the signalling procedures for the MCPTT client upgrading a private call to an MCPTT emergency private call.

Pre-conditions:

1. Both members of the private call belong to the same MCPTT system.
2. A private call is already in progress.

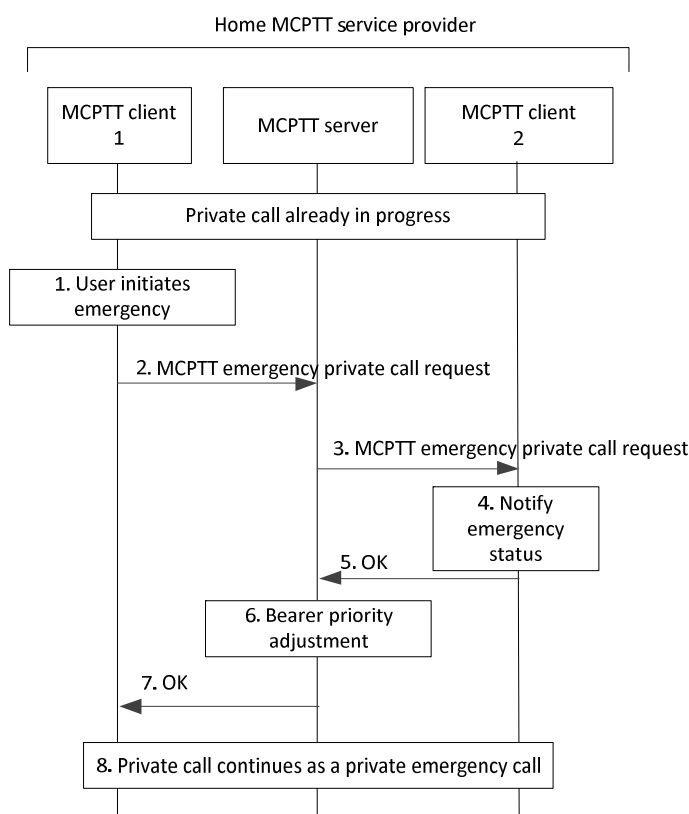


Figure 10.7.2.4.2-1: MCPTT private call upgrade

1. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 initiates an emergency. MCPTT client 1 sets its MCPTT emergency state. MCPTT client 1 retains the MCPTT emergency state until explicitly cancelled by the user of MCPTT client 1.

NOTE 1: While MCPTT client 1 is in the emergency state, all MCPTT group and private calls initiated by MCPTT client 1 are initiated as MCPTT emergency calls.

2. MCPTT client 1 requests the MCPTT server to upgrade the private call to in-progress emergency by sending an MCPTT emergency request. If configured to send an MCPTT alert when initiating an MCPTT emergency upgrade, the request also contains an indication that an MCPTT alert is to be initiated. The request may contain an indication of an implicit floor request. If the emergency private call request includes an implicit floor request it may also include location information.
3. The MCPTT server sends the MCPTT emergency request towards MCPTT client 2, the MCPTT client of the other participant. If location information was included in the emergency private call request, the MCPTT server checks the privacy policy of the MCPTT user to decide if the location information of MCPTT client 1 can be provided to the other user on the call (refer to Annex A.3 "Authorisation to provide location information to other MCPTT users on a call when talking").
4. The MCPTT user of MCPTT client 2 is notified of the in-progress emergency of the MCPTT emergency private call.

NOTE 2: MCPTT client 2 does not set its emergency state as a result of receiving the MCPTT emergency private call upgrade.

5. The receiving MCPTT client acknowledges the MCPTT emergency request to the MCPTT server.
6. The MCPTT server adjusts the priority of the underlying bearer for both participants in the private call. The priority is retained until the call ends.
7. The MCPTT server confirms the upgrade request to MCPTT client 1.
8. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 continue with the private call, which has been transformed into an MCPTT emergency private call. MCPTT client 1 can override MCPTT client 2 unless MCPTT client 2 is also in the MCPTT emergency state.

## 10.7.3 Private call in off-network

### 10.7.3.1 Information flows for private call in off-network

#### 10.7.3.1.1 Call setup request

Table 10.7.3.1.1-1 describes the information flow call setup request from one MCPTT client to another MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.3.1.1-1: call setup request**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID of the caller	M	The identity of the calling party
MCPTT ID of the callee	M	The identity of the called party
SDP offer for private call	M	SDP with media information offered by (to) client
Location information	O	Location of the calling party

#### 10.7.3.1.2 Call setup response

Table 10.7.3.1.2-1 describes the information flow call setup response from one MCPTT client to another MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.3.1.2-1: call setup response**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID of the caller	M	The identity of the calling party
MCPTT ID of the callee	M	The identity of the called party
SDP answer for private call	M	SDP with media information offered by (to) client

#### 10.7.3.1.3 Call release request

Table 10.7.3.1.3-1 describes the information flow call release request from one MCPTT client to another MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.3.1.3-1: call release request**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID of the caller	M	The identity of the calling party
MCPTT ID of the callee	M	The identity of the called party
MCPTT private call release reason	O	This element indicates that reason for the private call release. e.g., Originating client requested, target client requested.

#### 10.7.3.1.4 Call release response

Table 10.7.3.1.4-1 describes the information flow call release response from one MCPTT client to another MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.3.1.4-1: call release response**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID of the caller	M	The identity of the calling party
MCPTT ID of the callee	M	The identity of the called party
MCPTT private call release reason	O	This element indicates that reason for the private call release. e.g., Originating client requested, target client requested, server requested.

#### 10.7.3.2 Use of ProSe capability for private call

When an MCPTT user using a ProSe-enabled UE wants to communicate with a specific MCPTT user using a ProSe-enabled UE by a ProSe mechanism, the MCPTT client enables the use of the ProSe layer procedures for public safety, as specified in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7].

The MCPTT client obtains configuration data such as the ProSe discovery group ID and user info ID of the target MCPTT user from the "List of user(s) who can be called in private call" in the MCPTT user profile and requests the IP address of the MCPTT UE associated with the target MCPTT user from the ProSe layer.

The MCPTT client enables the ProSe layer to determine the IP address for the communication with the target MCPTT UE by providing the ProSe discovery group ID and user info ID (as defined in specification 3GPP TS 23.303 [7]) of the target MCPTT user. This may trigger the ProSe direct discovery for public safety use procedure, described in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7], to identify whether the target MCPTT user is in the proximity of the calling MCPTT user. The user info ID of the target MCPTT user is used by the ProSe layer as the target info (as defined in specification 3GPP TS 23.303 [7]).

The ProSe layer can then provide the IP address related to the target MCPTT user's MCPTT ID to the MCPTT client. The establishment of the off-network private call using the ProSe capability is based on the one-to-one ProSe direct communication procedure described in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7].

**NOTE:** The ProSe procedures for one-to-one direct communications specified in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7] retrieves a layer-2 ID associated with the user info ID of the target MCPTT user by the discovery procedure to establish direct communications between ProSe users.

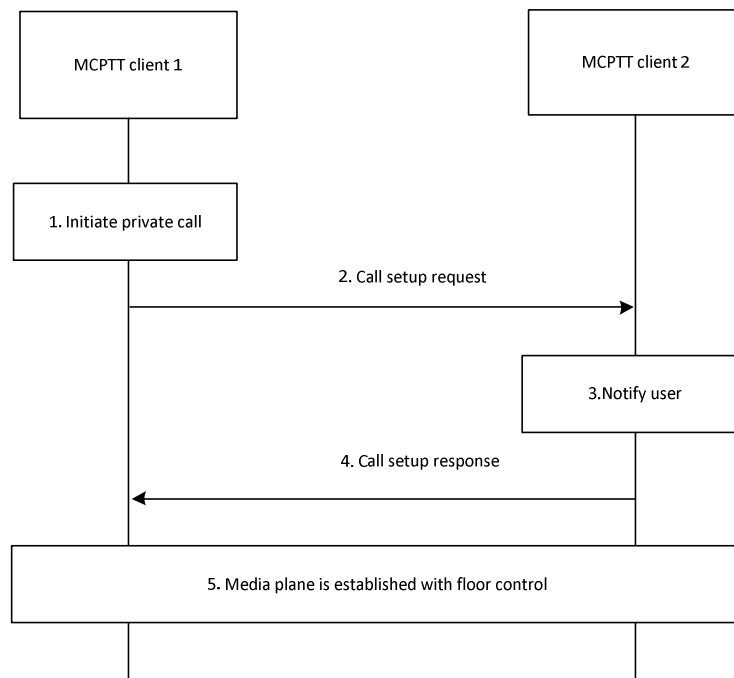
#### 10.7.3.3 Private call setup in automatic commencement mode

The procedure focuses on the case where an MCPTT user is initiating an MCPTT private call for communicating with another MCPTT user when off-network using an automatic commencement mode.

Procedures in figure 10.7.3.3-1 are the basic signalling procedures for the MCPTT client initiating establishment of an off-network MCPTT private call with the chosen MCPTT user.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT user profile used for off-network operation mode is pre-provisioned in the MCPTT UEs.



**Figure 10.7.3.3-1: Private call setup in automatic commencement mode**

1. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 would like to initiate a private call to the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2.
2. The MCPTT client 1 sends a call setup request towards the MCPTT client 2. The call setup request contains an SDP offer, an automatic commencement mode indication, and an element that indicates that MCPTT client 1 is requesting the floor. If the private call request requests the floor it may include location information.
3. The MCPTT client 2 notifies the MCPTT user about the incoming private call.
4. The receiving MCPTT client 2 accepts the private call automatically, and a call setup response indicating the successful call establishment is sent to MCPTT client 1. If MCPTT client 2 rejected the incoming call, the MCPTT client 2 sends a call setup response indicating the failure reason to the MCPTT client 1.

NOTE: Step 4 can also occur prior to step 3.

5. The MCPTT client 1 and the MCPTT client 2 have successfully established the media plane for communication with floor control and the MCPTT client 1 is automatically granted the floor.

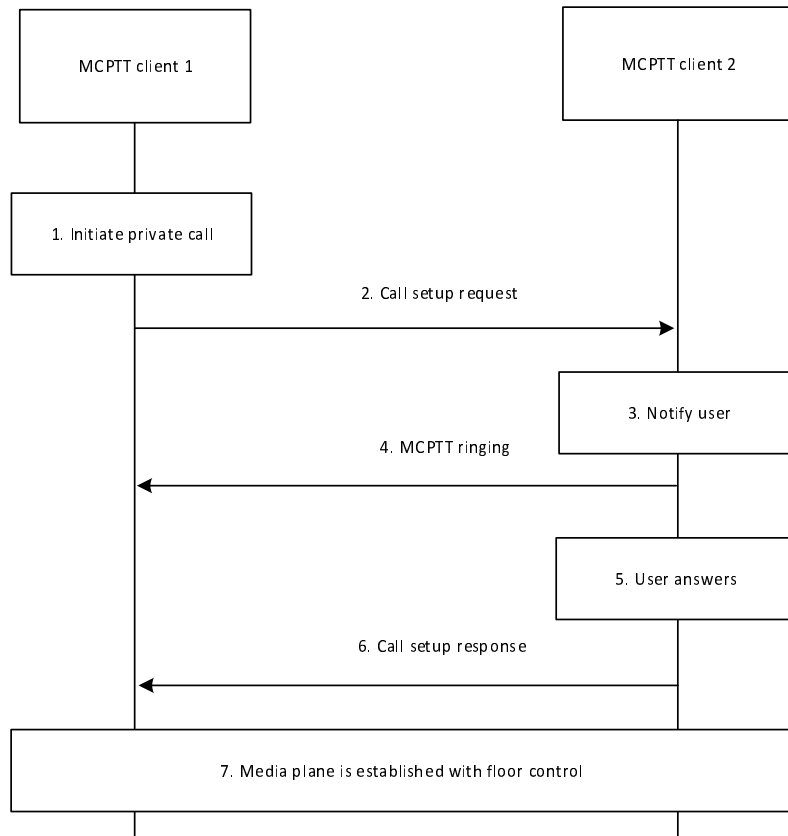
#### 10.7.3.4 Private call setup in manual commencement mode

The procedure focuses on the case where an MCPTT user is initiating an MCPTT private call for communicating with another MCPTT user when off-network using a manual commencement mode.

Procedures in figure 10.7.3.4-1 are the basic signalling procedures for the MCPTT client initiating establishment of an off-network MCPTT private call with the chosen MCPTT user.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT user profile used for off-network operation mode is pre-provisioned in the MCPTT UEs.



**Figure 10.7.3.4-1: Private call setup in manual commencement mode**

1. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 would like to initiate an MCPTT private call to the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2.
2. The MCPTT client 1 sends a call setup request towards the MCPTT client 2. The MCPTT private call setup request contains an SDP offer, a manual commencement mode indication, and an element that indicates that MCPTT client 1 is requesting the floor. If the private call request requests the floor it may include location information.
3. The receiving MCPTT client 2 notifies the MCPTT user about the incoming private call.
4. The MCPTT client 2 sends MCPTT ringing message to the MCPTT client 1.

NOTE: Step 4 can also occur prior to step 3.

5. The MCPTT user at the MCPTT client 2 has accepted the call using manual commencement mode (i.e., has taken some action to accept via the user interface). The MCPTT user may also reject or fail to answer the incoming call.
6. The MCPTT client 2 sends a call setup response indicating the successful call establishment to MCPTT client 1. If the MCPTT client 2 rejected the call or the MCPTT user 2 rejected or failed to answer the incoming call, the MCPTT client 2 sends a call setup response indicating the failure reason to the MCPTT client 1.
7. The MCPTT client 1 and the MCPTT client 2 have successfully established the media plane for communication with floor control and the MCPTT client 1 is automatically granted the floor.

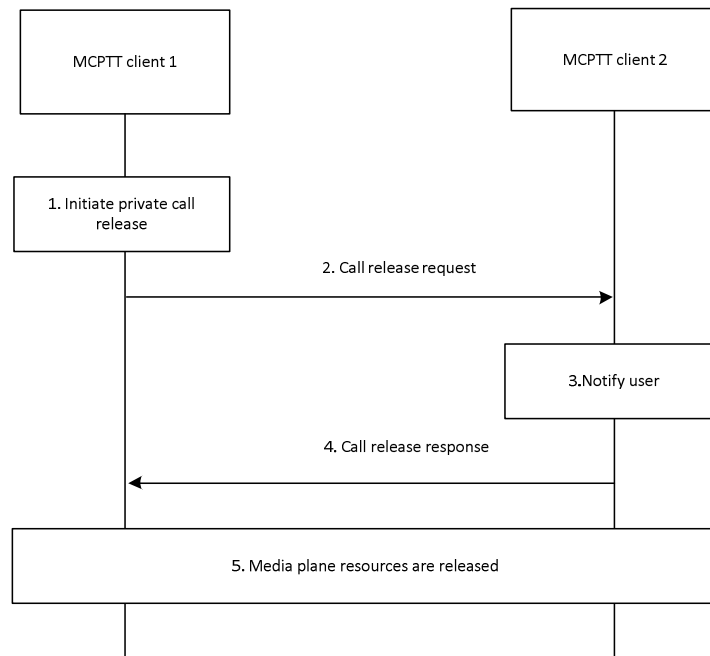
### 10.7.3.5 Private call release

The procedure focuses on the case where an MCPTT client is requesting to release an ongoing MCPTT private call whether the call was established using either of the two commencement modes (manual or automatic), as described in subclause 10.7.3.3 and subclause 10.7.3.4. Either MCPTT client can initiate the call release procedure.

Procedures in figure 10.7.3.5-1 are the basic signalling control plane procedures for an MCPTT client initiating the release of an ongoing off-network MCPTT private call.

Pre-conditions:

1. Two MCPTT users are currently engaged in an off-network MCPTT private call.



**Figure 10.7.3.5-1: Private call release**

1. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 would like to initiate an MCPTT private call release to the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2.
2. The MCPTT client 1 sends a call release request towards the MCPTT client 2.
3. The MCPTT client 2 notifies the MCPTT user about the private call release.
4. The MCPTT client 2 sends a call release response indicating the successful call release to MCPTT client 1.

NOTE: Step 4 can also occur prior to step 3.

5. The MCPTT client 1 and the MCPTT client 2 release all associated media plane resources.

### 10.7.3.6 MCPTT emergency private call

The off-network emergency private call is a special case of off-network private call as defined in subclause 10.7.3. The following are modifications to the aforementioned subclause to support MCPTT private calls:

- The call setup contains an indication that the MCPTT private call is to be an MCPTT emergency private call,
- the bearers of both MCPTT private call participants are given MCPTT emergency priority prior to media transfer,
- either participant in an MCPTT private call may upgrade the call to the MCPTT emergency state during the call by sending an MCPTT upgrade private emergency request,
- placing an MCPTT emergency private call places the MCPTT client in the MCPTT emergency state,
- the bearer priority of each participant is restored to the priority as it was prior to the MCPTT emergency private call initiation, when the call ends or when the MCPTT emergency priority is cancelled

- an authorized user or the originator of the call may cancel the MCPTT emergency priority of the call by sending an MCPTT cancel private emergency request and
- the MCPTT emergency priority of the MCPTT private call may be cancelled when criteria established by the MCPTT Administrator are met (e.g., timeout).

## 10.7.4 MCPTT private call call-back request

### 10.7.4.1 Information flows for MCPTT private call call-back request

#### 10.7.4.1.1 MCPTT private call call-back request

Table 10.7.4.1.1-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call call-back request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.4.1.1-1: MCPTT private call call-back request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Urgency indication	M	This element indicates the urgency (i.e., low, normal, high) of the call-back request.

#### 10.7.4.1.2 MCPTT private call call-back response

Table 10.7.4.1.2-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call call-back response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.4.1.2-1: MCPTT private call call-back response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Result	M	Result of the MCPTT call-back request – success or fail.

#### 10.7.4.1.3 MCPTT private call call-back cancel request

Table 10.7.4.1.3-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call call-back cancel request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.4.1.3-1: MCPTT private call call-back cancel request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party

#### 10.7.4.1.4 MCPTT private call call-back cancel response

Table 10.7.4.1.4-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call call-back cancel response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.4.1.4-1: MCPTT private call call-back cancel response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Result	M	Result of the MCPTT private call call-back cancel request – success or fail.

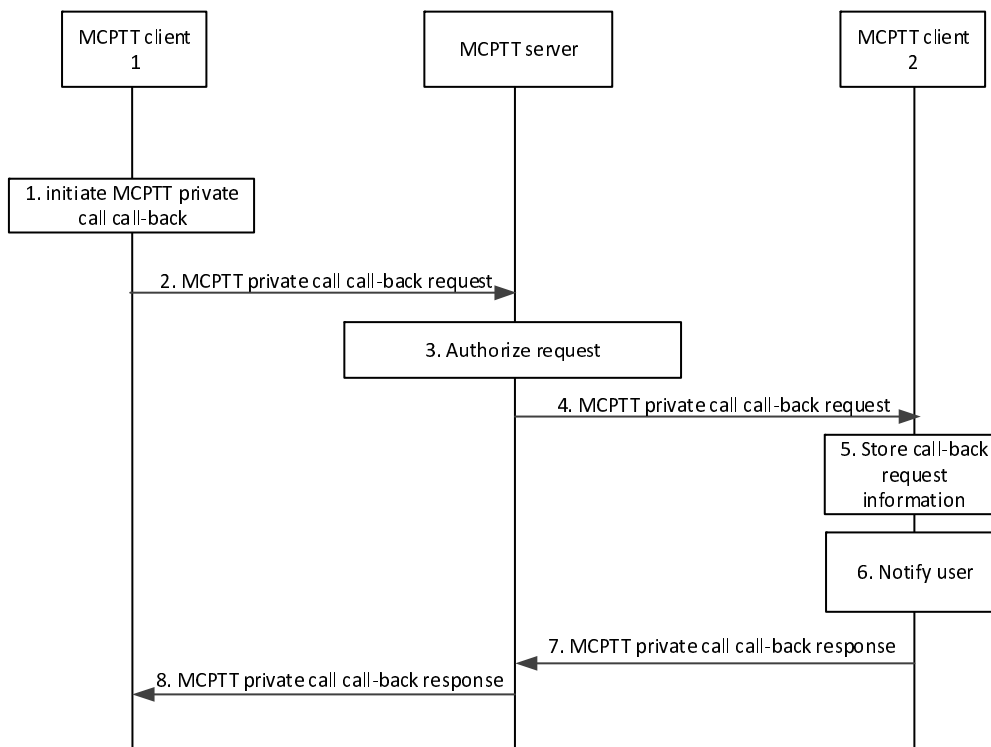
**10.7.4.2 MCPTT private call call-back request within one MCPTT system**

The MCPTT private call call-back request procedure includes the initial MCPTT private call call-back request from the MCPTT user and the indication to the receiving MCPTT user of the who called, the time when the call request was made, and the urgency indication.

Procedures in figure 10.7.4.2-1 show the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT client initiating an MCPTT private call call-back request with the chosen MCPTT user.

Pre-conditions:

- MCPTT user 1 is the current user at MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT user 2 is the current user at MCPTT client 2;
- MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 are registered for MCPTT service.



**Figure 10.7.4.2-1: MCPTT private call call-back request – MCPTT users in the same MCPTT system**

1. MCPTT user on MCPTT client 1 initiates an MCPTT private call call-back request to the MCPTT user of MCPTT client 2.
2. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call call-back request towards the MCPTT server.
3. MCPTT server checks whether the MCPTT user 1 at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate the MCPTT private call call-back request.
4. If authorized, MCPTT server sends the corresponding MCPTT private call call-back request towards the MCPTT client 2.

5. The receiving MCPTT client 2 stores the MCPTT user who initiated the MCPTT private call call-back request, the time the MCPTT private call call-back request was received, and the urgency indication for the MCPTT private call call-back request.
6. The MCPTT client 2 notifies the MCPTT user 2 that there is an MCPTT private call call-back request awaiting his attention.
7. The receiving MCPTT client 2 sends an MCPTT private call call-back response to the MCPTT server.
8. Upon receiving the MCPTT private call call-back response from MCPTT client 2, the MCPTT server informs the MCPTT client 1 about successful call-back request.

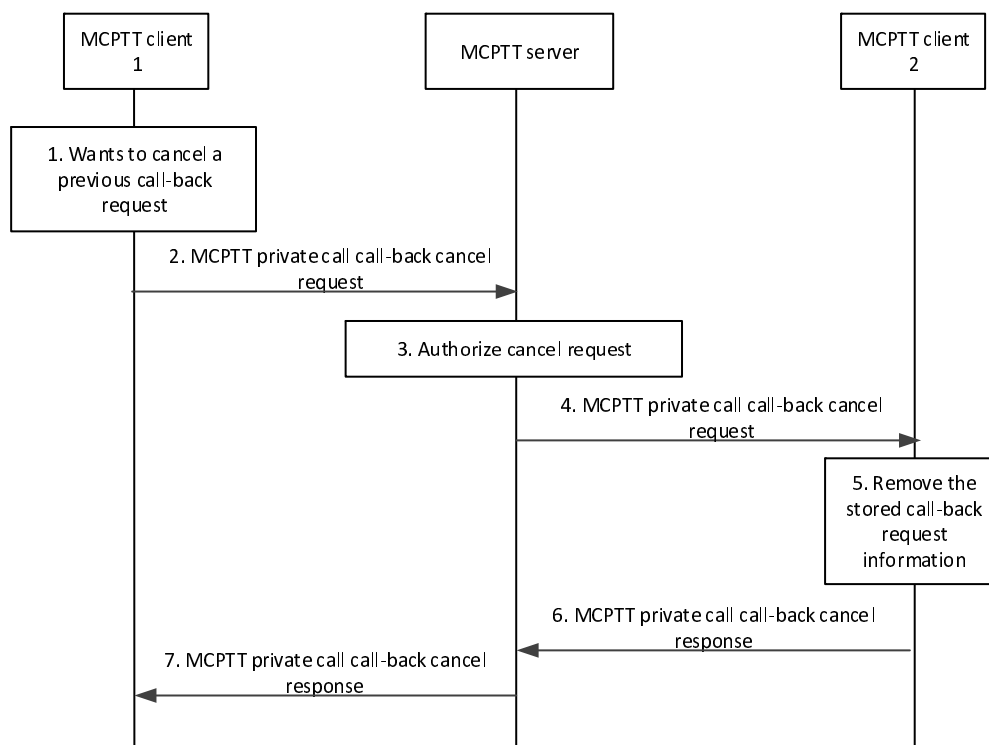
### 10.7.4.3 MCPTT private call call-back cancel request within one MCPTT system

Once an MCPTT private call call-back request has been successfully made and before the receiving MCPTT user has made an MCPTT private call to the calling MCPTT user, the calling MCPTT user may cancel the outstanding MCPTT private call request.

Procedures in figure 10.7.4.3-1 show the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT client initiating an MCPTT private call call-back cancel request with the chosen MCPTT user.

Pre-conditions:

1. A previously successfully made MCPTT private call call-back request from MCPTT client 1 to MCPTT client 2.



**Figure 10.7.4.3-1: MCPTT private call call-back cancel request – MCPTT users in the same MCPTT system**

1. MCPTT user on MCPTT client 1 wants to cancel a previously created MCPTT private call call-back request to the MCPTT user 2 of MCPTT client 2.
2. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call call-back cancel request towards the MCPTT server.
3. MCPTT server checks whether the MCPTT user 1 at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to cancel the previous MCPTT private call call-back request, if one exists.
4. If authorized, MCPTT server sends the corresponding MCPTT private call call-back cancel request towards the MCPTT client 2.

5. The receiving MCPTT client 2 removes all stored information about the previous MCPTT private call call-back request from the MCPTT user 1 on MCPTT client 1.
6. The receiving MCPTT client 2 sends an MCPTT private call call-back cancel response to the MCPTT server.
7. Upon receiving the MCPTT private call call-back cancel response from MCPTT client 2, the MCPTT server informs the MCPTT client 1 about successful call-back request cancelation.

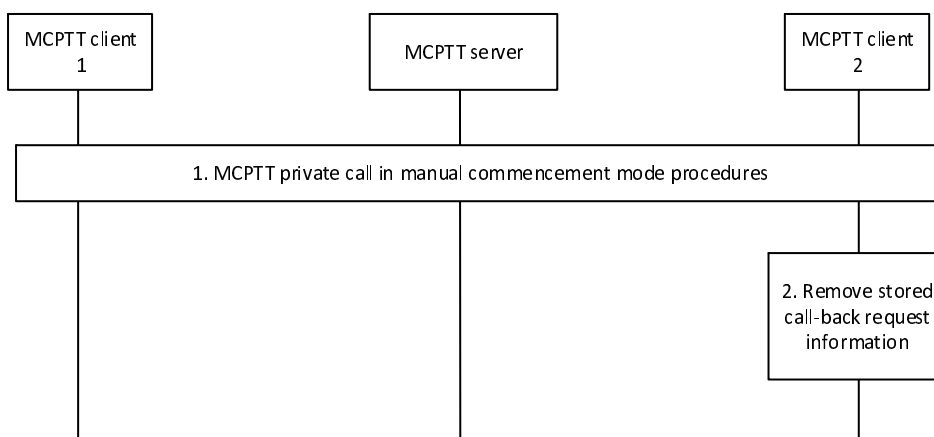
#### 10.7.4.4 MCPTT private call call-back request fulfillment within one MCPTT system

Once an MCPTT private call call-back request has been successfully made, it is expected that the receiving MCPTT user will make an MCPTT private call to the MCPTT user who sent the MCPTT private call call-back request. The procedures for establishing the MCPTT private call between the two users is the same as an MCPTT private call (10.7.2.2.2).

Procedures in figure 10.7.4.4-1 show the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT client returning an MCPTT private call to the MCPTT user who initiated the MCPTT private call call-back request.

Pre-conditions:

1. A previously successfully made MCPTT private call call-back request from MCPTT client 1 to MCPTT client 2.



**Figure 10.7.4.4-1: MCPTT private call-back request fulfillment – MCPTT users in the same MCPTT system**

1. MCPTT user 2 on MCPTT client 2 decides to initiate an MCPTT private call based on the stored MCPTT private call call-back request to the MCPTT user 1 on MCPTT client 1 using the MCPTT private call procedures of 10.7.2.2.2.
2. Once a successful MCPTT private call has been made between the MCPTT user 1 on MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT user 2, then the MCPTT client 2 removes the stored call-back request information.

### 10.7.5 MCPTT call forwarding for private calls

#### 10.7.5.1 General

Call forwarding of MCPTT private calls allows users to configure forwarding of incoming private calls (with or without Floor control) to another MCPTT user depending on the following conditions:

- Immediate
- No answer: If the incoming private call is a call with manual commencement mode and the MCPTT User does not answer within a configured period

The forwarding of an individual call can also be based on manual input of the called MCPTT user on a per call basis. In this case the MCPTT user responds to an incoming MCPTT private call by requesting redirection of that MCPTT

private call to another MCPTT user. It can only be invoked before the communication is established by the served user, which is the period that the served user is being informed of the communication (during ringing).

10.7.5.1.1 Void

10.7.5.1.2 MCPTT private call forwarding request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server and MCPTT server to MCPTT server)

Table 10.7.5.1.2-1 describes the information flow of the MCPTT private call forwarding request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and MCPTT server to MCPTT server.

**Table 10.7.5.1.2-1: MCPTT private call forwarding request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server and MCPTT server to MCPTT server) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID requesting the call forwarding
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID originating the MCPTT private call
MCPTT ID (see NOTE)	O	The target MCPTT ID of the call forwarding
Functional alias (see NOTE)	O	The target functional alias of the call forwarding
NOTE: One identity shall be present		

10.7.5.1.3 MCPTT private call forwarding response (MCPTT server to MCPTT client)

Table 10.7.5.1.3-1 describes the information flow of the MCPTT private call forwarding response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.5.1.3-1: MCPTT private call forwarding response (MCPTT server to MCPTT client) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID requesting the call call forwarding
Result	M	Result of the call forwarding request – success or fail

10.7.5.1.4 MCPTT private call forwarding request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client)

Table 10.7.5.1.4-1 describes the information flow of the MCPTT private call forwarding request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.7.5.1.4-1: MCPTT private call forwarding request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the party to be forwarded
MCPTT ID	M	The target MCPTT ID of the call forwarding

10.7.5.1.5 MCPTT private call forwarding response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server and MCPTT server to MCPTT server)

Table 10.7.5.1.5-1 describes the information flow of the MCPTT private call forwarding response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and MCPTT server to MCPTT server.

**Table 10.7.5.1.5-1: MCPTT private call forwarding response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server and MCPTT server to MCPTT server) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the party to be forwarded
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the target of the forwarding
Result	M	Result of the call forwarding request – success or fail

## 10.7.5.2 Procedures

### 10.7.5.2.1 Update configuration for MCPTT private call forwarding

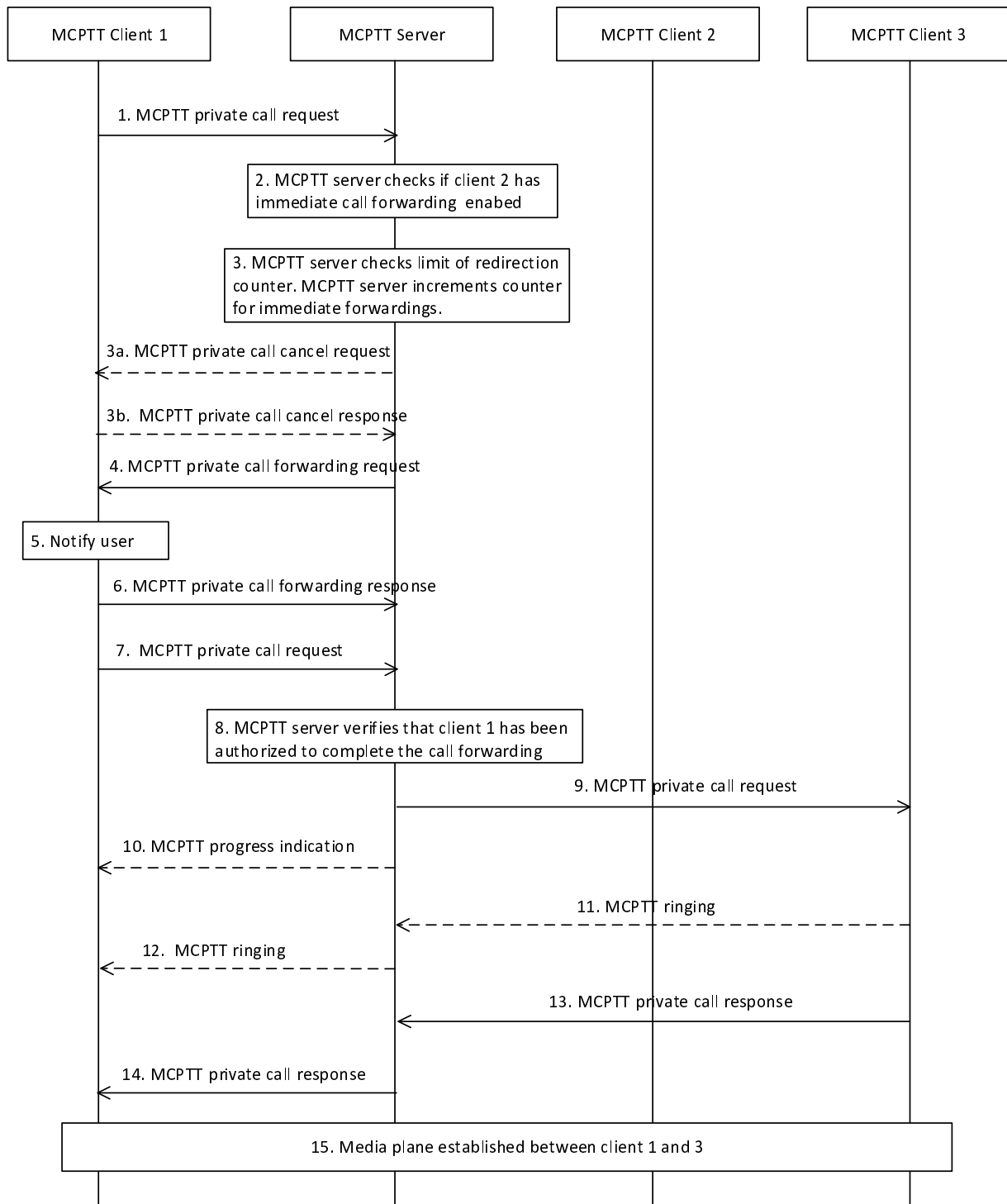
An authorized user can update the call forwarding related parameters stored in the user profile using the procedures as defined in 3GPP TS 23.280 [8] subclause 10.1.4.5.

### 10.7.5.2.2 MCPTT immediate private call forwarding in a single MCPTT system

Figure 10.7.5.2.2-1 below illustrates the procedure of immediate call forwarding of MCPTT private calls.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT client 2 is authorized to use call forwarding and has immediate call forwarding enabled with the destination MCPTT client 3.
2. MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make private calls to client 2.
3. The redirection counter is below the limit.
4. MCPTT client 1 has the necessary security information to initiate a private call with MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 if end2end encryption is required for the private call.



**Figure 10.7.5.2.2-1: Call forwarding immediate for private calls**

1. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT server.
2. The MCPTT server detects that MCPTT client 2 has immediate call forwarding enabled.
3. The MCPTT server checks that the limit of immediate forwardings is not reached. The MCPTT server increments the redirection counter for immediate forwardings. If the target of the MCPTT private call forwarding is a functional alias instead of an MCPTT ID the MCPTT server resolves the functional alias to the corresponding MCPTT ID for which the functional alias is active.

NOTE 1: Depending on implementation the MCPTT server can apply additional call restrictions and decide whether the call is allowed to proceed with the resolved MCPTT ID(s) (e.g. whether the MCPTT ID is within the allowed area of the functional alias). If the MCPTT server detects that the functional alias used as the target of the MCPTT private call forwarding is simultaneously active for multiple MCPTT users, then the MCPTT server can proceed by selecting an appropriate MCPTT ID based on some selection criteria (e.g. current location of the initiating user to determine the dispatcher who is responsible for the related geographic area). The selection of an appropriate MCPTT ID is left to implementation. The selection criteria can include rejection of the call, if no suitable MCPTT ID is selected.

3a. If the target of the call forwarding is a functional alias that is not active, or if the target functional is simultaneously active by multiple users and the outcome of the selection is a rejection, the MCPTT private call forwarding is cancelled, and the MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call cancel request towards MCPTT client 1. Otherwise, the procedure continues with step 4.

3b. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT call private cancel response back to the MCPTT server, and the procedure ends.

4. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call forwarding request towards MCPTT client 1.

NOTE 2: The target MCPTT ID is based on the entry in the user profile for call forwarding immediate.

5. The user at MCPTT client 1 is notified that a call forwarding is in process.

6. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT call private forwarding response back to the MCPTT server.

7. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT server that includes a call forwarding indication set to true. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 3 set up a security association if end-to-end encryption is used for this call.

8. The MCPTT server verifies that client 1 is authorized to perform the MCPTT private call as a result of the MCPTT private call forwarding request. The MCPTT server verifies that the MCPTT private call request contains MCPTT client 3 that is the authorized target from step 4, and the forwarding indication is set to true.

9. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call request towards MCPTT client 3.

10. Optionally the MCPTT server sends an MCPTT progress indication to MCPTT client 1.

11. The user at MCPTT client 3 is alerted. MCPTT client 3 sends an MCPTT ringing to the MCPTT server. This step is not required in case of automatic commencement mode.

12. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT ringing to MCPTT client 1. This step is not required in case of automatic commencement mode.

13. MCPTT client 3 sends an MCPTT private call response to the MCPTT server. In manual commencement mode this occurs after the user at MCPTT client 3 has accepted the call.

14. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call response to MCPTT client 1 indicating that MCPTT client 3 has accepted the call.

15. The media plane for communication between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 3 is established.

### 10.7.5.2.3 MCPTT private call forwarding no answer in a single MCPTT system

Figure 10.7.5.2.3-1 below illustrates the procedure of call forwarding no answer of MCPTT private calls.

NOTE 1: The condition no answer covers both the cases in which the user does not answer because he is not reachable, as well as the case in which he is reachable but does not answer.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT client 2 is authorized to use call forwarding and has call forwarding no answer enabled with the destination MCPTT client 3.
2. MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make private calls to MCPTT client 2.
3. No forwarding with no answer or based on manual user input has so far occurred in this call.

4. MCPTT client 1 has the necessary security information to initiate a private call with MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 if end2end encryption is required for the private call.

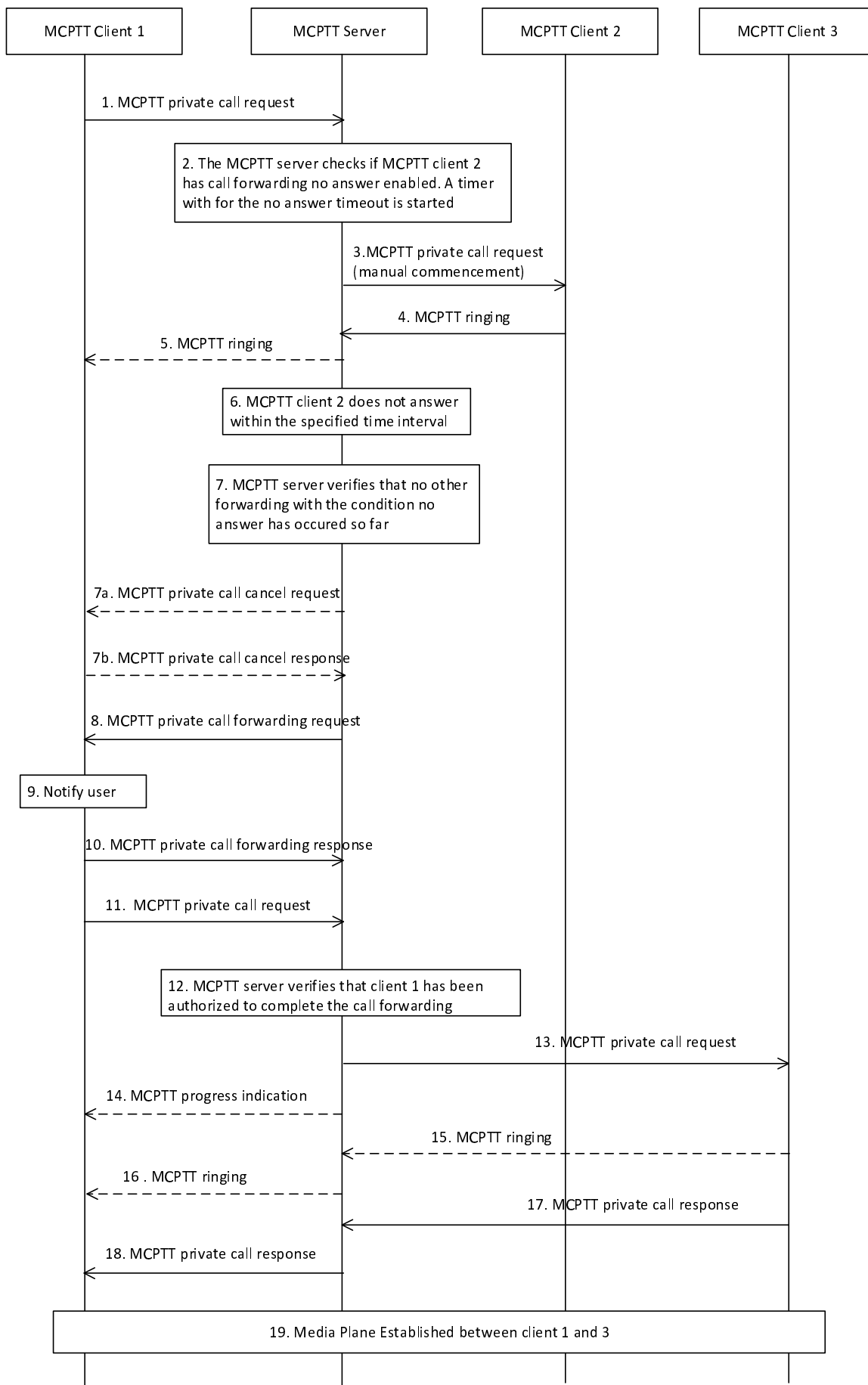


Figure 10.7.5.2.3-1: MCPTT call forwarding no answer

1. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT server.
2. The MCPTT server checks if MCPTT client 2 has call forwarding no answer enabled. If the MCPTT server detects that MCPTT client 2 is not registered, the procedure continues with step 7. Otherwise, the MCPTT server starts a timer with the configured no answer timeout.
3. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call request in manual commencement mode towards MCPTT client 2. If the MCPTT server detects that MCPTT client 2 is not reachable, the procedure continues with step 7.
4. The user at MCPTT client 2 is alerted. MCPTT client 2 sends an MCPTT ringing to the MCPTT server.
5. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT ringing to the MCPTT client 1. This step is not required in case of automatic commencement mode.
6. The MCPTT server detects that MCPTT client 2 does not answer within the specified time interval.
7. The MCPTT server verifies that no other forwarding with the condition no answer or based on manual user input has occurred so far. If the target of the MCPTT private call forwarding is a functional alias instead of an MCPTT ID the MCPTT server resolves the functional alias to the corresponding MCPTT ID for which the functional alias is active.

NOTE 2: Depending on implementation the MCPTT server can apply additional call restrictions and decide whether the call is allowed to proceed with the resolved MCPTT ID(s) (e.g. whether the MCPTT ID is within the allowed area of the functional alias). If the MCPTT server detects that the functional alias used as the target of the MCPTT private call forwarding is simultaneously active for multiple MCPTT users, then the MCPTT server can proceed by selecting an appropriate MCPTT ID based on some selection criteria (e.g. current location of the initiating user to determine the dispatcher who is responsible for the related geographic area). The selection of an appropriate MCPTT ID is left to implementation. The selection criteria can include rejection of the call, if no suitable MCPTT ID is selected.

7a. If the target of the call forwarding is a functional alias that is not active, or if the target functional is simultaneously active by multiple users and the outcome of the selection is a rejection, the MCPTT private call forwarding is cancelled, and the MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call cancel request towards MCPTT client 1. Otherwise, the procedure continues with step 8.

7b. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT call private cancel response back to the MCPTT server, and the procedure ends.

8. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call forwarding request towards the MCPTT client 1.

NOTE 3: The target MCPTT ID is based on the entry in the user profile for call forwarding no answer.

9. The user at MCPTT client 1 is notified that a call forwarding is in process.

10. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call forwarding response back to the MCPTT server.

11. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT server that includes a call forwarding indication set to true. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 3 set up a security association if end-to-end encryption is used for this call.

12. The MCPTT server verifies that client 1 is authorized to perform the MCPTT private call as a result of the MCPTT private call forwarding request. The MCPTT server verifies that the MCPTT private call request contains MCPTT client 3 that is the authorized target from step 8, and the forwarding indication is set to true.

NOTE 4: For call forwarding the MCPTT server does not check if the initial originating MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make an MCPTT private call to the final target MCPTT user at MCPTT client 3.

13. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call request towards MCPTT client 3.

14. Optionally the MCPTT server sends an MCPTT progress indication to MCPTT client 1.

15. The user at MCPTT client 3 is alerted. MCPTT client 3 sends an MCPTT ringing to the MCPTT server. This step is not required in case of automatic commencement mode.

16. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT ringing to MCPTT client 1. This step is not required in case of automatic commencement mode.
17. MCPTT client 3 sends an MCPTT private call response to the MCPTT server. In manual commencement mode this occurs after the user at MCPTT client 3 has accepted the call.
18. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call response to MCPTT client 1 indicating that MCPTT client 3 has accepted the call.
19. The media plane for communication between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 3 is established.

#### 10.7.5.2.3a MCPTT private call forwarding based on manual user input in a single MCPTT system

Figure 10.7.5.2.3a-1 below illustrates the procedure of call forwarding based on manual user input of MCPTT private calls.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT client 2 is authorized to perform call forwarding based on manual input.
2. MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make private calls to MCPTT client 2.
3. No forwarding with no answer or based on manual user input has so far occurred in this call.
4. MCPTT client 1 has the necessary security information to initiate a private call with MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 if end2end encryption is required for the private call.

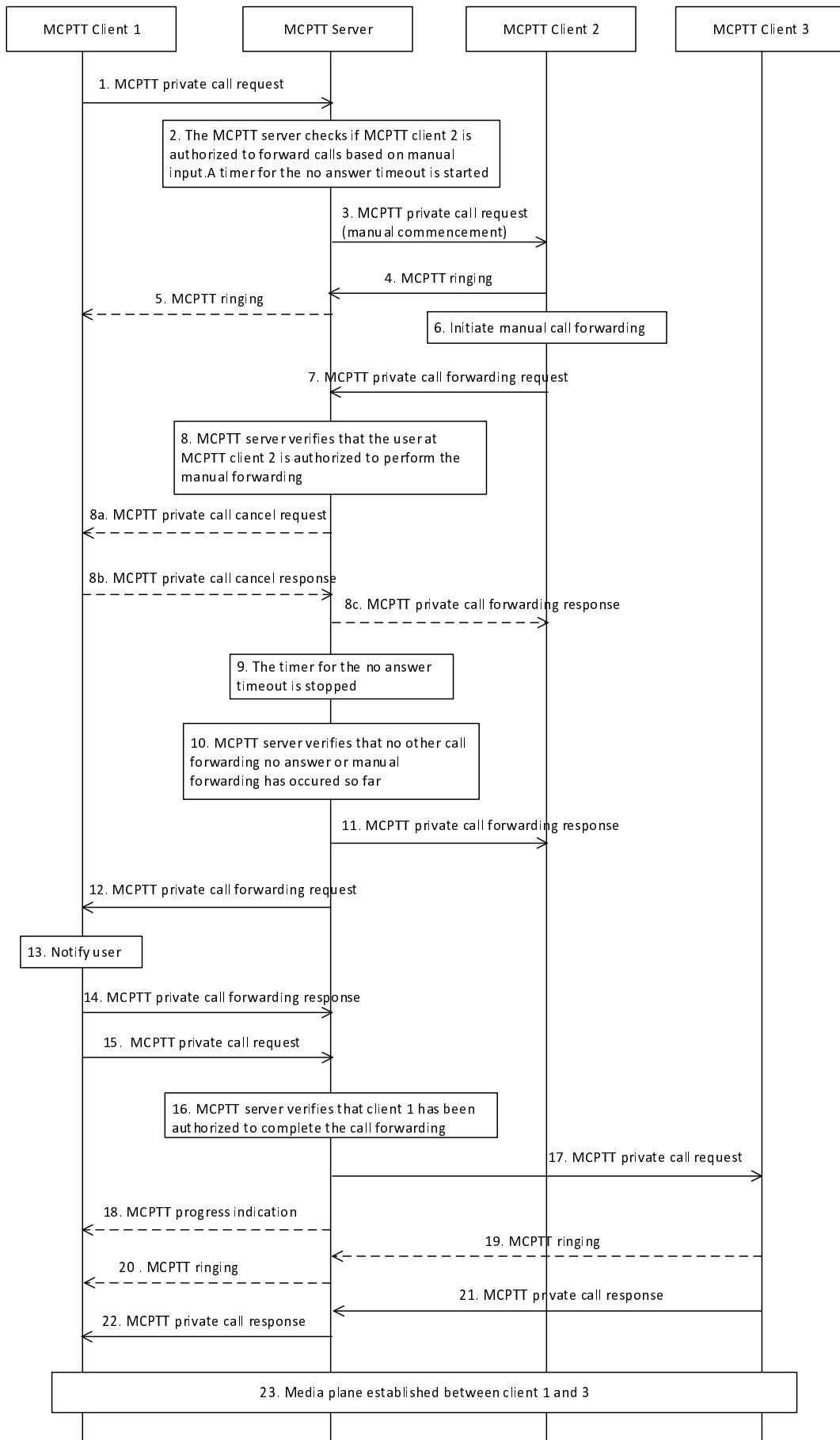


Figure 10.7.5.2.3a-1: MCPTT call forwarding based on manual user input

1. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT server.
2. The MCPTT server checks if MCPTT client 2 has call forwarding no answer enabled. If the MCPTT server detects that MCPTT client 2 is not registered, the procedure continues with step 10. Otherwise, the MCPTT server starts a timer with the configured no answer timeout.
3. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call request in manual commencement mode towards MCPTT client 2. If the MCPTT server detects that MCPTT client 2 is not reachable, the procedure continues with step 10.
4. The user at MCPTT client 2 is alerted. MCPTT client 2 sends an MCPTT ringing to the MCPTT server.
5. In manual commencement mode the MCPTT server sends an MCPTT ringing to the MCPTT client 1.
6. During ringing the user at MCPTT client 2 requests the call to be forwarded based on manual input.
7. MCPTT client 2 sends an MCPTT private call forwarding request to the MCPTT server.
8. The MCPTT server verifies if the user at client 2 is allowed to perform forwarding based on manual input. If the target of the MCPTT private call forwarding is a functional alias instead of an MCPTT ID the MCPTT server resolves the functional alias to the corresponding MCPTT ID for which the functional alias is active.

NOTE 1: Depending on implementation the MCPTT server can apply additional call restrictions and decide whether the call is allowed to proceed with the resolved MCPTT ID(s) (e.g. whether the MCPTT ID is within the allowed area of the functional alias). If the MCPTT server detects that the functional alias used as the target of the MCPTT private call forwarding is simultaneously active for multiple MCPTT users, then the MCPTT server can proceed by selecting an appropriate MCPTT ID based on some selection criteria (e.g. current location of the initiating user to determine the dispatcher who is responsible for the related geographic area). The selection of an appropriate MCPTT ID is left to implementation. The selection criteria can include rejection of the call, if no suitable MCPTT ID is selected.

- 8a. If the target of the call forwarding is a functional alias that is not active, or if the target functional is simultaneously active by multiple users and the outcome of the selection is a rejection, the MCPTT private call forwarding is cancelled, and the MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call cancel request towards MCPTT client 1. Otherwise, the procedure continues with step 9.
- 8b. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT call private cancel response back to the MCPTT server.
- 8c. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call forwarding response with Result equals "fail" to MCPTT client 2, and the procedure ends.
9. The MCPTT server stops the timer for the no answer timeout.
10. The MCPTT server verifies that no other forwarding with the condition no answer or based on manual user input has occurred so far.
11. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call forwarding response to MCPTT client 2.
12. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call forwarding request towards the MCPTT client 1.

NOTE 2: The target MCPTT ID is based on the identity manually entered by the user at MCPTT client 2 in step 6.

13. The user at MCPTT client 1 is notified that a call forwarding is in process.
14. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call forwarding response back to the MCPTT server.
15. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT server that includes a call forwarding indication set to true. MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 3 set up a security association if end-to-end encryption is used for this call.
16. The MCPTT server verifies that client 1 is authorized to perform the MCPTT private call as a result of the MCPTT private call forwarding request. The MCPTT server verifies that the MCPTT private call request contains MCPTT client 3 that is the authorized target from step 12, and the forwarding indication is set to true.

NOTE 3: For call forwarding the MCPTT server does not check if the initial originating MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make an MCPTT private call to the final target MCPTT user at MCPTT client 3.

17. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call request towards MCPTT client 3.
18. Optionally the MCPTT server sends an MCPTT progress indication to MCPTT client 1.
19. The user at MCPTT client 3 is alerted. MCPTT client 3 sends an MCPTT ringing to the MCPTT server. This step is not required in case of automatic commencement mode.
20. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT ringing to MCPTT client 1. This step is not required in case of automatic commencement mode.
21. MCPTT client 3 sends an MCPTT private call response to the MCPTT server. In manual commencement mode this occurs after the user at MCPTT client 3 has accepted the call.
22. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call response to MCPTT client 1 indicating that MCPTT client 3 has accepted the call.
23. The media plane for communication between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 3 is established.

#### 10.7.5.2.4 Handling of multiple MCPTT private call forwardings

If the target of the MCPTT private call forwarding has also any kind of MCPTT call forwarding activated generally the additional forwardings are performed sequentially. However, to avoid excessive numbers of forwardings and in particular to avoid indefinite loops in the forwarding a limit for immediate forwardings is defined in the service configuration. The MCPTT server keeps track of the number of forwardings, if the limit is exceeded, the call will be released. For forwarding no answer or for forwarding based on manual user input, only one forwarding is allowed, and in case of no answer on the first forwarding the MCPTT server will release the call.

#### 10.7.5.2.5 MCPTT private call forwarding with target of the MCPTT private call forwarding in partner MCPTT system

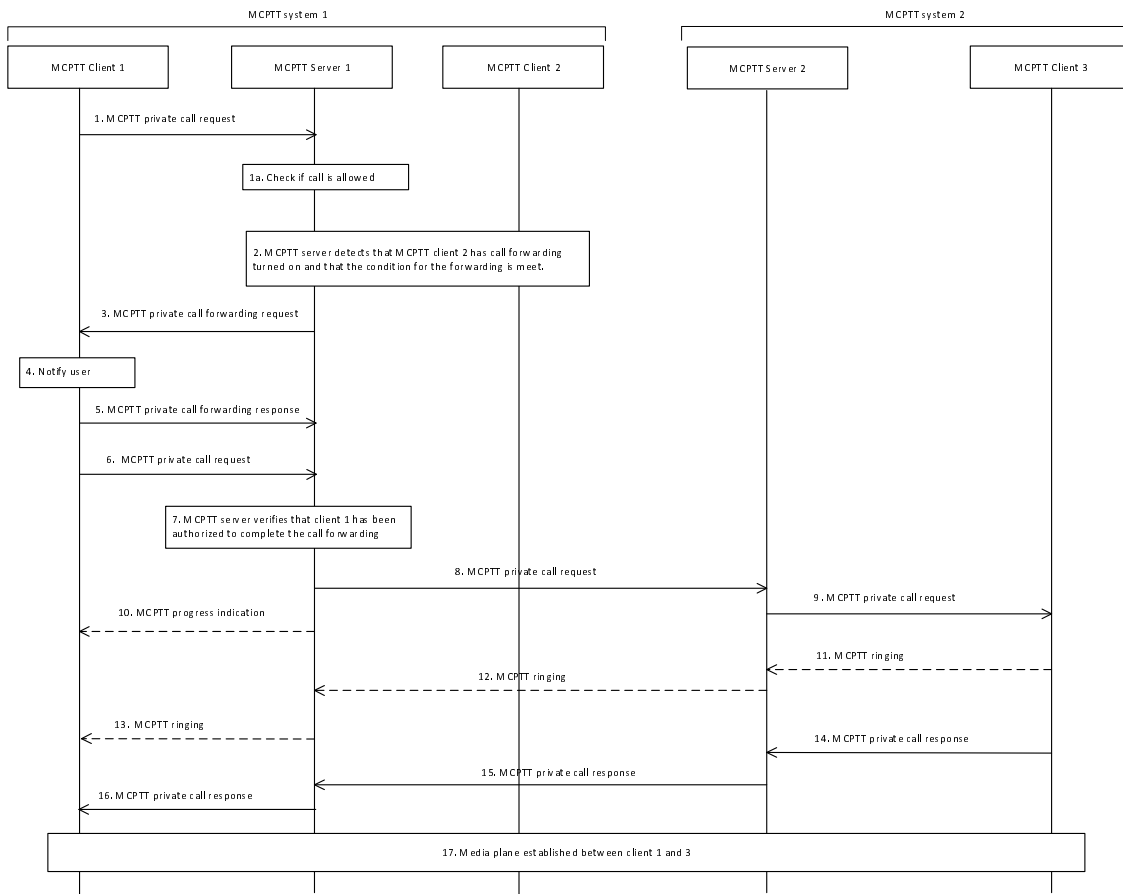
The procedure describes the case for MCPTT for private call forwarding that an MCPTT user in a partner MCPTT system is the target of the MCPTT private call forwarding.

NOTE 1: The procedure shows manual commencement mode, but the changes are also applicable when using automatic commencement mode.

NOTE 2: The procedure focusses on the interaction between the MCPTT servers, which is independent of the condition of the call forwarding. Therefore, the procedure is generically applicable for all types of MCPTT private call forwarding.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT client 2 is authorized to use call forwarding and has immediate call forwarding enabled with the destination MCPTT client 3.
2. MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make private calls to MCPTT client 2.
3. The redirection counter is below the limit.
4. MCPTT client 1 has the necessary security information to initiate a private call with MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 if end-to-end encryption is required for the private call.



**Figure 10.7.5.2.5-1: Simplified private call setup with MCPTT private calls forwarding in manual commencement mode with forwarding target in the partner MCPTT system**

1. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards MCPTT server 1.
- 1a If the MCPTT private call request contains a functional alias instead of an MCPTT ID as called party, MCPTT server 1 checks whether MCPTT client 1 is allowed to use the functional alias of MCPTT client 2 to setup a private call and whether MCPTT client 2 is allowed to receive a private call from MCPTT client 1 using the functional alias.

NOTE 1: If the target of the MCPTT private call request is a functional alias, the procedure resolves the functional alias to the corresponding MCPTT ID for which the functional alias is active. For simplicity details are not described in this procedure.

2. MCPTT server 1 detects that MCPTT client 2 has immediate call forwarding enabled to MCPTT client 3 which is registered in MCPTT system 2.
3. MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT private call forwarding request towards MCPTT client 1.

NOTE 2: If the target of the MCPTT private call forwarding is a functional alias, the procedure resolves the functional alias to the corresponding MCPTT ID for which the functional alias is active. For simplicity details of the resolution are not described.

4. The user at MCPTT client 1 is notified that a call forwarding is in process.
5. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT call private forwarding response back to MCPTT server 1.
6. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards MCPTT server 1 that includes a call forwarding indication set to true.
7. MCPTT server 1 verifies that MCPTT client 1 is authorized to perform an MCPTT private call as a result of the MCPTT private call forwarding request. MCPTT server 1 verifies that the MCPTT private call request contains MCPTT client 3 that is the authorized target from step 3, and the forwarding indication is set to true.

NOTE 3: For call forwarding the MCPTT server does not check if the initial originating MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make an MCPTT private call to the final target MCPTT user at MCPTT client 3.

8. MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards MCPTT server 2.

9. MCPTT server 2 sends an MCPTT private call request towards MCPTT client 3.

NOTE 3: MCPTT server 2 detects that the private call request contains a forwarding indication is set to true and therefore skips the authorization checking.

10. Optionally MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT progress indication to MCPTT client 1.

11. The user at MCPTT client 3 is alerted. MCPTT client 3 sends an MCPTT ringing to MCPTT server 2. This step is not required in case of automatic commencement mode.

12. MCPTT server 2 sends an MCPTT ringing to MCPTT server 1. This step is not required in case of automatic commencement mode.

13. MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT ringing to MCPTT client 1. This step is not required in case of automatic commencement mode.

14. MCPTT client 3 sends an MCPTT private call response to MCPTT server 2. In manual commencement mode this occurs after the user at MCPTT client 3 has accepted the call.

15. MCPTT server 2 sends an MCPTT private call response to MCPTT server 1. In manual commencement mode this occurs after the user at MCPTT client 3 has accepted the call.

16. MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT private call response to MCPTT client 1 indicating that MCPTT client 3 has accepted the call.

17. The media plane for communication between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 3 is established.

#### 10.7.5.2.6 MCPTT private call forwarding with MCPTT private call forwarding occurring in the partner MCPTT system

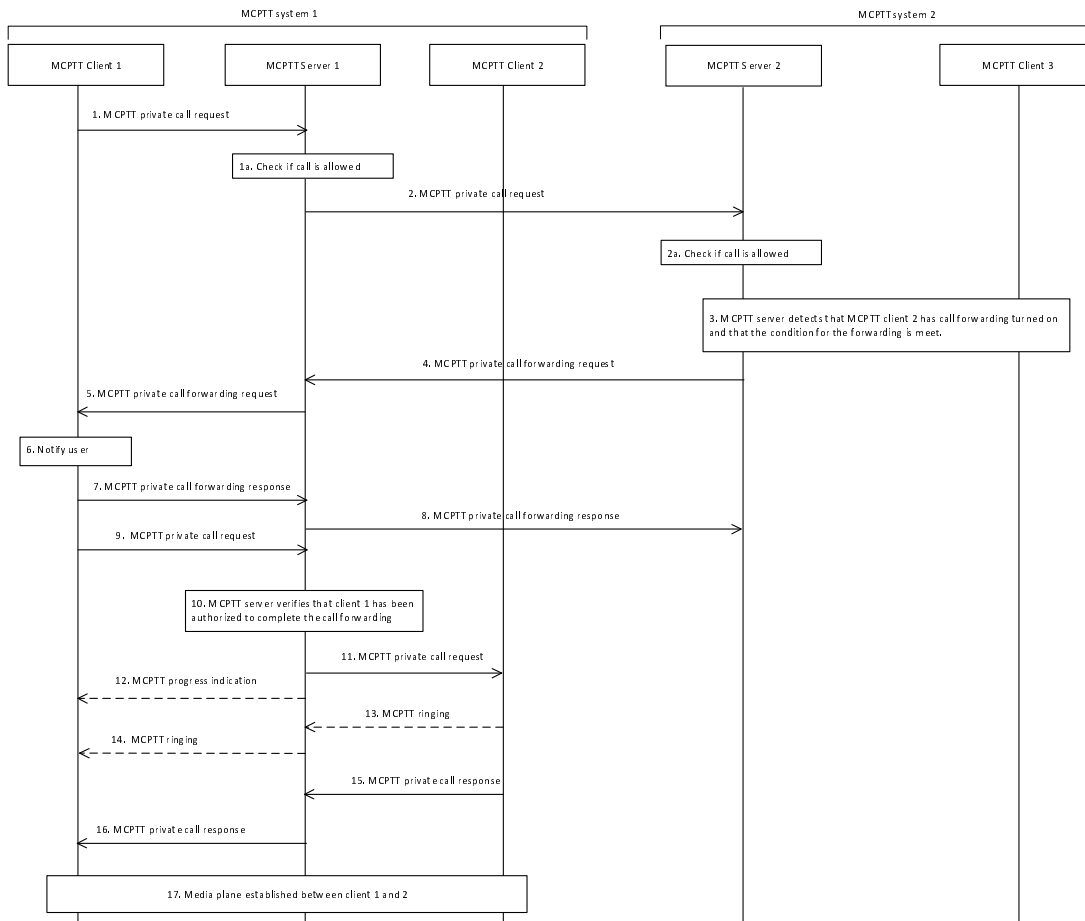
The procedure for MCPTT private call forwarding describes the case of an MCPTT private call forwarding occurring in the partner MCPTT system.

NOTE 1: The procedure shows manual commencement mode, but the changes are also applicable when using automatic commencement mode.

NOTE 2: The procedure focusses on the interaction between the MCPTT servers, which is independent of the condition for the call forwarding. Therefore, the procedure is generically applicable for all types of call forwarding.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT client 3 is authorized to use call forwarding and has immediate call forwarding enabled with the destination MCPTT client 2.
2. MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make private calls to MCPTT client 3.
3. The redirection counter is below the limit.
4. MCPTT client 1 has the necessary security information to initiate a private call with MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 if end-to-end encryption is required for the private call.



**Figure 10.7.5.2.6-1: Simplified private call setup with MCPTT private calls forwarding in manual commencement mode with forwarding in the partner MCPTT systems**

1. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards MCPTT server 1 for establishing an MCPTT private call with MCPTT client 3 registered at MCPTT system 2.
- 1a If the MCPTT private call request contains a functional alias instead of an MCPTT ID as called party, MCPTT server 1 checks whether MCPTT client 1 is allowed to use the functional alias of MCPTT client 3 to setup a private call.

NOTE 1: If the target of the MCPTT private call request is a functional alias, the procedure resolves the functional alias to the corresponding MCPTT ID for which the functional alias is active. For simplicity details are not described.

2. MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards MCPTT server 2 for establishing an MCPTT private call with MCPTT client 3 registered at MCPTT system 2.
- 2a If the MCPTT private call request contains a functional alias instead of an MCPTT ID as called party, MCPTT server 2 checks whether MCPTT client 3 is allowed to receive a private call from MCPTT client 1 using the functional alias.
3. MCPTT server 2 detects that MCPTT client 3 has immediate call forwarding enabled to MCPTT client 2 registered at MCPTT system 1.

NOTE 2: If the target of the MCPTT private call forwarding is a functional alias, the procedure resolves the functional alias to the corresponding MCPTT ID for which the functional alias is active. For simplicity details of the resolution are not described.

4. MCPTT server 2 sends an MCPTT private call forwarding request towards MCPTT server 1.
5. MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT private call forwarding request towards MCPTT client 1.

6. The user at MCPTT client 1 is notified that a call forwarding is in process.
7. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT call private forwarding response back to MCPTT server 1.
8. MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT call private forwarding response back to MCPTT server 2.
9. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards MCPTT server 1 that includes a call forwarding indication set to true.
10. MCPTT server 1 verifies that MCPTT client 1 is authorized to perform the MCPTT private call as a result of the MCPTT private call forwarding request. MCPTT server 1 verifies that the MCPTT private call request contains MCPTT client 2 that is the authorized target from step 5, and the forwarding indication is set to true.

NOTE 3: For call forwarding the MCPTT server does not check if the initial originating MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make an MCPTT private call to the final target MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2.

11. MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards MCPTT client 2.
12. Optionally MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT progress indication to MCPTT client 1.
13. The user at MCPTT client 2 is alerted. MCPTT client 2 sends an MCPTT ringing to MCPTT server 1. This step is not required in case of automatic commencement mode.
14. MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT ringing to MCPTT client 1. This step is not required in case of automatic commencement mode.
15. MCPTT client 2 sends an MCPTT private call response to MCPTT server 1. In manual commencement mode this occurs after the user at MCPTT client 2 has accepted the call.
16. MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT private call response to MCPTT client 1 indicating that MCPTT client 2 has accepted the call.
17. The media plane for communication between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 is established.

## 10.7.6 Call transfer for MCPTT private calls

### 10.7.6.1 General

Call transfer of MCPTT private calls allows users to relocate an existing MCPTT private call to another MCPTT user.

#### 10.7.6.1.1 MCPTT private call transfer request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server)

Table 10.7.6.1.1-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call transfer request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.7.6.1.1-1: MCPTT private call transfer request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the party requesting the transfer
MCPTT ID (see NOTE)	O	The MCPTT ID of the target of the transfer
Functional alias (see NOTE)	O	The functional alias of the target of the transfer
NOTE: One identity shall be present		

#### 10.7.6.1.2 MCPTT private call transfer request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client and MCPTT server to MCPTT server)

Table 10.7.6.1.2-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call transfer request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.7.6.1.2-1: MCPTT private call transfer request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the party to be transferred
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the target of the transfer

### 10.7.6.1.3 MCPTT private call transfer response (MCPTT server to MCPTT client and MCPTT server to MCPTT server)

Table 10.7.6.1.3-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call transfer response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.7.6.1.3-1: MCPTT private call transfer response (MCPTT server to MCPTT client and MCPTT server to MCPTT server) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the party requesting the transfer
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the target of the transfer
Result	M	Result of the transfer request – success or fail.

### 10.7.6.1.4 MCPTT private call transfer response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server)

Table 10.7.6.1.4-1 describes the information flow MCPTT private call transfer response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.7.6.1.4-1: MCPTT private call transfer response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the party to be transferred (original calling party)
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the target of the transfer
Result	M	Result of the server initiated transfer request – success or fail.

## 10.7.6.2 Procedures

### 10.7.6.2.1 MCPTT private call unannounced transfer in a single MCPTT system

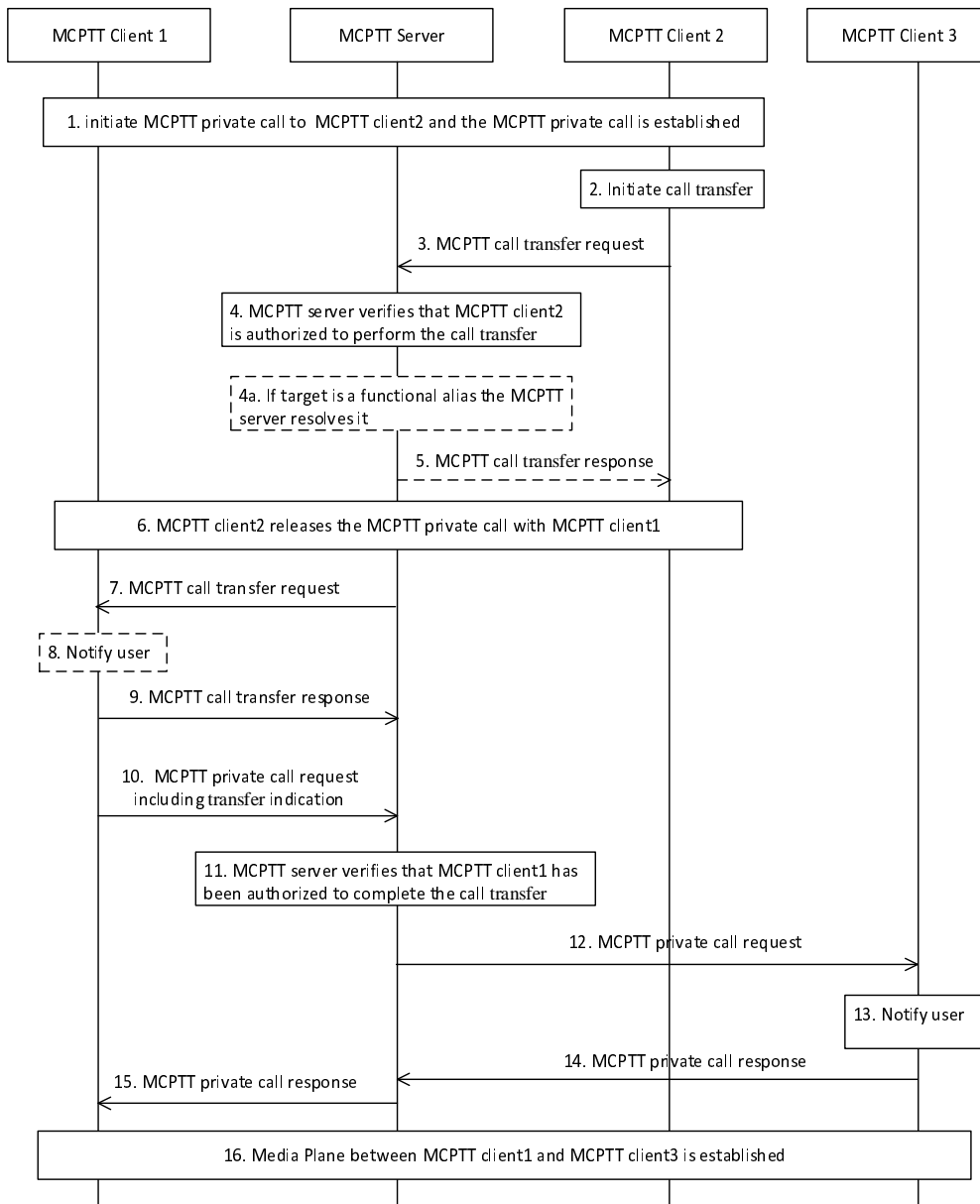
The procedure for MCPTT private call unannounced transfer covers the case where an MCPTT client requests an ongoing MCPTT private call (with or without floor control) to be transferred to another MCPTT user without prior announcement.

Figure 10.7.6.2.1-1 below illustrates the procedure for MCPTT private call unannounced transfer.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT client 2 is authorized to use call transfer.
2. MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make private calls to MCPTT client 2.
3. MCPTT client 2 is authorized to transfer private calls to MCPTT client 3.

- MCPTT client 1 has the necessary security information to initiate a private call with MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 if end2end encryption is required for the private call.



**Figure 10.7.6.2.1-1: MCPTT private call unannounced transfer**

- MCPTT client 1 initiates an MCPTT private call to MCPTT client 2 using the normal MCPTT call establishment as described in subclause 10.7.2.2. The MCPTT private call is established, and the user at MCPTT client 1 can talk with the user at MCPTT client 2.
- Now the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2 decides to perform a call transfer.
- The MCPTT client 2 sends an MCPTT call transfer request to the MCPTT server.
- The MCPTT server verifies that MCPTT client 2 is authorized to transfer the MCPTT private call to MCPTT client 3. This check is based on entries in the user profile of the user at MCPTT client 2. First, the MCPTT server checks the value of the "Allow private call transfer" entry. If it is false, the authorization check has failed, and the procedure continues with step 5. Otherwise the MCPTT server checks if the "Authorised to transfer private calls to any MCPTT user" entry is true. If this is the case the check has passed, and for target type of MCPTT ID the procedure continues with step 5 and for target ID type of functional alias the procedure continues with step 4a. The subsequent checking depends on the type of target ID. If the target ID is a MCPTT ID, the MCPTT server checks for a matching entry of the target MCPTT ID in the "List of MCPTT users that the MCPTT user is authorised to use as targets for call transfer" list. If a matching entry is found, the check has passed, if no

matching entry is found the check has failed, for any outcome the procedure continues with step 5. If the target ID is a functional alias, the MCPTT server checks for a matching entry of the target functional alias in the "List of functional aliases that the MCPTT user is authorised to use as targets for call transfer" list. If a matching entry is found, the check has passed, and the procedure continues with step 4a. If no matching entry is found, the authorization check has failed and the procedure continues with step 5.

- 4a. If the target of the MCPTT private call transfer is a functional alias instead of an MCPTT ID the MCPTT server resolves the functional alias to the corresponding MCPTT ID for which the functional alias is active.

NOTE 1: Depending on implementation the MCPTT server can apply additional call restrictions and decide whether the call is allowed to proceed with the resolved MCPTT ID(s) (e.g. whether the MCPTT ID is within the allowed area of the functional alias). If the MCPTT server detects that the functional alias used as the target of the MCPTT private call transfer is simultaneously active for multiple MCPTT users, then the MCPTT server can proceed by selecting an appropriate MCPTT ID based on some selection criteria (e.g. current location of the initiating user to determine the dispatcher who is responsible for the related geographic area). The selection of an appropriate MCPTT ID is left to implementation. The selection criteria can include rejection of the call, if no suitable MCPTT ID is selected.

5. If the authorization check has failed, or the target of the transfer is a functional alias that is not active, or the target of the transfer is a functional alias that is simultaneously active by multiple users and the outcome of the selection is a rejection, the MCPTT private call transfer is cancelled, and the MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call transfer response with result "fail" back to MCPTT client 2. The MCPTT private call between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 remains up, and the procedure stops. Otherwise, the procedure continues.
6. MCPTT client 2 initiates release of the private call between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 as described in subclause 10.7.2.2.3.1. This step can occur at any time after step 5, since a new private call between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 3 is independent of the private call between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2.
7. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT call transfer request towards the MCPTT client 1.
8. Optionally the user at MCPTT client 1 is notified that a call transfer is in progress.
9. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT call transfer response back to the MCPTT server.
10. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT server that includes a call transfer indication set to true.
11. The MCPTT server verifies that MCPTT client 1 is authorized to perform the MCPTT private call as a result of the MCPTT private call transfer request based on the fact that the transfer indication is present and set to true in the MCPTT private call request.

NOTE 2: For call transfer the MCPTT server does not check if the initial originating MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make an MCPTT private call to the final target MCPTT user at MCPTT client 3.

12. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT call request to MCPTT client 3.
13. The user at MCPTT client 3 is notified about the incoming call.
14. MCPTT client 3 sends an MCPTT private call response back to the MCPTT server.
15. The MCPTT server forwards the MCPTT private call response towards MCPTT client 1.
16. The media plane for communication between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 3 is established.

#### 10.7.6.2.2 MCPTT private call announced transfer in a single MCPTT system

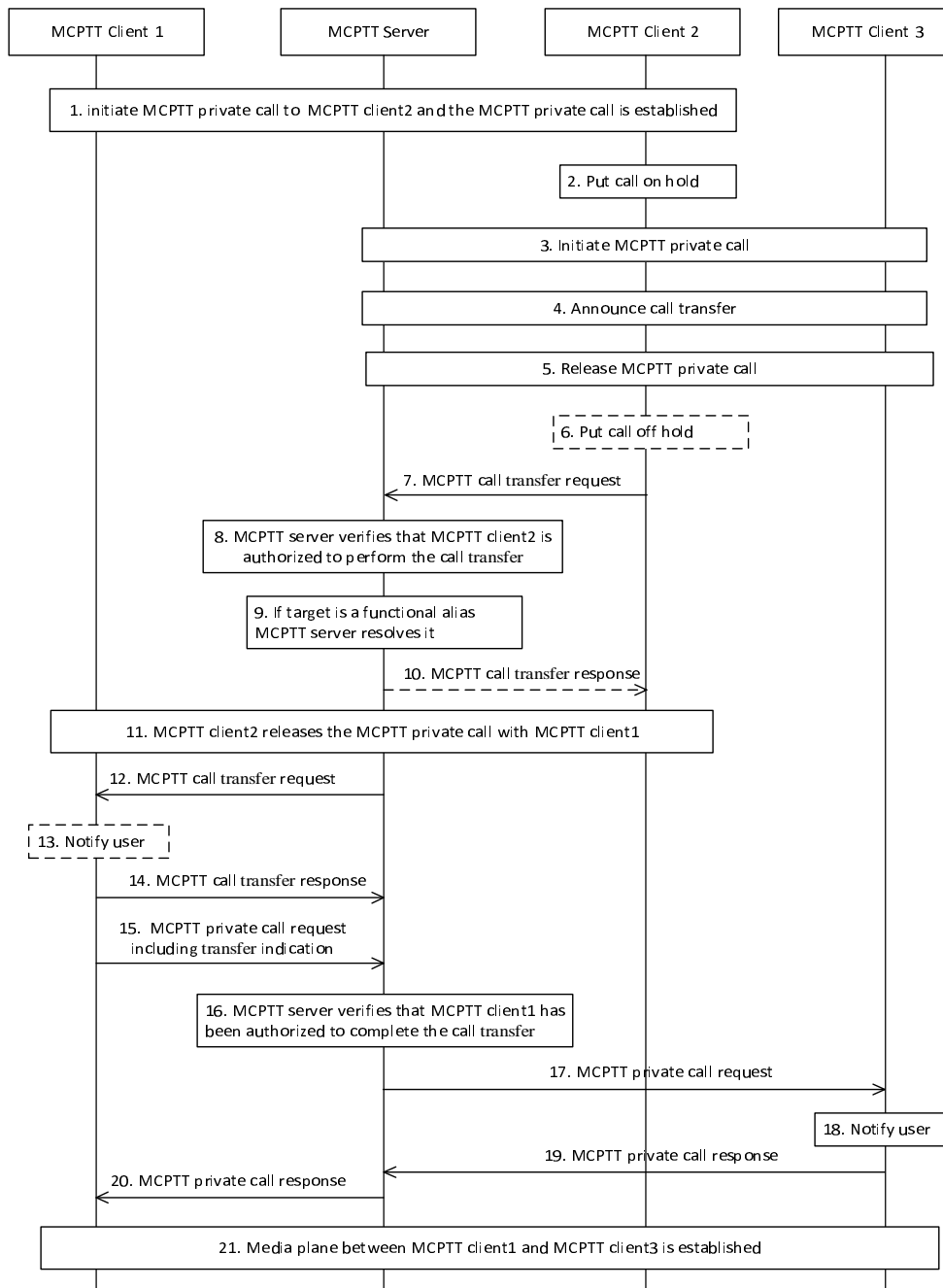
The procedure for MCPTT private call announced transfer covers the case where an MCPTT client requests an ongoing MCPTT private call (with or without floor control) to be transferred to another MCPTT user with prior announcement.

Figure 10.7.6.2.2-1 below illustrates the procedure for MCPTT private call announced transfer.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT client 2 is authorized to use call transfer.
2. MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make private calls to MCPTT client 2.

3. MCPTT client 2 is authorized to make private calls to MCPTT client 3.
4. MCPTT client 2 is authorized to transfer private calls to MCPTT client 3.
5. MCPTT client 2 supports simultaneous sessions for MCPTT private calls (10.8).
6. MCPTT client 1 has the necessary security information to initiate a private call with MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3, and MCPTT client 2 has the necessary security information to initiate a private call with MCPTT client 3 if end2end encryption is required for the private call.



**Figure 10.7.6.2.2-1: MCPTT private call announced transfer**

1. MCPTT client 1 initiates an MCPTT private call to MCPTT client 2 using the normal MCPTT call establishment as described in subclause 10.7.2.2. The MCPTT private call is established, and the user at MCPTT client 1 can talk with the user at MCPTT client 2. The user at MCPTT client 2 decides to transfer the call.
2. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2 puts the call on hold.

3. MCPTT client 2 initiates an MCPTT private call to MCPTT client 3 using the normal MCPTT call establishment procedures as described in subclause 10.7.2.2. The MCPTT private call is established, and the user at MCPTT client 2 can talk with the user at MCPTT client 3.
4. The user at MCPTT client 2 can talk with the user at MCPTT client 3 and announce the call transfer.
5. The MCPTT client 2 releases the MCPTT private call with MCPTT client 3 using the normal MCPTT call release procedure as described in subclause 10.7.2.2.3.1. This step can occur at any time after step 4.
6. Optionally the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2 puts the call with MCPTT client 1 off hold and confirms that the call will be transferred.
7. The MCPTT client 2 sends an MCPTT call transfer request to the MCPTT server.
8. The MCPTT server verifies that MCPTT client 2 is authorized to transfer the MCPTT private call to MCPTT client 3. This check is based on entries in the user profile of the user at MCPTT client 2. First, the MCPTT server checks the value of the "Allow private call transfer" entry. If it is false, the authorization check has failed, and the procedure continues with step 10. Otherwise the MCPTT server checks if the "Authorised to transfer private calls to any MCPTT user" entry is true. If this is the case the check has passed, and for target type of MCPTT ID the procedure continues with step 10 and for target ID type of functional alias the procedure continues with step 9. The subsequent checking depends on the type of target ID. If the target ID is a MCPTT ID, the MCPTT server checks for a matching entry of the target MCPTT ID in the "List of MCPTT users that the MCPTT user is authorised to use as targets for call transfer" list. If a matching entry is found, the check has passed, if no matching entry is found the check has failed, for any outcome the procedure continues with step 10. If the target ID is a functional alias, the MCPTT server checks for a matching entry of the target functional alias in the "List of functional aliases that the MCPTT user is authorised to use as targets for call transfer" list. If a matching entry is found, the check has passed, and the procedure continues with step 9. If no matching entry is found, the authorization check has failed and the procedure continues with step 10.
9. If the target of the MCPTT private call transfer is a functional alias instead of an MCPTT ID the MCPTT server resolves the functional alias to the corresponding MCPTT ID for which the functional alias is active.

NOTE 1: Depending on implementation the MCPTT server can apply additional call restrictions and decide whether the call is allowed to proceed with the resolved MCPTT ID(s) (e.g. whether the MCPTT ID is within the allowed area of the functional alias). If the MCPTT server detects that the functional alias used as the target of the MCPTT private call transfer is simultaneously active for multiple MCPTT users, then the MCPTT server can proceed by selecting an appropriate MCPTT ID based on some selection criteria (e.g. current location of the initiating user to determine the dispatcher who is responsible for the related geographic area). The selection of an appropriate MCPTT ID is left to implementation. The selection criteria can include rejection of the call, if no suitable MCPTT ID is selected.

10. If the authorization check has failed, or the target of the transfer is a functional alias that is not active, or the target of the transfer is a functional alias that is simultaneously active by multiple users and the outcome of the selection is a rejection, the MCPTT private call transfer is cancelled, and the MCPTT server sends an MCPTT private call transfer response with result "fail" back to MCPTT client 2. The MCPTT private call between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 remains up, and the procedure stops. Otherwise, the procedure continues.
11. MCPTT client 2 initiates release of the private call between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 as described in subclause 10.7.2.2.3.1. This step can occur at any time after step 10, since a new private call between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 3 is independent of the private call between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2.
12. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT call transfer request towards the MCPTT client 1.
13. Optionally the user at MCPTT client 1 is notified that a call transfer is in progress.
14. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT call transfer response back to the MCPTT server.
15. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT server that includes a call transfer indication set to true.
16. The MCPTT server verifies that MCPTT client 1 is authorized to perform the MCPTT private call as a result of the MCPTT private call transfer request based on the fact that the transfer indication is present and set to true in the MCPTT private call request.

NOTE 2: For call transfer the MCPTT server does not check if the initial originating MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make an MCPTT private call to the final target MCPTT user at MCPTT client 3.

17. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT call request to MCPTT client 3.
18. The user at MCPTT client 3 is notified about the incoming call.
19. MCPTT client 3 sends an MCPTT private call response back to the MCPTT server.
20. The MCPTT server forwards the MCPTT private call response towards MCPTT client 1.
21. The media plane for communication between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 3 is established.

#### 10.7.6.2.3 MCPTT private call announced transfer with target in partner MCPTT system

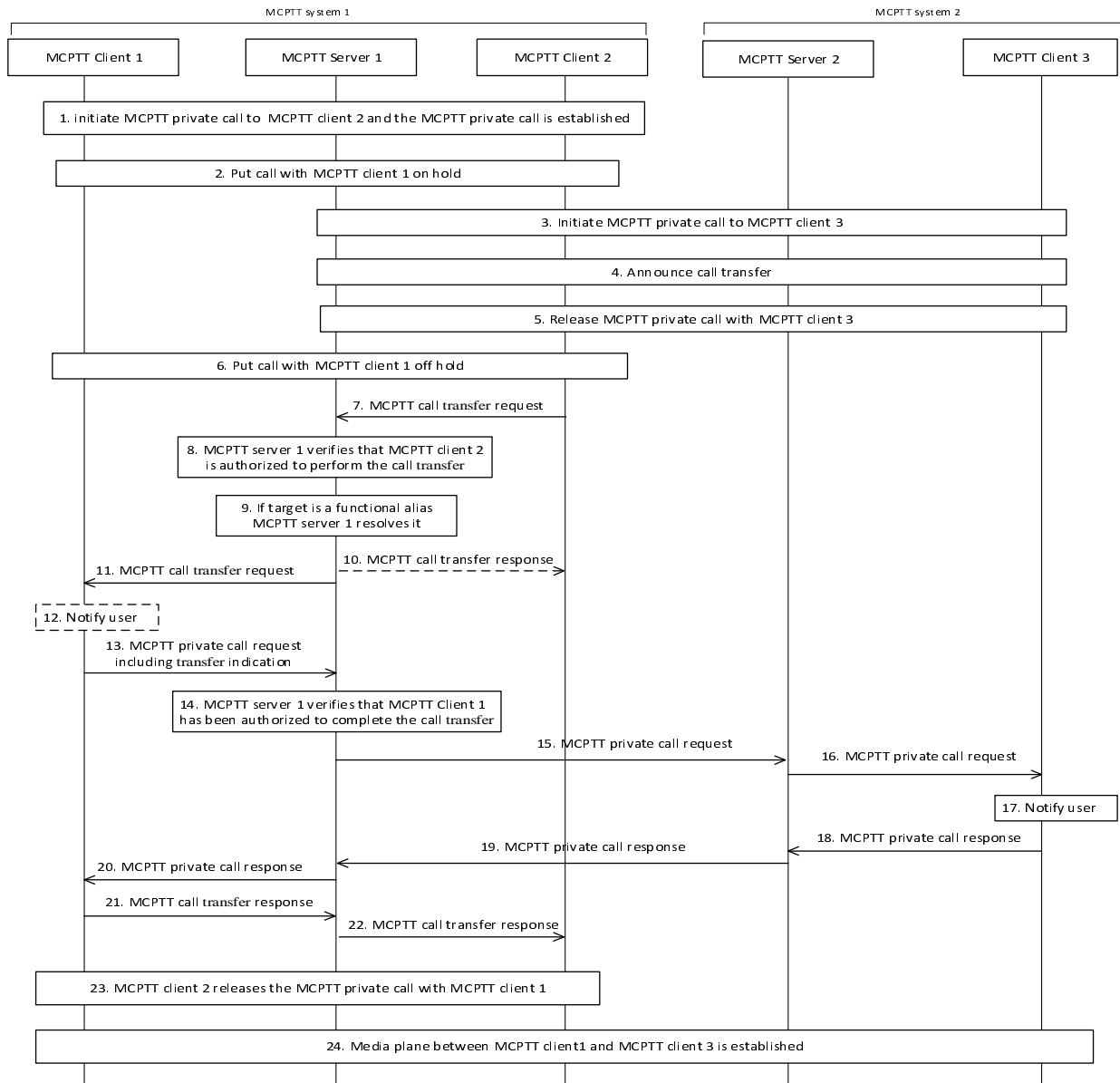
The procedure for MCPTT private call announced transfer covers the case where an MCPTT client requests an ongoing MCPTT private call (with or without floor control) to be transferred to another MCPTT user with prior announcement.

Figure 10.7.6.2.3-1 below illustrates the procedure for MCPTT private call announced transfer with target in partner MCPTT system.

NOTE 1: The procedure for MCPTT private call unannounced transfer is very similar, the only difference is that steps 2-6 are skipped.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT client 2 is authorized to use call transfer.
2. MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make private calls to MCPTT client 2.
3. MCPTT client 2 is authorized to make private calls to MCPTT client 3.
4. MCPTT client 2 is authorized to transfer private calls to MCPTT client 3.
5. MCPTT client 2 supports simultaneous sessions for MCPTT private calls (10.8).
6. MCPTT client 1 has the necessary security information to initiate a private call with MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3, and MCPTT client 2 has the necessary security information to initiate a private call with MCPTT client 3 if end2end encryption is required for the private call.



**Figure 10.7.6.2.3-1: MCPTT private call announced transfer with target in partner MCPTT system**

1. MCPTT client 1 initiates an MCPTT private call to MCPTT client 2 using the normal MCPTT call establishment as described in subclause 10.7.2.2. The MCPTT private call is established, and the user at MCPTT client 1 can talk with the user at MCPTT client 2. The user at MCPTT client 2 decides to transfer the call.
2. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2 puts the call with MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 on hold.
3. MCPTT client 2 initiates an MCPTT private call to MCPTT client 3 using the normal MCPTT call establishment procedures as described in subclause 10.7.2.3. The MCPTT private call is established, and the user at MCPTT client 2 can talk with the user at MCPTT client 3.

NOTE 2: The procedure for private call using functional alias towards a partner MC system is defined in clause 10.16.3 in 3GPP TS 23.280[16].

4. The user at MCPTT client 2 can talk with the user at MCPTT client 3 and announces the call transfer.
5. The MCPTT client 2 releases the MCPTT private call with MCPTT client 3 using the normal MCPTT call release procedure as described in subclause 10.7.2.3. This step can occur at any time after step 4.
6. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2 puts the call with MCPTT client 1 off hold and confirms that the call will be transferred.

7. The MCPTT client 2 sends an MCPTT call transfer request to the MCPTT server 1.
8. The MCPTT server 1 verifies that MCPTT client 2 is authorized to transfer the MCPTT private call to MCPTT client 3. This check is based on entries in the user profile of the user at MCPTT client 2. First, the MCPTT server 1 checks the value of the "Allow private call transfer" entry. If it is false, the authorization check has failed, and the procedure continues with step 10. Otherwise, the MCPTT server 1 checks if the "Authorised to transfer private calls to any MCPTT user" entry is true. If this is the case the check has passed, and for target type of MCPTT ID the procedure continues with step 10 and for target ID type of functional alias the procedure continues with step 9. The subsequent checking depends on the type of target ID. If the target ID is a MCPTT ID, the MCPTT server 1 checks for a matching entry of the target MCPTT ID in the "List of MCPTT users that the MCPTT user is authorised to use as targets for call transfer" list. If a matching entry is found, the check has passed, if no matching entry is found the check has failed, for any outcome the procedure continues with step 10. If the target ID is a functional alias, the MCPTT server 1 checks for a matching entry of the target functional alias in the "List of functional aliases that the MCPTT user is authorised to use as targets for call transfer" list. If a matching entry is found, the check has passed, and the procedure continues with step 9. If no matching entry is found, the authorization check has failed and the procedure continues with step 10.
9. If the target of the MCPTT private call transfer is a functional alias instead of an MCPTT ID the MCPTT server 1 resolves the functional alias to the corresponding MCPTT ID for which the functional alias is active.

NOTE 3: Depending on implementation the MCPTT server can apply additional call restrictions and decide whether the call is allowed to proceed with the resolved MCPTT ID(s) (e.g. whether the MCPTT ID is within the allowed area of the functional alias). If the MCPTT server detects that the functional alias used as the target of the MCPTT private call transfer is simultaneously active for multiple MCPTT users, then the MCPTT server can proceed by selecting an appropriate MCPTT ID based on some selection criteria (e.g. current location of the initiating user to determine the dispatcher who is responsible for the related geographic area). The selection of an appropriate MCPTT ID is left to implementation. The selection criteria can include rejection of the call, if no suitable MCPTT ID is selected.

10. If the authorization check has failed, or the target of the transfer is a functional alias that is not active, or the target of the transfer is a functional alias that is simultaneously active by multiple users and the outcome of the selection is a rejection, the MCPTT private call transfer is cancelled, and the MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT private call transfer response with result "fail" back to MCPTT client 2. The MCPTT private call between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 remains up, and the procedure stops. Otherwise the procedure continues.
11. The MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT call transfer request towards the MCPTT client 1.
12. Optionally the user at MCPTT client 1 is notified that a call transfer is in progress.
13. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT server 1 that includes a call transfer indication set to true.
14. The MCPTT server 1 verifies that MCPTT client 1 is authorized to perform the MCPTT private call as a result of the MCPTT private call transfer request based on the fact that the transfer indication is present and set to true in the MCPTT private call request.

NOTE 4: For call transfer the MCPTT server does not check if the initial originating MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make an MCPTT private call to the final target MCPTT user at MCPTT client 3.

15. The MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT call request to MCPTT server 2.
16. The MCPTT server 2 sends an MCPTT call request to MCPTT client 3.

NOTE 5: MCPTT server 2 detects that the private call request contains a transfer indication set to true and therefore skips the authorization checking.

17. The user at MCPTT client 3 is notified about the incoming call.
18. MCPTT client 3 sends an MCPTT private call response back to the MCPTT server 2.
19. MCPTT server 2 sends an MCPTT private call response back to the MCPTT server 1.
20. The MCPTT server 1 forwards the MCPTT private call response towards MCPTT client 1.
21. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT call transfer response back to MCPTT server 1.

22. The MCPTT server 1 forwards the MCPTT private transfer response towards MCPTT client 2.
23. MCPTT client 2 initiates release of the private call between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 as described in subclause 10.7.2.3.
24. The media plane for communication between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 3 is established.

#### 10.7.6.2.4 MCPTT private call announced transfer with transferring MCPTT user in partner MCPTT system

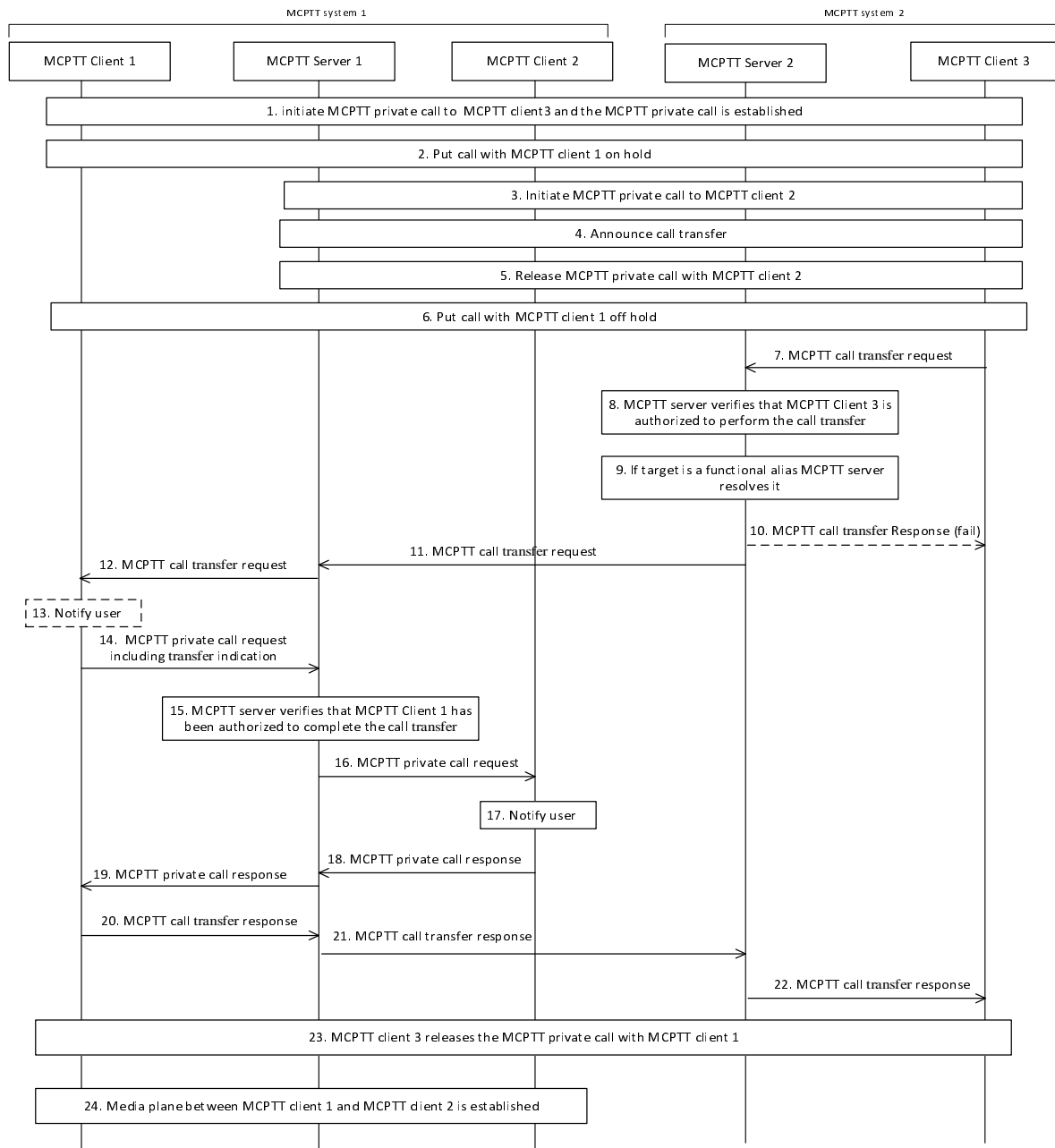
The procedure for MCPTT private call announced transfer covers the case where an MCPTT client requests an ongoing MCPTT private call (with or without floor control) to be transferred to another MCPTT user with prior announcement.

Figure 10.7.6.2.4-1 below illustrates the procedure for MCPTT private call announced transfer with transferring MCPTT user in partner MCPTT system.

NOTE 1: The procedure for MCPTT private call unannounced transfer is very similar, the only difference is that steps 2-6 are skipped.

Pre-conditions:

1. MCPTT client 3 is authorized to use call transfer.
2. MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make private calls to MCPTT client 3.
3. MCPTT client 3 is authorized to make private calls to MCPTT client 2.
4. MCPTT client 3 is authorized to transfer private calls to MCPTT client 2.
5. MCPTT client 3 supports simultaneous sessions for MCPTT private calls (10.8).
6. MCPTT client 1 has the necessary security information to initiate a private call with MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3, and MCPTT client 3 has the necessary security information to initiate a private call with MCPTT client 2 if end2end encryption is required for the private call.



**Figure 10.7.6.2.4-1: MCPTT private call announced transfer transferring MCPTT user in partner MCPTT system**

1. MCPTT client 1 initiates an MCPTT private call to MCPTT client 3 using the normal MCPTT call establishment as described in subclause 10.7.2.3. The MCPTT private call is established, and the user at MCPTT client 1 can talk with the user at MCPTT client 3. The user at MCPTT client 3 decides to transfer the call.

NOTE 2: The procedure for private call using functional alias towards a partner MC system is defined in clause 10.16.3 in 3GPP TS 23.280[16].

2. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 3 puts the call with MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 on hold.

3. MCPTT client 3 initiates an MCPTT private call to MCPTT client 2 using the normal MCPTT call establishment procedures as described in subclause 10.7.2.3. The MCPTT private call is established, and the user at MCPTT client 3 can talk with the user at MCPTT client 2.

NOTE 3: The procedure for private call using functional alias towards a partner MC system is defined in clause 10.16.3 in 3GPP TS 23.280[16].

4. The user at MCPTT client 3 can talk with the user at MCPTT client 2 and announce the call transfer.
5. The MCPTT client 3 releases the MCPTT private call with MCPTT client 2 using the normal MCPTT call release procedure as described in subclause 10.7.2.3. This step can occur at any time after step 4.
6. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 3 puts the call with MCPTT client 1 off hold and confirms that the call will be transferred.
7. The MCPTT client 3 sends an MCPTT call transfer request to the MCPTT server 2.
8. The MCPTT server 2 verifies that MCPTT client 3 is authorized to transfer the MCPTT private call to MCPTT client 2. This check is based on entries in the user profile of the user at MCPTT client 3. First, the MCPTT server 2 checks the value of the "Allow private call transfer" entry. If it is false, the authorization check has failed, and the procedure continues with step 10. Otherwise, the MCPTT server 2 checks if the "Authorised to transfer private calls to any MCPTT user" entry is true. If this is the case the check has passed, and for target type of MCPTT ID the procedure continues with step 10 and for target ID type of functional alias the procedure continues with step 9. The subsequent checking depends on the type of target ID. If the target ID is an MCPTT ID, the MCPTT server 2 checks for a matching entry of the target MCPTT ID in the "List of MCPTT users that the MCPTT user is authorised to use as targets for call transfer" list. If a matching entry is found, the check has passed, if no matching entry is found the check has failed, for any outcome the procedure continues with step 10. If the target ID is a functional alias, the MCPTT server 2 checks for a matching entry of the target functional alias in the "List of functional aliases that the MCPTT user is authorised to use as targets for call transfer" list. If a matching entry is found, the check has passed, and the procedure continues with step 9. If no matching entry is found, the authorization check has failed and the procedure continues with step 10.
9. If the target of the MCPTT private call transfer is a functional alias instead of an MCPTT ID the MCPTT server 2 resolves the functional alias to the corresponding MCPTT ID for which the functional alias is active.

NOTE 4: Depending on implementation the MCPTT server can apply additional call restrictions and decide whether the call is allowed to proceed with the resolved MCPTT ID(s) (e.g. whether the MCPTT ID is within the allowed area of the functional alias). If the MCPTT server detects that the functional alias used as the target of the MCPTT private call transfer is simultaneously active for multiple MCPTT users, then the MCPTT server can proceed by selecting an appropriate MCPTT ID based on some selection criteria (e.g. current location of the initiating user to determine the dispatcher who is responsible for the related geographic area). The selection of an appropriate MCPTT ID is left to implementation. The selection criteria can include rejection of the call, if no suitable MCPTT ID is selected.

10. If the authorization check has failed, or the target of the transfer is a functional alias that is not active, or the target of the transfer is a functional alias that is simultaneously active by multiple users and the outcome of the selection is a rejection, the MCPTT private call transfer is cancelled, and the MCPTT server 2 sends an MCPTT private call transfer response with result "fail" back to MCPTT client 3. The MCPTT private call between MCPTT client 3 and MCPTT client 2 remains up, and the procedure stops. Otherwise the procedure continues.
11. The MCPTT server 2 sends an MCPTT call transfer request towards the MCPTT server 1.
12. The MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT call transfer request towards the MCPTT client 1.
13. Optionally the user at MCPTT client 1 is notified that a call transfer is in progress.
14. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT private call request towards the MCPTT server 1 that includes a call transfer indication set to true.
15. The MCPTT server 1 verifies that MCPTT client 1 is authorized to perform the MCPTT private call as a result of the MCPTT private call transfer request based on the fact that the transfer indication is present and set to true in the MCPTT private call request.

NOTE 5: For call transfer the MCPTT server does not check if the initial originating MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to make an MCPTT private call to the final target MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2.

16. The MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT private call request to MCPTT client 2.
17. The user at MCPTT client 2 is notified about the incoming call.
18. MCPTT client 2 sends an MCPTT private call response back to the MCPTT server 1.

19. The MCPTT server 1 forwards the MCPTT private call response towards MCPTT client 1.
20. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT call transfer response back to the MCPTT server 1.
21. The MCPTT server 1 sends an MCPTT call transfer response back to the MCPTT server 2.
22. The MCPTT server 2 sends an MCPTT call transfer response back to the MCPTT client 3.
23. MCPTT client 3 initiates release of the private call between MCPTT client 3 and MCPTT client 1 as described in subclause 10.7.2.3.
24. The media plane for communication between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 is established.

## 10.8 Simultaneous session for MCPTT calls (on-network)

### 10.8.1 General

An MCPTT client and MCPTT server may use a simultaneous session as defined in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16] for MCPTT calls. The MCPTT client becomes involved in a simultaneous session for MCPTT calls by inviting, joining or accepting more than one MCPTT call, or affiliating to a group.

**NOTE:** An MCPTT client affiliating to multiple MCPTT groups with active calls will result in the MCPTT client being invited simultaneously to multiple MCPTT calls.

The MCPTT client can also still handle multiple MCPTT calls in parallel at the same time i.e. using multiple dialogs.

The simultaneous session is established during either an originating on-demand call establishment or during pre-established session establishment or a modification of an already established pre-established session or on-demand call.

It is possible to change the prioritisation while the MCPTT client is engaged in multiple MCPTT calls. The setting of the priority can be made at MCPTT call setup or by performing a modification after the MCPTT call is established. This may result in more than one media bearer.

## 10.9 Floor control

### 10.9.1 Floor control for on-network MCPTT service

#### 10.9.1.1 General

The procedure is for providing a floor control to MCPTT UE in an on-network case and applies for both private call and group call. Floor control is performed by using floor control information flows between the floor participant and the floor control server.

#### 10.9.1.2 Information flows for floor control for on-network

##### 10.9.1.2.1 General

When the floor control server receives a floor request from the floor participant, it decides whether to give a grant or not based on, e.g., the session status (i.e., whether the grant is given to another user or not), user profile, priority. The result is informed to the requesting floor participant. When the floor participant receives a floor granted message, it can send voice media over the uplink bearer established beforehand. The floor revoked message can be used as part of override. The floor queue status request can be used to know current position in the queue for floor.

Some floor control information flows can also piggyback call control information flows to provide efficient call setup and clearing:

- Call setup request is optionally carried in floor request (uplink) or floor taken (downlink, can be broadcast); and
- Call release request is optionally carried in floor release (uplink) or floor idle (downlink, can be broadcast).

### 10.9.1.2.2 Floor request

Table 10.9.1.2.2-1 describes the information flow floor request, from the floor participant to the floor control server and from the floor control server to the floor control server, which is used to request the floor for media transfer. This information flow is sent in unicast to the floor control server.

**Table 10.9.1.2.2-1: Floor request**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Requester identity
Functional alias	O	Functional alias of the requester
Floor priority	M	Priority of the request
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing
Location Information	O	Location information

### 10.9.1.2.3 Floor granted

Table 10.9.1.2.3-1 describes the information flow floor granted, from the floor control server to the floor participant and from the floor control server to the floor control server or MC gateway server, which is used to indicate that a request for floor is granted and media transfer is possible. This information flow is sent in unicast (to the granted floor participant).

**Table 10.9.1.2.3-1: Floor granted**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Granted party identity
Functional alias	O	Functional alias of the requester
Duration	M	The time for which the granted party is allowed to transmit
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing
Acknowledgement required	O	Indicates if acknowledgement from the floor participant is required

### 10.9.1.2.4 Floor rejected

Table 10.9.1.2.4-1 describes the information flow floor rejected, from the floor control server to the floor participant and from the floor control server to the floor control server or MC gateway server, which is used to indicate that a request for the floor is rejected. This information flow is sent in unicast (to the refused floor participant).

**Table 10.9.1.2.4-1: Floor rejected**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID (see NOTE)	O	Rejected party identity
Functional alias (see NOTE)	O	Functional alias of the requester
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing
Rejection cause	O	Indicates the cause for floor rejection
Acknowledgement required	O	Indicates if acknowledgement from the floor participant is required
NOTE:	MCPTT ID is present, and functional alias may be present, in messages between the floor control servers in different MCPTT systems, and between floor control server and MC gateway server.	

### 10.9.1.2.5 Floor request cancel

Table 10.9.1.2.5-1 describes the information flow floor request cancel, from the floor participant to the floor control server, which is used to request cancelling the floor request from the floor request queue. This information flow is sent in unicast to the floor control server.

**Table 10.9.1.2.5-1: Floor request cancel**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Identity for the requester
Functional alias	O	Functional alias for the requester
List of MCPTT IDs (see NOTE)	O	Target identity (identities) whose floor request is to be cancelled
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing
NOTE: If this information element is not present all the entries in the floor request queue are cancelled.		

### 10.9.1.2.6 Floor request cancel response

Table 10.9.1.2.6-1 describes the information flow floor request cancel response, from the floor control server to the floor control participant and from the floor control server to the floor control server or MC gateway server, which is used to indicate the response for the floor request cancellation. This information flow is sent in unicast.

**Table 10.9.1.2.6-1: Floor request cancel response**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Identity of party that initiated the cancellation request
Functional alias	O	Functional alias of the requester
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing
Acknowledgement required	O	Indicates if acknowledgement from the floor participant is required

### 10.9.1.2.7 Floor request cancel notify

Table 10.9.1.2.7-1 describes the information flow floor request cancel notify, from the floor control server to the floor control participant, which is used to indicate the floor request is cancelled by the administrator/floor control server. This information flow is sent in unicast or broadcast.

**Table 10.9.1.2.7-1: Floor request cancel notify**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Identity of the administrator
Functional alias	O	Functional alias of the administrator
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing
Acknowledgement required	O	Indicates if acknowledgement from the floor participant is required

### 10.9.1.2.8 Floor idle

Table 10.9.1.2.8-1 describes the information flow floor idle, from the floor control server to the floor participant, which is used to indicate that a session is in idle status, i.e. the floor is not granted to any party. This information flows is sent in unicast or broadcast.

**Table 10.9.1.2.8-1: Floor idle**

Information element	Status	Description
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing
Acknowledgement required	O	Indicates if acknowledgement from the floor participant is required

### 10.9.1.2.9 Floor release

Table 10.9.1.2.9-1 describes the information flow floor release, from the floor participant to the floor control server, which is used to indicate the media transfer is completed and floor is released. This information flow is sent in unicast to the floor control server.

**Table 10.9.1.2.9-1: Floor release**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Identity of party that initiated the cancellation request
Functional alias	O	Functional alias of the requester
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing

### 10.9.1.2.9a Multi-talker floor release

Table 10.9.1.2.9a-1 describes the information elements of floor release for multi-talker control, from the floor control server to the floor participants, which is used to indicate the media transfer is completed and floor is released. This information flow is sent in unicast from the floor control server.

**Table 10.9.1.2.9a-1: Multi-talker floor release**

MCPTT ID (see NOTE)	M	Identity of participant releasing the floor
List of functional aliases (see NOTE)	O	Functional alias(es) of participant releasing the floor
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing
NOTE: One or more functional aliases may be associated with the MCPTT ID.		

### 10.9.1.2.10 Floor taken

Table 10.9.1.2.10-1 describes the information flow floor taken, from the floor control server to the floor participant, which is used to indicate the floor is granted to another MCPTT user. This information flows is sent in unicast or broadcast.

**Table 10.9.1.2.10-1: Floor taken**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Identity for the granted party
Functional alias	O	Functional alias for the granted party
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing
Permission to request the floor	O	Indicates whether receiving parties are allowed to request the floor or not (e.g. broadcast call).
Acknowledgement required	O	Indicates if acknowledgement from the floor participant is required
Location Information	O	Location information

### 10.9.1.2.10a Multi-talker floor taken

Table 10.9.1.2.10a-1 describes the information elements of floor taken for multi-talker control, from the floor control server to the floor participant, which is used to indicate when the floor is simultaneously granted to multiple MCPTT users. The multi-talker floor taken is sent in unicast or broadcast.

**Table 10.9.1.2.10a-1: Multi-talker floor taken**

Information element	Status	Description
List of MCPTT IDs (see NOTE)	M	Identity (identities) of the granted participant(s)
List of functional aliases (see NOTE)	O	Functional alias(es) of the granted participant(s)
List of source identifiers (see NOTE)	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing
Acknowledgement required	O	Indicates if acknowledgement from the floor participant is required
NOTE: One or more functional aliases and one source identifier may be associated with an MCPTT ID.		

### 10.9.1.2.11 Floor revoked

Table 10.9.1.2.11-1 describes the information flow floor revoked, from the floor control server to the floor participant and from the floor control server to the floor control server or MC gateway server, which is used to indicate the floor is revoked from its current holder (the floor participant who was granted the floor). This information flow is sent in unicast (to the revoked floor participant).

**Table 10.9.1.2.11-1: Floor revoked**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Revoked party identity
Functional alias	O	Functional alias of the requester
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing
Acknowledgement required	O	Indicates if acknowledgement from the floor participant is required

### 10.9.1.2.12 Floor acknowledgement

Table 10.9.1.2.12-1 describes the information flow floor acknowledgement, from the floor participant to the floor control server, which is used to provide an acknowledgement if the acknowledgement is required in the received floor control message.

NOTE: The floor acknowledgement flow can be sent by the floor participant after each floor control information flow that includes an indication that an acknowledgement is required. The procedures defined in subclauses 10.9.1.3 to 10.9.1.5 do not explicitly illustrate all scenarios when floor acknowledgement can be used.

**Table 10.9.1.2.12-1: Floor acknowledgement**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Identity of the sender.
Functional alias	O	Functional alias of the sender.

### 10.9.1.2.13 Queue position request

Table 10.9.1.2.13-1 describes the information flow queue position request, from the floor participant to the floor control server and from the floor control server to the floor control server or MC gateway server, which is used to request the position in the floor request queue. The MCPTT server and the MCPTT client support queuing of the floor control requests shall support this information flow. This information flow is sent in unicast to the floor control server.

**Table 10.9.1.2.13-1: Queue position request**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Identity of party whose floor position is requested
Functional alias	O	Functional alias of the requester
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing

#### 10.9.1.2.14 Queue position info

Table 10.9.1.2.14-1 describes the information flow queue position info, from the floor control server to the floor participant and from the floor control server to the floor control server or MC gateway server, which is used to indicate the floor request is queued and the queue position to the floor requesting UE and optionally to the authorized user. The MCPTT server and the MCPTT client support queuing of the floor control requests shall support this information flow. This information flow is sent in unicast (to the queued floor participant and optionally to the authorized user).

**Table 10.9.1.2.14-1: Queue position info**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Identity of party whose floor position is provided
Functional alias	O	Functional alias of the requester
Queue position info	M	Position of the queued floor request in the queue
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing
Acknowledgement required	O	Indicates if acknowledgement from the floor participant is required

#### 10.9.1.2.15 Unicast media stop request

Table 10.9.1.2.15-1 describes the information flow unicast media stop request from the floor participant to the floor control server, which is used by the floor participant to indicate that the unicast media flow of the designated communication does not need to be sent to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.9.1.2.15-1: Unicast media stop request**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Identity of the requester
Functional alias	O	Functional alias for the requester
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication whose media flow is to be stopped, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing

#### 10.9.1.2.16 Unicast media resume request

Table 10.9.1.2.16-1 describes the information flow unicast media resume request from the floor participant to the floor control server, which is used by the floor participant to request that the unicast media flow of the designated communication is to be sent to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.9.1.2.16-1: Unicast media resume request**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Identity of the requester
Functional alias	O	Functional alias of the requester
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication whose media flow is to be resumed, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only if media multiplexing

### 10.9.1.3 Floor control within one MCPTT system

#### 10.9.1.3.1 Floor request, floor granted and floor taken during an MCPTT session

Figure 10.9.1.3.1-1 shows the high level procedure that the floor control is conducted for the MCPTT session already established between the floor participant and the floor control server. Only three UEs involved in the session are shown for the simplicity.

Pre-condition:

1. MCPTT session is established between MCPTT clients (client A, client B and client C) and MCPTT server.
2. The user at MCPTT client C is an authorized user (e.g., dispatcher) allowed to remove a floor request of other MCPTT users from the floor queue and can receive notifications about another user when their floor request is queued, when their queued floor request is rejected and when their queued floor request is removed from the queue.

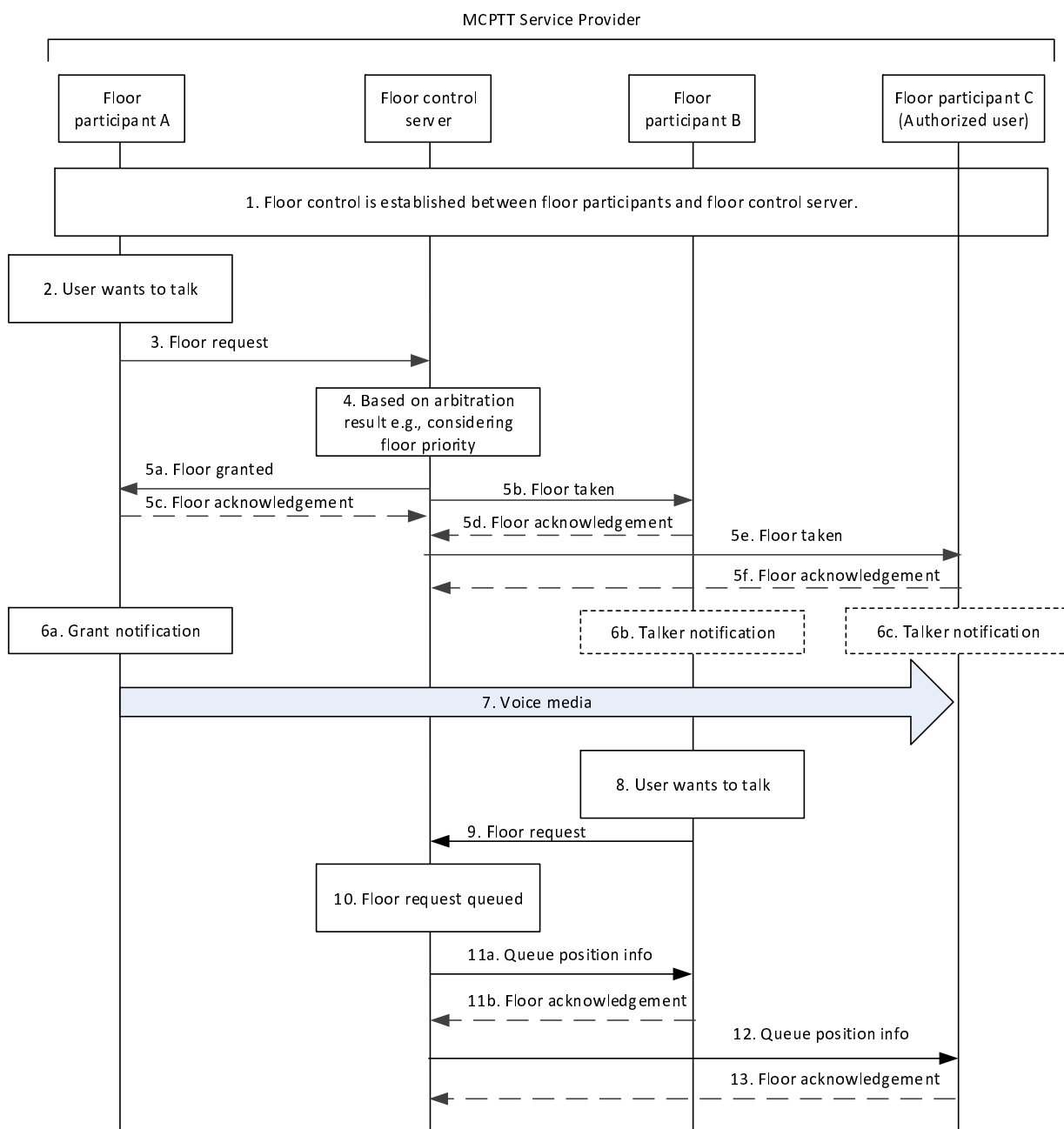


Figure 10.9.1.3.1-1: Floor request, floor granted, floor taken during an MCPTT session

1. The floor control is established between the floor participants and floor control server. It is assumed that the floor is now in idle status.
2. Floor participant A wants to send voice media over the session.
3. Floor participant A sends a floor request message to floor control server which includes floor priority and other information as necessary.
4. Floor control server makes the determination on what action (grant, deny, or queue) to take on the request based on criteria (e.g., floor priority, participant type) and determines to accept the floor request from floor participant A. The floor control server may limit the time a user talks (hold the floor) as allowed by the configuration.
- 5a. Floor control server responds with a floor granted message to floor participant A including the maximum floor granted duration e.g., if no other floor participant has the permission for transmission.
- 5b. Floor control server sends a floor taken message to the other floor participant (floor participant B) including information about who is granted the floor.
- 5c. Floor participant A sends a floor acknowledgement if indicated to do so by the floor granted message.
- 5d. Floor participant B sends a floor acknowledgement if indicated to do so by the floor taken message.
- 5e. Floor control server sends a floor taken message to the other floor participant (floor participant C) including information about who is granted the floor.
- 5f. Floor participant C sends a floor acknowledgement if indicated to do so by the floor taken message.
- 6a. The floor granted shall cause the user of UE A where the floor participant A is located to be notified.
- 6b. The receipt of the floor taken may be used to inform the user of UE B where the floor participant B is located.
- 6c. The receipt of the floor taken may be used to inform the user of UE C where the floor participant C is located.
7. Floor participant A starts sending voice media over the session established beforehand.

NOTE 1: Voice media can continue to be sent while steps 8 through 11 occur.

8. Suppose there are one or more users requesting to talk at this time, the floor request(s) are queued as decided by floor control server e.g., based on floor priority.
9. Floor participant B sends a floor request message.
10. Floor control server queues the request of floor participant B.
- 11a. Floor control server sends queue position info to floor participant B.
- 11b. Floor participant B sends a floor acknowledgement if indicated to do so by the queue position info message.
12. Floor control server may send the queue position info to floor participant C who is an authorized user to indicate floor participant user B's floor request is queued.
13. Floor participant C sends a floor acknowledgement if indicated to do so by the queue position info message.

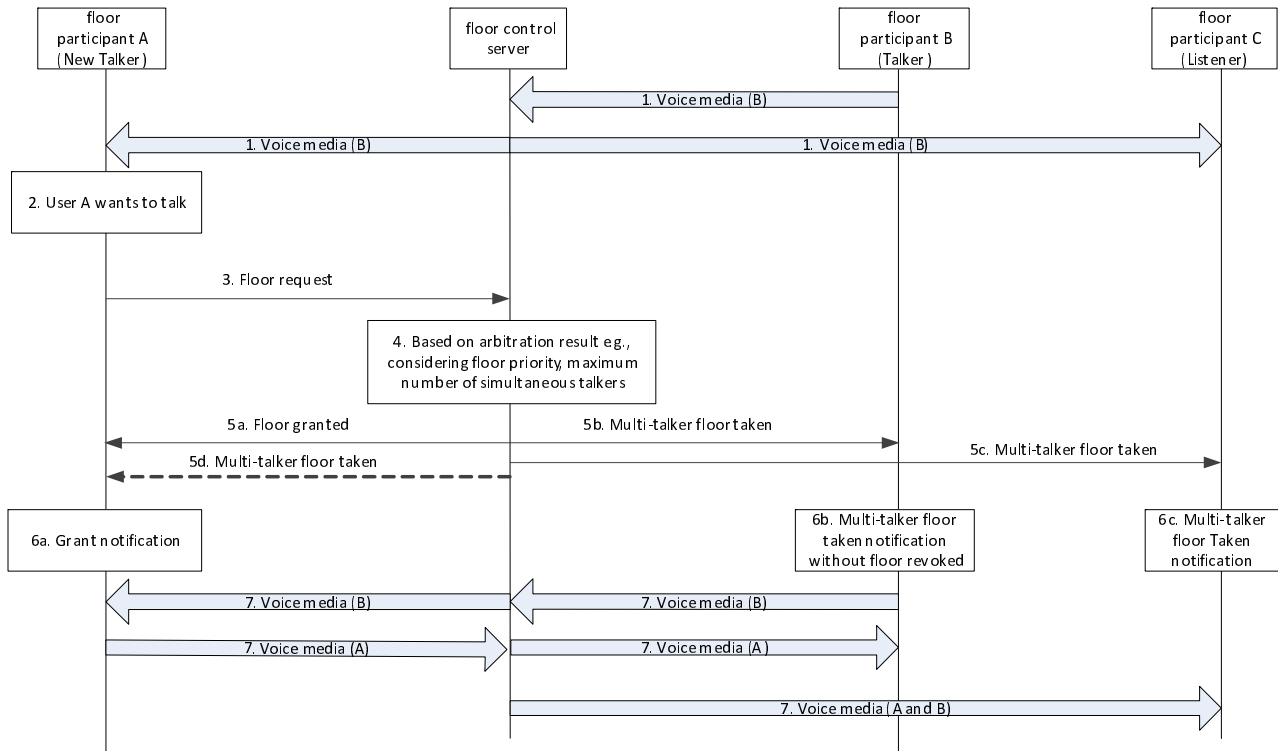
NOTE 2: If the floor participant user B's queued floor request is rejected after de-queue from the floor control queue then the floor control server may send the queue position info to floor participant C who is an authorized user. The floor queue position info message should indicate that floor participant user B's queued floor request is no longer queued.

#### 10.9.1.3.1a Floor request, floor granted and multi-talker floor taken during an MCPTT session enhanced with multi-talker control

Figure 10.9.1.3.1a-1 shows the high level procedure that allows several participants to talk simultaneously in a MCPTT session already established between the floor participant and the floor control server. Three UEs involved in the session are shown for simplicity.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT group is configured to support multi-talker control and audio mixing by the network is applied.
2. MCPTT session is established between MCPTT clients (client A, client B and client C) and MCPTT server.
3. Participants A and B have the permission to talk to all other participants and the floor is granted to floor participant B.



**Figure 10.9.1.3.1a-1: Floor request, floor granted and multi-talker floor taken during an MCPTT session**

1. Floor participant B is talking and is sending the voice media.
2. Floor participant A wants to send voice media over the session.
3. Floor participant A sends a floor request message to the floor control server which includes the necessary information, e.g. floor priority.
4. Based on applicable criteria (e.g. floor priority, participant type, allowance to transmit, maximum number of simultaneous talkers) floor control server determines what action (grant, deny, or queue) shall be applied to the request. In this case, the floor request from floor participant A will be accepted. Simultaneous floor requests to transmit are handled in a sequential order. Based on the group configuration repository data, the floor control server may limit the time a floor participant is allowed to talk.
- 5a. Floor control server responds with a floor granted message to floor participant A.
- 5b. Floor control server sends a multi-talker floor taken message to floor participant B.
- 5c. Floor control server sends a multi-talker floor taken message to floor participant C.
- 5d. Floor control server may send a multi-talker floor taken message to floor participant A.
- 6a. The floor granted shall cause the user of UE A, where the floor participant A is located, to be notified.
- 6b. The multi-talker floor taken shall inform the user of UE B, that the floors are granted to other floor participants, but the floor is not revoked.
- 6c. The multi-talker floor taken shall inform the user of UE C floor participants list the floor are currently granted to.

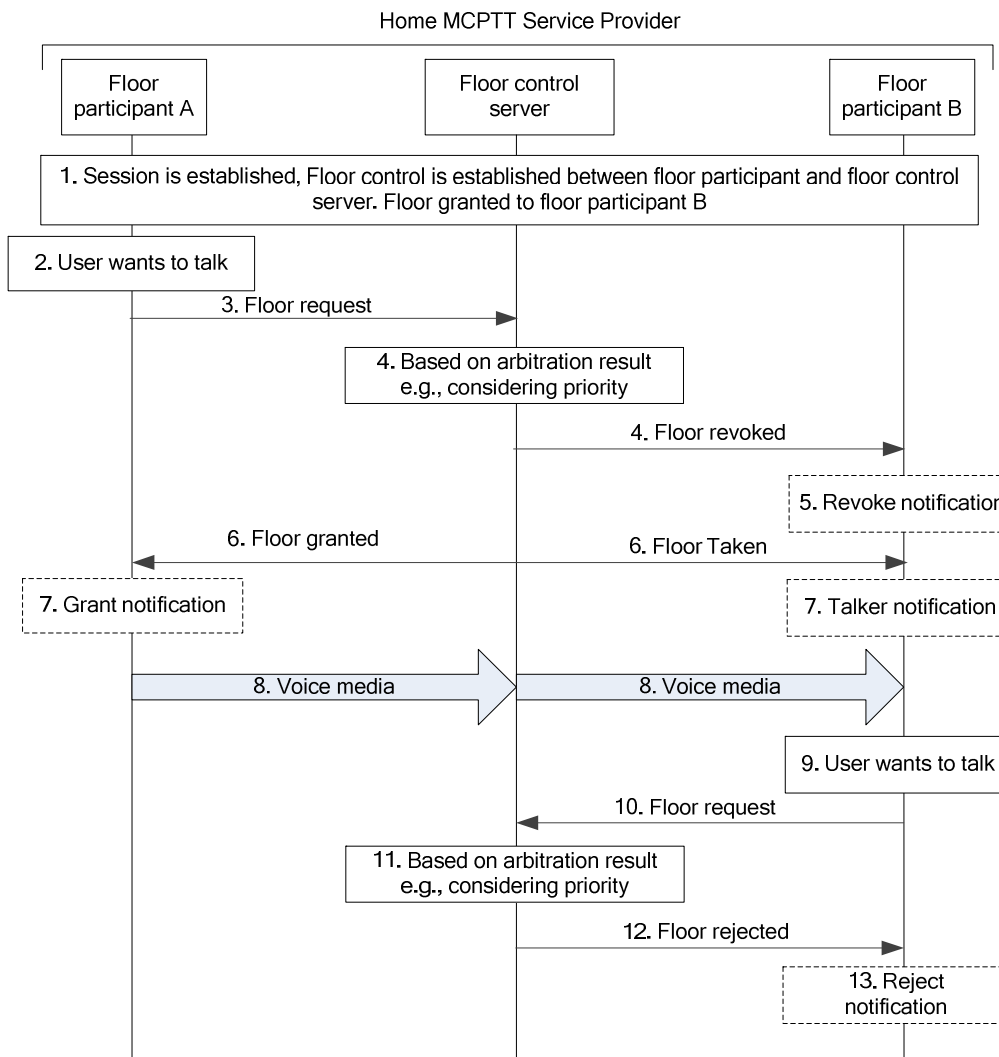
7. Floor participant A starts sending voice media over the session established beforehand, i.e. participants A and B receive and transmit voice media; participant C only receives voice media.

NOTE: Floor control is independent from whether audio mixing is performed by the MCPTT server or by the UE.

10.9.1.3.2 Floor override

10.9.1.3.2.1 Floor override using floor revoked (also floor rejected) during an MCPTT session

Figure 10.9.1.3.2.1-1 shows the high level procedure that the floor control is conducted for the MCPTT session already established between the floor participant (with floor granted to floor participant B) and the floor control server (with an override based on priority). Only two UEs involved in the session are shown for the simplicity.



**Figure 10.9.1.3.2.1-1: Floor override using floor revoked (also floor rejected) during an MCPTT session**

1. It is assumed that floor participant B has been given floor and is transmitting voice media.
2. Floor participant A having a priority which is relatively higher than that of floor participant B wants to send voice media over the session.
3. Floor participant A sends a floor request message to the floor control server.
4. The floor control server determines to accept the floor request from floor participant A based on arbitration result e.g., according to the priority information that is received in the floor request message. The floor control server

sends a floor revoked message to floor participant B stopping the voice media transmission from floor participant B.

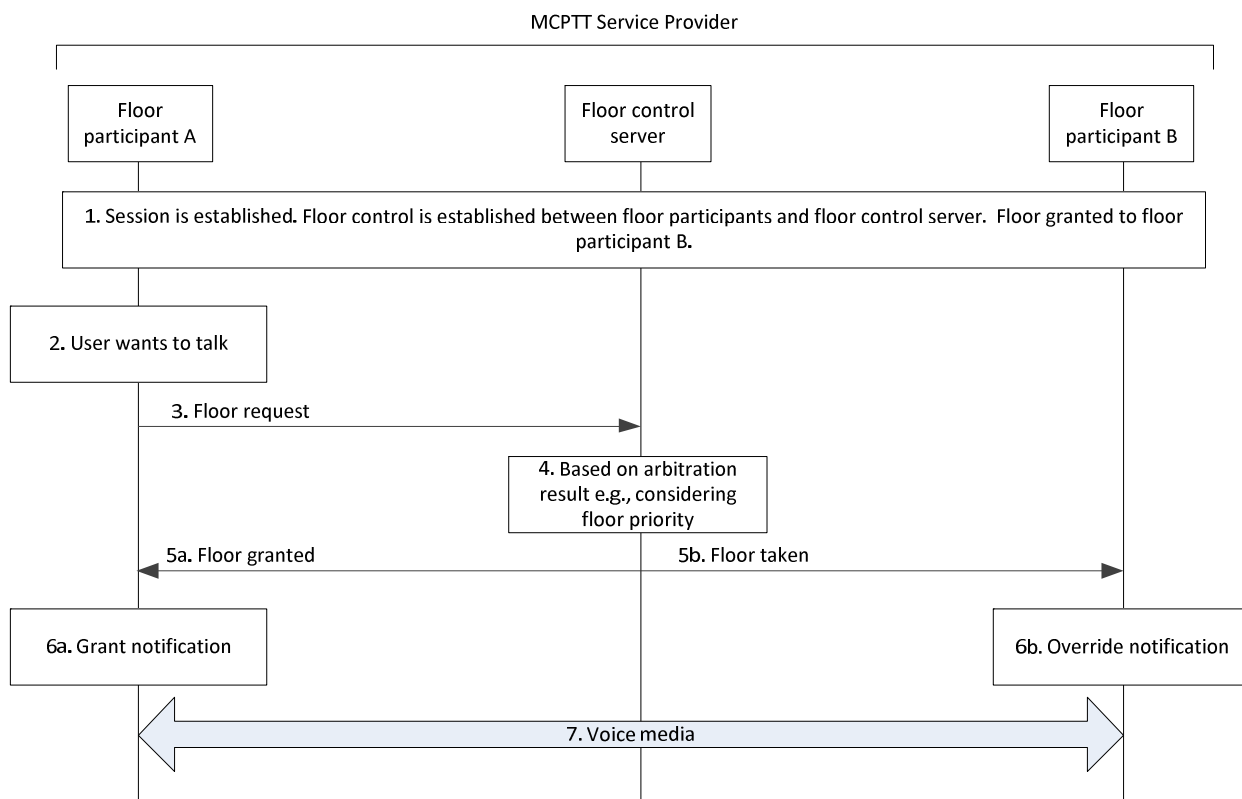
5. The user of floor participant B may be notified that the floor is revoked.
6. The Floor control server sends a floor granted message to floor participant A, while sending a floor taken message to floor participant B with information of who is granted the floor.
7. The user of floor participant A may be notified that he is granted the floor. Similarly, the user of floor participant B may be notified who is granted the floor.
8. Floor participant A starts sending voice media over the session established beforehand.
9. Now floor participant B may want the floor to start sending voice media.
10. Floor participant B sends a floor request message to floor control server which may include priority information.
11. Floor control server determines whether to accept the floor request from floor participant B based on arbitration result e.g., according to the priority information that is received in the floor request message.
12. The floor control server responds with a floor rejected message to floor participant B.
13. Floor participant B may be notified that he is rejected.

#### 10.9.1.3.2.2 Floor override without using floor revoked during an MCPTT session

Figure 10.9.1.3.2.2-1 shows the high level procedure that the floor control is conducted for the MCPTT session already established between the floor participants (with floor granted to floor participant B) and the floor control server (with an override based on priority and configured to permit the transmission of the overridden floor participant B to continue). Only two UEs involved in the session are shown for the simplicity.

##### Pre-conditions

- The floor control server has been configured to support override.
- The override supported in this case permits both the overridden floor participant and the overriding floor participant to be transmitting.



**Figure 10.9.1.3.2.2-1: Floor override (overridden continues to transmit) during an MCPTT session**

1. It is assumed that floor participant B has been given the floor and is transmitting voice media.
2. Floor participant A having a floor priority which is relatively higher than that of floor participant B wants to send voice media over the session.
3. Floor participant A sends a floor request message to the floor control server.
4. The floor control server determines to accept the floor request from floor participant A based on arbitration result e.g., according to the floor priority information that is received in the floor request message.
- 5a. Floor control server responds with a floor granted message to floor participant A.
- 5b. Floor control server sends a floor taken message to the other floor participants (including floor participant B). Floor participant B continues transmitting the (overridden) voice media transmission.

NOTE 1: All other floor participants (not shown) that are part of this group call receive a floor taken message, so that the other floor participants learn who the newly granted talker (overriding) is.

- 6a. The floor granted causes the user of floor participant A to be notified.
- 6b. The user of floor participant B is notified of the status that the floor is now taken by floor participant A.
7. Floor participant A (overriding) starts sending voice media over the session established beforehand.

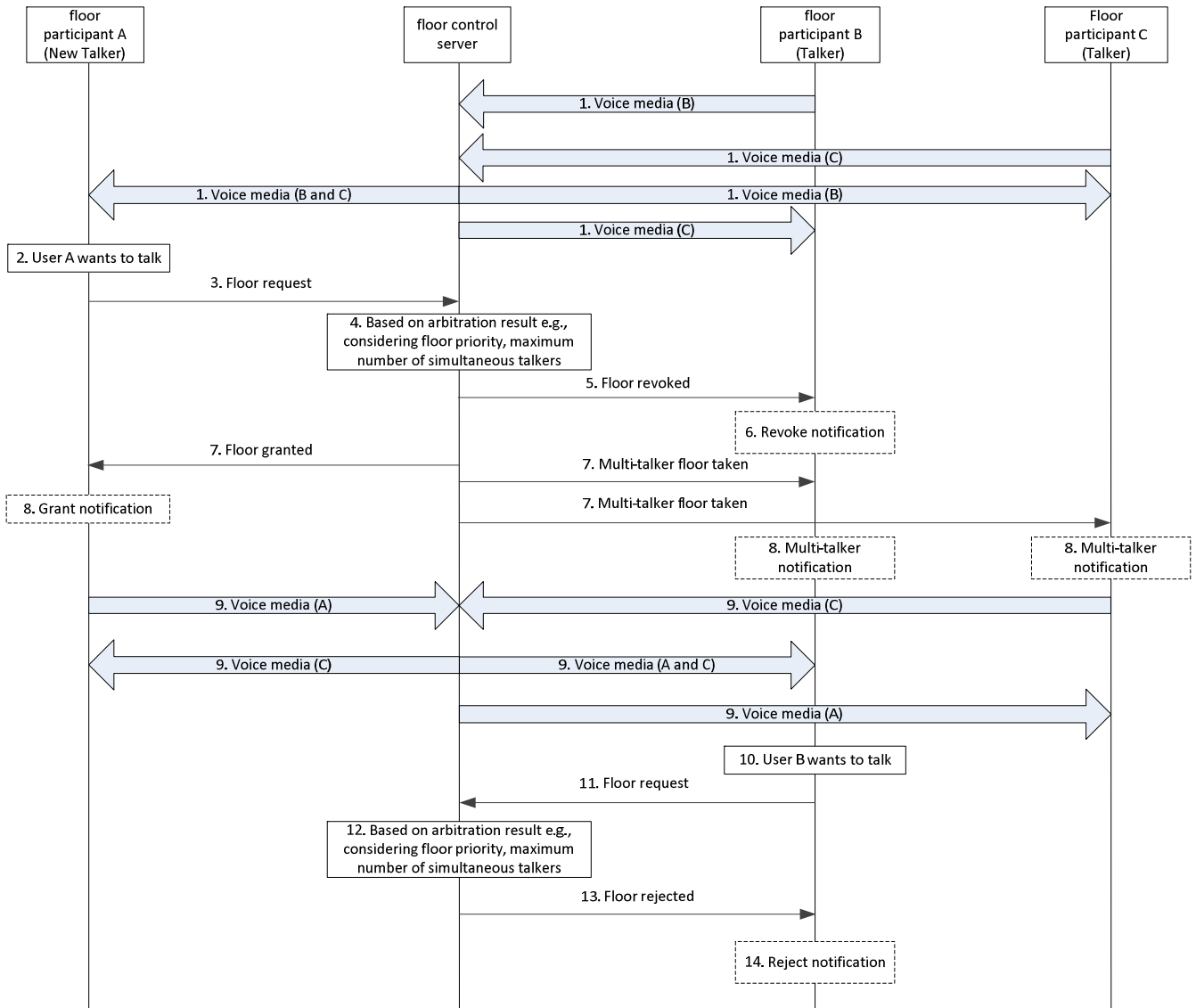
NOTE 2: Floor participant B is still sending voice (overridden). The list of floor participants that receive the overriding, overridden, or both transmissions is based on configuration.

#### 10.9.1.3.2.3 Floor override using floor revoked (also floor rejected) during an MCPTT session enhanced with multi-talker control

Figure 10.9.1.3.2.3-1 shows the high-level procedure that the floor control allows several participants to talk simultaneously in a MCPTT session already established between the floor participant (with floor granted to floor participant B) and the floor control server. Only two UEs involved in the session are shown for the simplicity.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT group is configured to support multi-talker control.
2. MCPTT session is established between MCPTT clients (client A, client B and client C) and MCPTT server.
3. The maximum number of simultaneous talkers is set to 2.
4. The floor priority of floor participant A is higher than of floor participant B.
5. The floor is granted to floor participant B and floor participant C.



**Figure 10.9.1.3.2.3-1: Floor override using floor revoked (also floor rejected) during an MCPTT session**

1. Floor participant B and floor participant C are sending voice media over the session established.
2. Floor participant A wants to send voice media over the session.
3. Floor participant A wants to talk (i.e. send voice media) over the session. Floor participant A sends a floor request message to the floor control server.
4. Based on an arbitration result (e.g. per the priority information that is received in the floor request message), the floor control server determines to accept the floor request from floor participant A. The maximum number of simultaneous talkers in the MCPTT group has been reached, the floor control server decides to apply the override mechanism.

5. The floor control server sends a floor revoked message to floor participant B stopping the voice media transmission of floor participant B.
6. The user of floor participant B may be notified that the floor is revoked.
7. The Floor control server sends a floor granted message to floor participant A, while sending a multi-talker floor taken message to floor participant B and floor participant C including the information to whom the floor has been granted.
8. The user of floor participant A may be notified that the floor has been granted to him. Similarly, the user of floor participant B and floor participant C may be notified to whom the floor has been granted.
9. Floor participant A starts sending voice media over the session established beforehand.
10. Now floor participant B may want the floor to start sending voice media.
11. Floor participant B sends a floor request message to floor control server that may include participant priority information.
12. Based on arbitration result, e.g. per the priority information that is received in the floor request message, and if the number of MCPTT Users has already reached the maximum number of simultaneous talkers in the group, the floor control server determines whether to accept or reject the floor request from floor participant B. Due to lower priority of participant B and the applicable limitation of simultaneous talkers, the floor control server rejects the floor request.
13. The floor control server responds with a floor rejected message to floor participant B.
14. Floor participant B may be notified about the floor rejection.

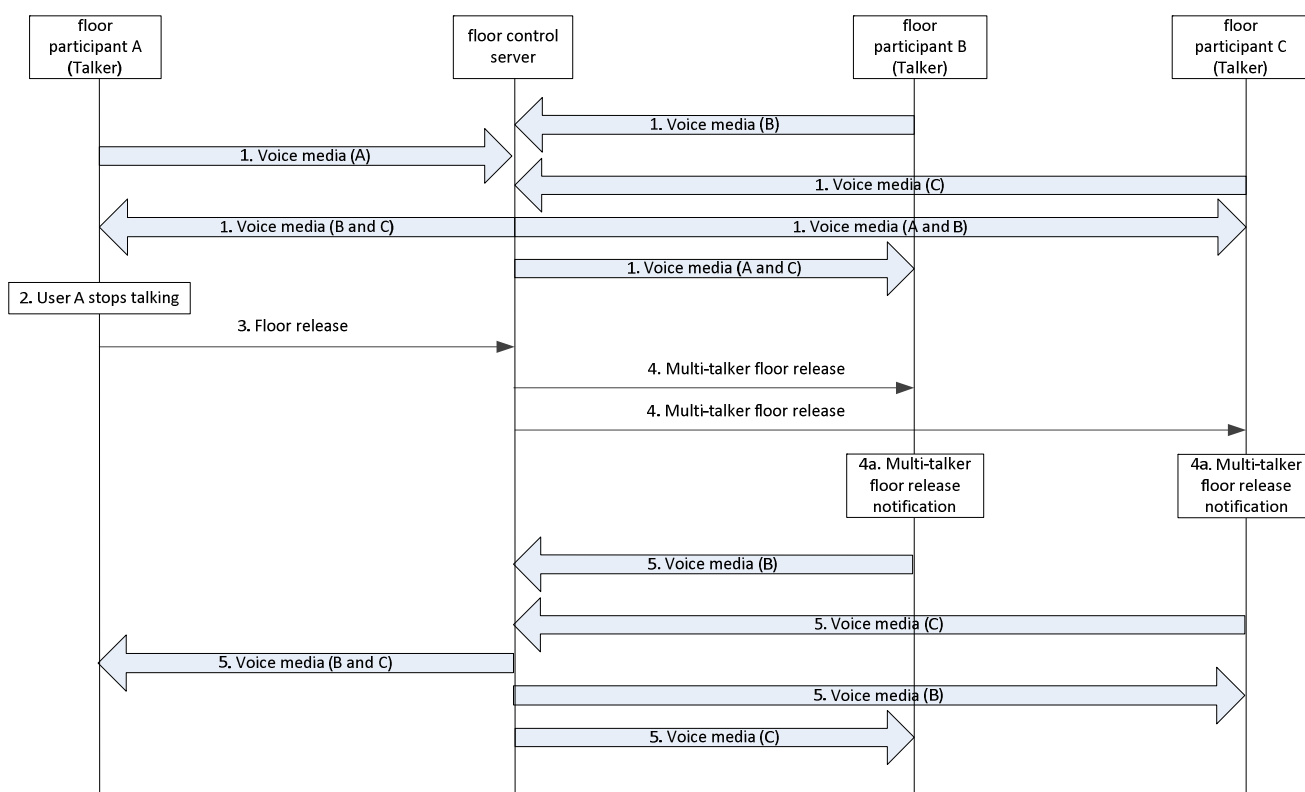
NOTE: Floor control procedure is independent from whether audio mixing is performed by the MCPTT server or by the UE.

#### 10.9.1.3.2.4 Floor release during an MCPTT session enhanced with multi-talker control

Figure 10.9.1.3.2.4-1 shows the high-level procedure where the floor controller allows a participant to release the floor while other participants continue to talk simultaneously in a MCPTT session already established between the floor participants and the floor control server. Only three UEs involved in the session are shown for simplicity.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT group is configured to support multi-talker control and audio mixing by the network is applied.
2. MCPTT session is established between MCPTT clients (client A, client B, and client C) and the MCPTT server.
3. Participants A, B, and C have the permission to talk to all other participants, and the floor is granted to floor participants A, B, and C.



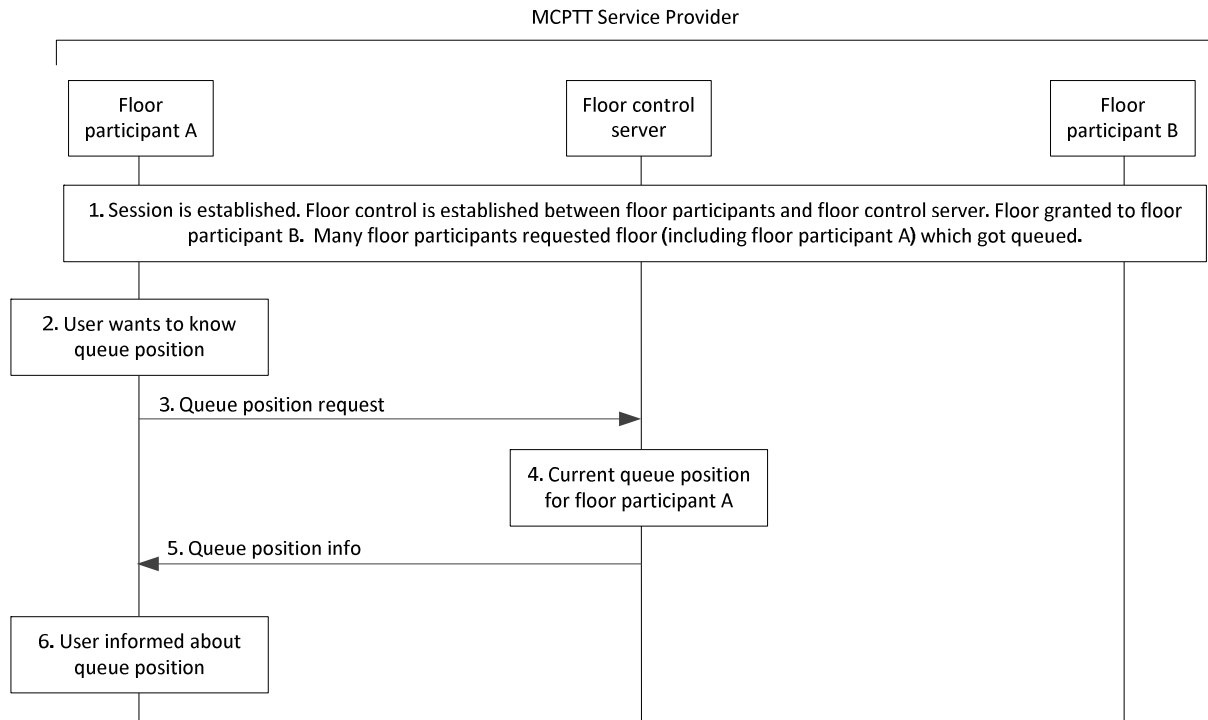
**Figure 10.9.1.3.2.4-1: Floor release during an MCPTT session**

1. Floor participants A, B and C are sending voice media over the established session.
2. User A stops talking and wants to stop sending voice media over the session.
3. Floor participant A sends a floor release message to the floor control server.
4. The floor control server accepts the floor release from floor participant A and sends a multi-talker floor release message to floor participant B and floor participant C.
- 4a. The users of floor participant B and floor participant C may be notified that floor participant A has released the floor.
5. Floor participants B and C continue sending voice media over the established session.

NOTE: Floor control procedures are independent from whether audio mixing is performed by the MCPTT server or by the UE.

### 10.9.1.3.3 Queue position during an MCPTT session

Figure 10.9.1.3.3-1 shows the high level procedure that the floor control is conducted for the MCPTT session already established between MCPTT clients (with floor granted to floor participant B) and server (with an override based on priority at floor control server). Only two UEs involved in the session are shown for the simplicity.



**Figure 10.9.1.3.3-1: Queue status during an MCPTT session**

1. It is assumed that floor participant B has been given a floor granted and is transmitting voice media. There are several other floor participants (including floor participating A) requesting floor which get queued at the floor control server.
2. Floor participant A would like to know its current position in the floor request queue.
3. Floor participant A sends a queue position request message to the floor control server.
4. Floor control server determines the current queue position of floor participant A from the floor request queue.
5. Floor control server responds with the current position in queue position info message.
6. User at floor participant A is informed about the current queue position.

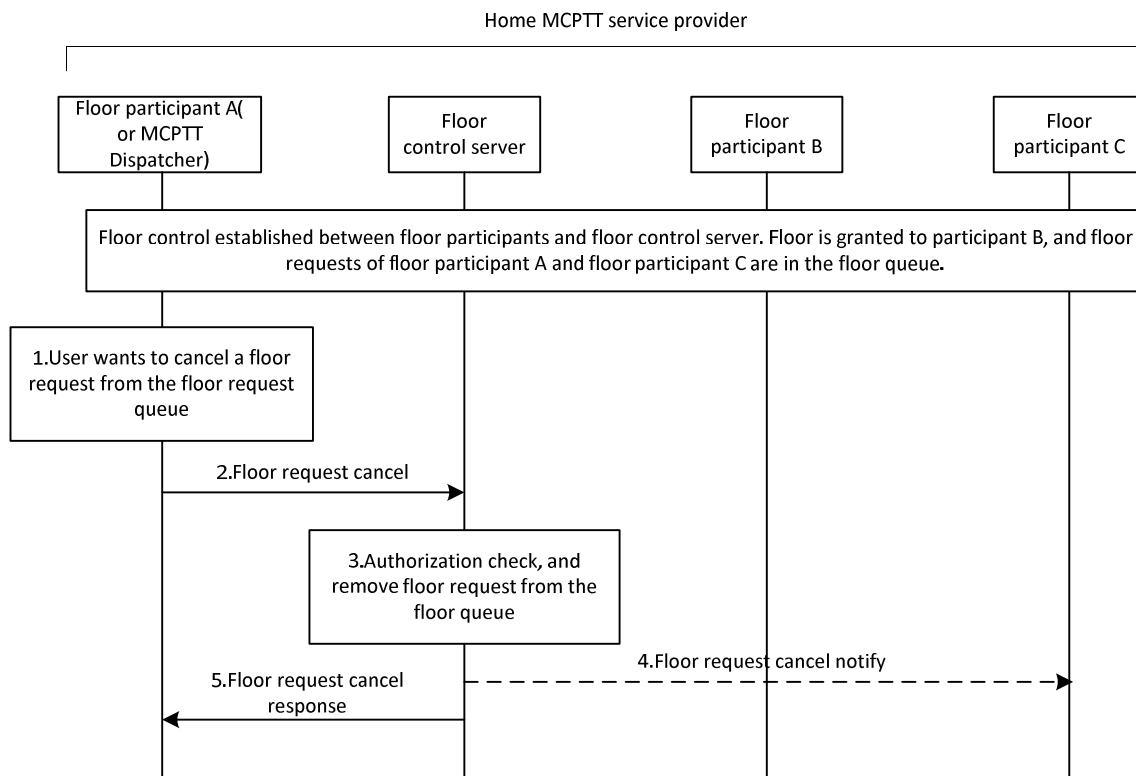
### 10.9.1.3.4 Floor request cancellation from the floor request queue

#### 10.9.1.3.4.1 Floor request cancellation from the queue – MCPTT user initiated

Figure 10.9.1.3.4.1-1 illustrates the procedure for floor request cancellation from the floor queue initiated by the MCPTT user. The MCPTT user may be an authorized user who has rights to cancel the floor requests of other MCPTT users, whose floor requests are in floor control queue.

Pre-conditions:

- It is assumed that floor participant B has been granted the floor and is transmitting voice media. There are several other floor participants (including floor participant A and floor participant C) requesting the floor which have been queued at the floor control server.



**Figure 10.9.1.3.4.1-1: Floor request cancellation from queue initiated by MCPTT user**

1. The floor participant A wants to remove the floor request from the floor request queue. If floor participant A is an authorized MCPTT user with the rights to cancel another MCPTT user's floor request, the authorized MCPTT user may request floor request cancellation for one or more floor participants, whose floor request needs to be removed from the floor queue.
2. The floor participant A sends a floor request cancel (initiating MCPTT ID) message to the floor control server. If the floor participant A wants to remove the floor request(s) of other participant(s) from the floor request queue, the target participant(s)' MCPTT ID should be included in this message.
3. The floor control server shall check whether the requesting floor participant has authorization to cancel the floor request(s). If authorized, the floor request(s) will be removed from the floor request queue. When current transmission is completed, floor control server will process the floor request from the updated floor request queue.
4. If the floor request cancel in step 2 is sent by an authorized user (e.g., dispatcher) to cancel the floor request(s) of other participant(s) from the floor request queue, the floor request cancel notify message is sent to the floor participant whose floor request was cancelled from the floor queue. The floor request cancel notify message is also sent to the authorized user (not shown in figure) if the floor request cancel in step 2 is sent by the floor participant A is an initiating MCPTT user.
5. The floor control server provides a floor request cancel response to the floor participant A when the floor cancellation is completed. Optionally, the new queue position information may be notified to the floor participants whose floor requests are in the floor request queue (not shown in the figure).

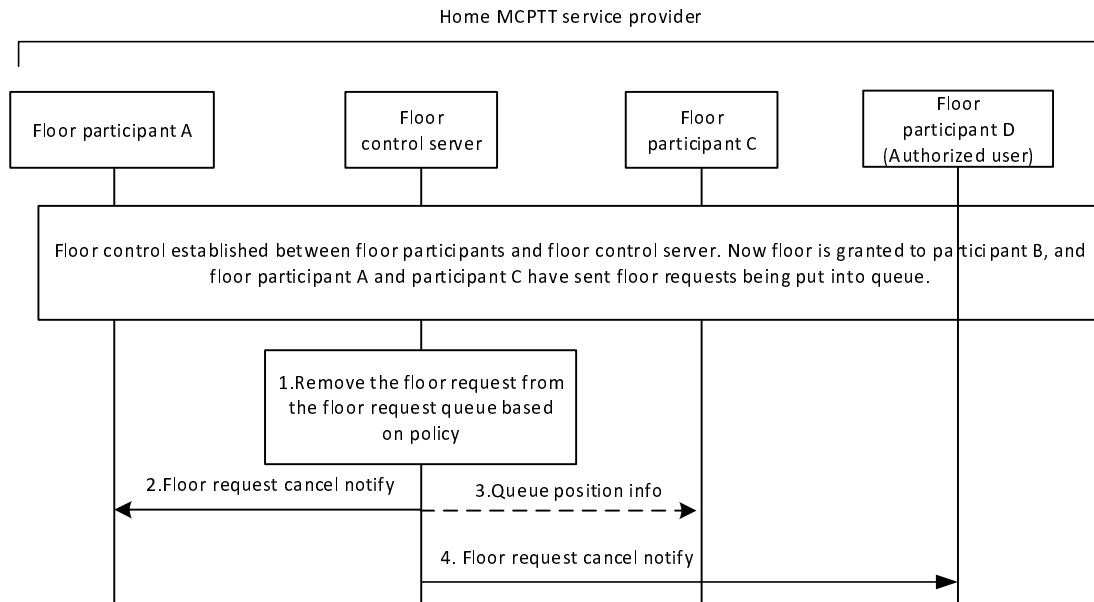
#### 10.9.1.3.4.2 Floor request cancellation from the queue - floor control server initiated

Figure 10.9.1.3.4.2-1 illustrates the procedure for floor request cancellation from the queue initiated by the floor control server. Only three UEs involved in the session are shown for the simplicity.

Pre-conditions:

- MCPTT session is established between MCPTT clients (client A, client B, client C and client D) and MCPTT server.

- It is assumed that floor participant B (not shown in figure) has been granted the floor and is transmitting voice media. There are several other floor participants (including floor participant A and participant C) requesting the floor which have been queued at the floor control server.
- The user at MCPTT client D is an authorized user (e.g., dispatcher) allowed to remove a floor request of other MCPTT users from the floor queue and can receive notifications about another user when their floor request is queued, when their queued floor request is rejected and when their queued floor request is removed from the queue.



**Figure 10.9.1.3.4.2-1: Floor request cancellation from queue initiated by floor control server**

1. The floor control server removes the floor request from the floor request queue based on policy. e.g., expiration of a timer. In the case when floor control server receives repeated floor requests from a floor participant while the floor is occupied, the new floor request is accepted and added into the floor queue and the existing/former floor request is removed from the floor queue or the new floor request is rejected and the existing/former floor request of this floor participant is retained in the floor request queue.
2. The floor control server sends a floor request cancel notify to the floor participant(s) whose floor request is removed from the floor request queue.
3. Optionally, the newly queue position information is notified to the other floor participants whose floor requests are queued.
4. If the floor request cancel in step 2 is sent by floor control server for the user whose floor request is in the floor request queue, the floor control server may send the floor cancel notify to the floor participant D who is an authorized user.

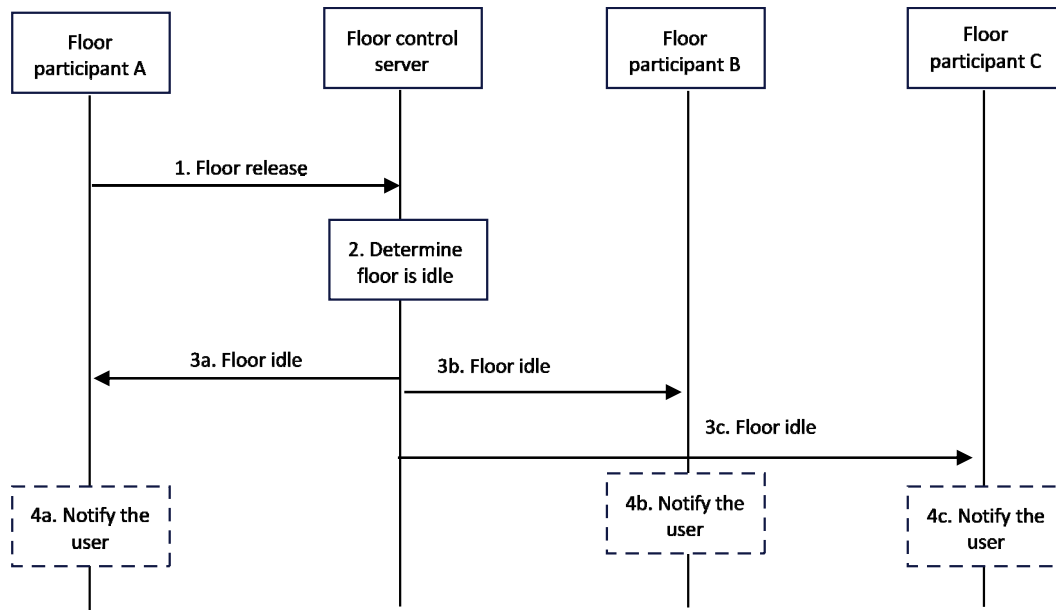
**10.9.1.3.5 Floor idle during an MCPTT session**

During silence (when no talk burst is ongoing), the floor control server may send floor idle message to all floor participants from time to time.

Figure 10.9.1.3.5-1 shows the high level procedure that the floor idle is conducted for the MCPTT session already established between the floor participant and the floor control server. Only three MCPTT UEs involved in the session are shown for the simplicity.

Pre-condition:

1. The floor control is established between the floor participants and floor control server.
2. The floor participant A is granted the floor.



**Figure 10.9.1.3.5.1-1: Floor idle during an MCPTT session**

1. User A stops talking and wants to stop sending voice media over the session. The floor participants A sends the floor release message to the floor control server.
2. The floor control server determines the floor is idle, e.g., all the floor requests are processed and no new floor request is received. For multi-talker control case, the floor control server determines that the floor participant A was the last talker.
3. The floor control server sends the floor idle message to all the participants.
4. Floor participants may notify the MCPTT user that the floor is idle.

NOTE: Floor idle may be sent multiple times during the MCPTT session.

## 10.9.1.4 Floor control involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems

### 10.9.1.4.1 Partner MCPTT system routes all floor control messages to primary MCPTT system's floor control server

The MCPTT users belonging to different groups in multiple MCPTT systems will participate in MCPTT media services (group communication, private calls, etc.) in scenarios like group hierarchies and temporary groups formed by group regroup. In this service delivery model involving multiple groups from different MCPTT systems, the floor control arbitration resides with the primary MCPTT system. This is determined in the group call setup stage. The MCPTT users of groups involved in the call session will transmit their floor control messages through the partner MCPTT systems to which they belong. In this scenario, the partner MCPTT systems request the floor control for its MCPTT user(s) from the floor control server of the primary MCPTT system. The protocol used for media plane signalling is non-SIP like RTCP.

Figure 10.9.1.4.1-1 describes the procedure for floor control involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems.

Pre-conditions:

1. The security aspects of sharing the user information between primary and partner MCPTT systems shall be governed as per the service provider agreement between them. In this case, we consider the partner MCPTT system does not share all information of their users' to the primary MCPTT system (public information would still need to be shared).
2. The group 1 is hosted by primary MCPTT system and group 2 and 3 are hosted by the partner MCPTT system.

3. The floor participant 1 corresponds to the MCPTT user of group 1. The floor participant 2 corresponds to the MCPTT user of group 2. The floor participant 3 corresponds to the MCPTT user of group 3. The floor control server 1 belongs to primary MCPTT system. The floor control server 2 belongs to partner MCPTT system.
4. The floor control server 1 is the floor arbitrator of the MCPTT group call. The floor control server 2 routes all floor control messages to and from the floor participants 2 and 3 and then floor control server 1.

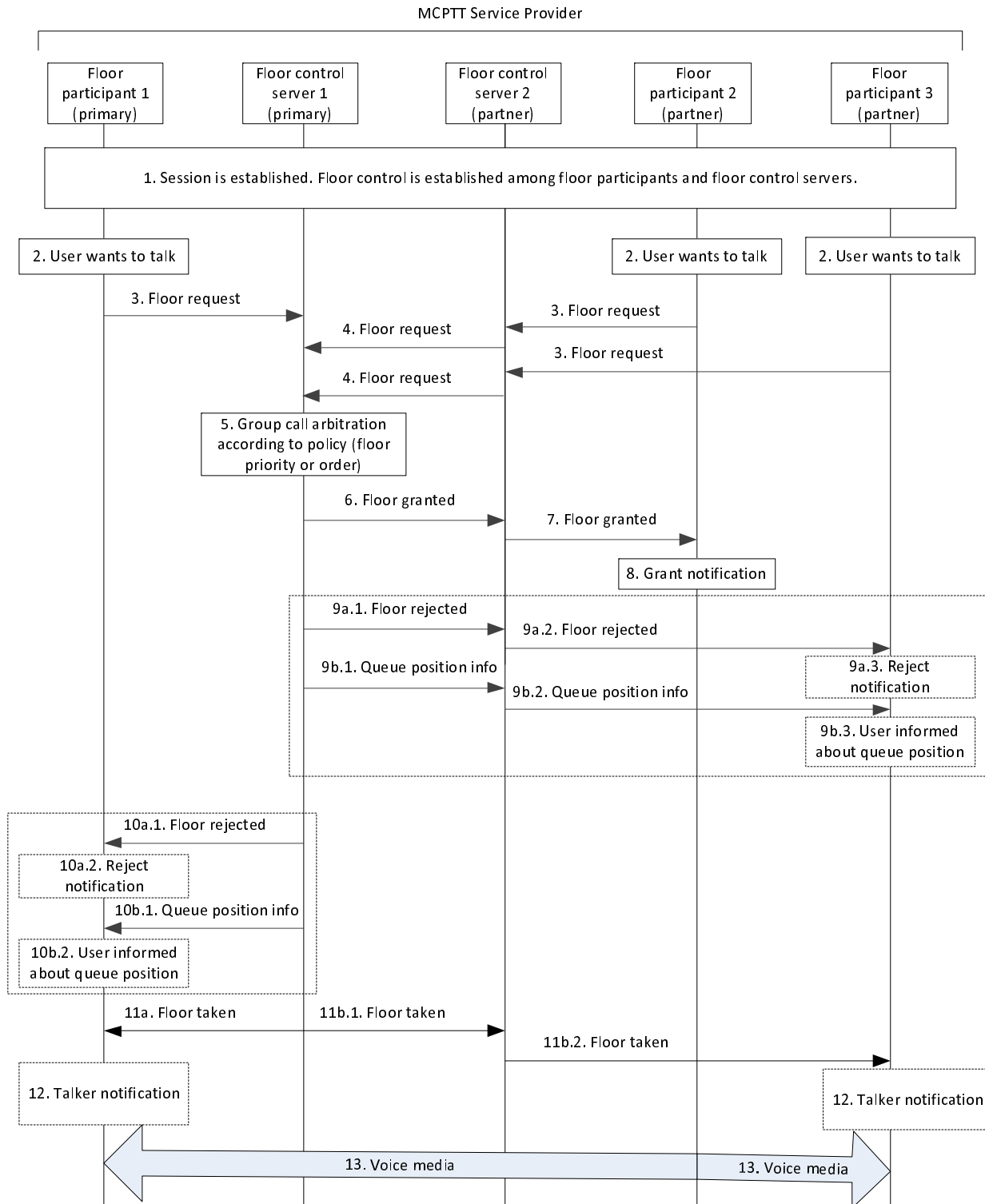


Figure 10.9.1.4.1-1: Floor control (partner MCPTT system forwarding) involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems

1. An MCPTT group call involving group1, group 2 and group 3 is setup and active.

2. The MCPTT users want to talk.
  3. The floor participants initiate a floor request to the floor control server of their corresponding MCPTT systems. (The requests may or may not occur at the same time).
  4. If only one floor request is received, or floor control server 2 handles the floor request sequentially, there is no arbitration performed and the corresponding floor request is forwarded to the floor control server 1. If the floor control server 2 receives multiple floor requests at the same time or during an interval, then it forwards the floor requests to the floor control server 1 (floor arbitrator for the MCPTT group call). As the floor participant information shall not be exposed, the floor priority related information or/and group information to be used by floor control server 1 should be included in the forwarded request.
  5. The floor control server 1 performs floor arbitration for the MCPTT group call and determines the floor request to be accepted.
  6. If the floor request from floor participant 2 of the partner MCPTT system is accepted, a floor granted is sent with permission to talk. The floor control messages from floor control server 1 are routed to floor participant 2 via the floor control server 2.
  7. When the floor control server 2 (partner) receives the floor granted, the floor control server 2 sends a floor granted message on to floor participant 2.
  8. The floor granted shall cause the user of the UE where the floor participant 2 is located to be notified.
  9. The primary floor control server 1 may (9a.1) send a floor rejected message, or (9b.1) send a queue position info message for each non-granted received floor requests forwarded from the floor control server 2 (partner). When the floor control server 2 (partner) receives the floor rejected message, then the floor control server 2 (partner) (9a.2) sends a floor rejected message to the appropriate floor participant. When the floor control server 2 (partner) receives the queue position info, then the floor control server 2 (partner) (9b.2) sends a queue position info message to the appropriate floor participant.
    - 10a.1 If floor control server 1 rejects the floor request from floor participant 1, then a floor reject message is sent.
    - 10a.2 Upon this being received the user of the UE where floor participant 1 is located may be notified.
    - 10b.1 If floor control server 1 supports floor queue, queue position info message is sent to the floor participant 1.
    - 10b.2 Upon this being received the user of the UE where floor participant 1 is located may be notified.
- NOTE 1: Steps 10a.1 through 10b.2 are optional as indicated by the dashed box enclosing them. However, if this box is implemented then either information flow 10a or 10b would occur.
- NOTE 2: Optionally, the authorized user (e.g., dispatcher) receiving notifications about another user when their floor request is queued, when their queued floor request is rejected and when their queued floor request is removed from the queue is not shown here for the sake of brevity.
11. Since the floor is granted to floor participant 2 of the partner MCPTT system, then a floor taken is sent to all other floor participants ((11a) floor participant 1 and (11b.1) to floor control server 2 (partner) for forwarding to (11b.2) floor participant 3.
  12. The receipt of the floor taken may be used to inform the users of the UEs where the floor participant entity 1 and floor participant 3 are located to be notified.
  13. Upon successful floor granted, the group call media transmission occurs.

NOTE 3: The media flow between the media gateways of primary and partner MCPTT systems have not been depicted in the figure for clarity.

#### 10.9.1.4.2 Partner MCPTT system performs filtering of floor control messages entering and leaving the partner MCPTT system

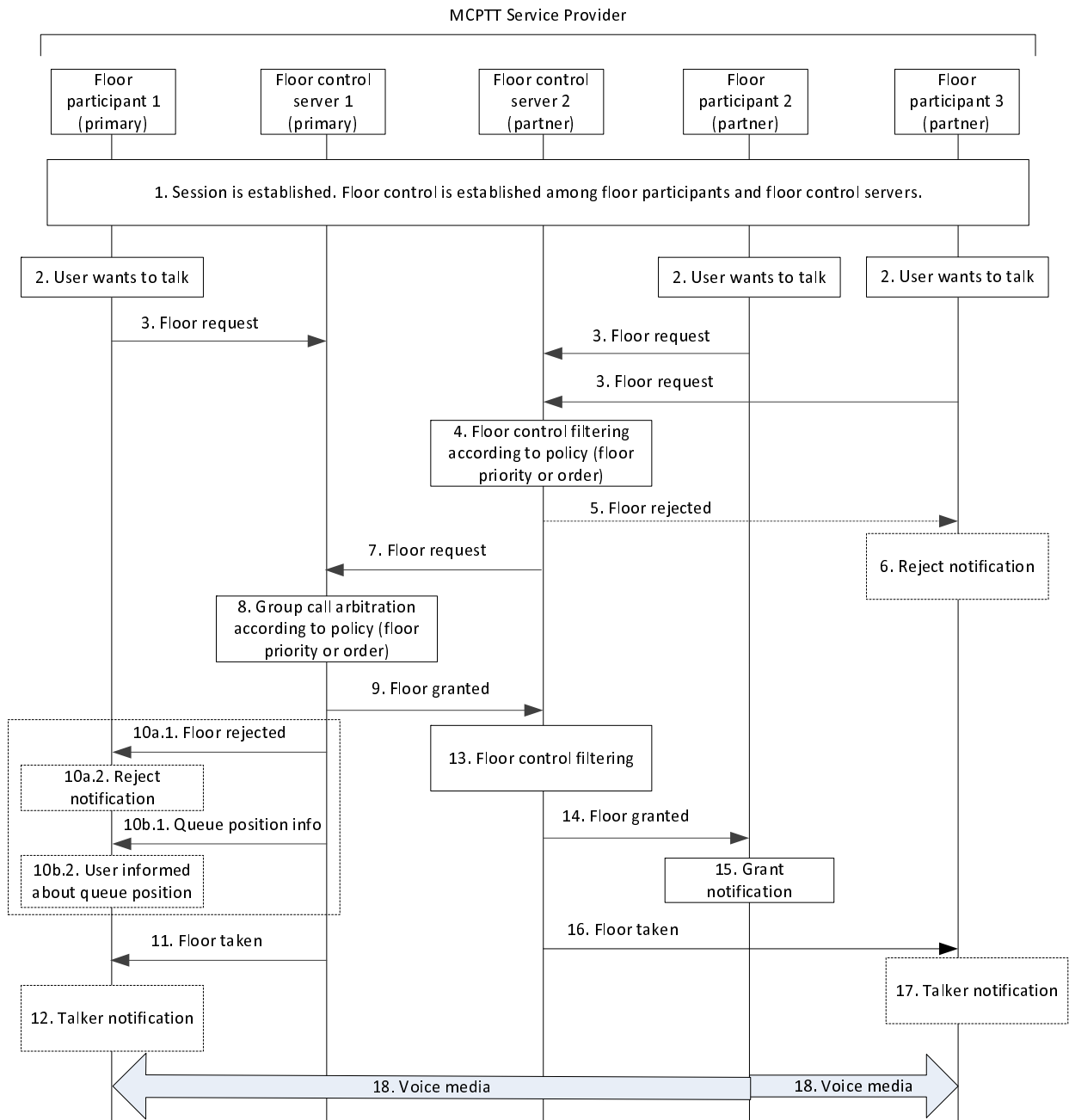
The MCPTT users belonging to different groups in multiple MCPTT systems will participate in MCPTT media services (group communication, private calls, etc.) in scenarios like group hierarchies and temporary groups formed by group regroup. In this service delivery model involving multiple groups from different MCPTT systems, the floor control arbitration resides with the primary MCPTT system. This is determined in the group call setup stage. The MCPTT users

of groups involved in the call session will transmit their floor control messages through the partner MCPTT systems to which they belong. In this scenario, the partner MCPTT system filters its MCPTT users' floor requests before communicating with the floor control server of the primary MCPTT system. The protocol used for media plane signalling is non-SIP like RTCP.

Figure 10.9.1.4.2-1 describes the procedure for floor control involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems.

Pre-conditions:

1. The security aspects of sharing the user information between primary and partner MCPTT systems shall be governed as per the service provider agreement between them. In this case, we consider the partner MCPTT system does not share all information of their users to the primary MCPTT system (public information would still need to be shared).
2. The group 1 is hosted by primary MCPTT system and group 2 and 3 are hosted by the partner MCPTT system.
3. The floor participant 1 corresponds to the MCPTT user of group 1. The floor participant 2 corresponds to the MCPTT user of group 2. The floor participant 3 corresponds to the MCPTT user of group 3. The floor control server 1 belongs to primary MCPTT system. The floor control server 2 belongs to partner MCPTT system.
4. The floor control server 1 is the floor arbitrator of the MCPTT group call. The floor control server 2 does floor control filtering with its floor participants 2 and 3 before communicating with the floor control server 1.



**Figure 10.9.1.4.2-1: Floor control (filtering by partner MCPTT system) involving groups from multiple MCPTT systems**

1. An MCPTT group call involving group 1, group 2 and group 3 is setup and active.
2. The MCPTT users want to talk
3. The floor participants initiate a floor request to the floor control server of their corresponding MCPTT systems. (The requests may or may not occur at the same time).
4. Floor control server 2 receives a floor request from floor participant 2 and from participant 3 at the same time or during an interval, then the floor control server 2 (partner) performs filtering of the floor requests received according to its local policy such as priority or order based on its own users, and forwards the selected floor request (floor participant 2) to the floor control server 1 (floor arbitrator for the MCPTT group call). As the floor participant information shall not be exposed, the priority related information or/and group information to be used by floor control server 1 should be included in the forwarded request.
5. The floor control server 2 (partner) may send a floor rejected towards the floor participant 3, since its floor request was not chosen to be forwarded on to the floor control server 1.

6. The user on the UE where the floor participant 3 is located may be notified of the rejection.

NOTE 1: Steps 5 and 6 can occur any time between step 4 and step 16.

7. The floor control server 2 (partner) forwards the floor request of floor participant 2 to the floor server 1.

8. The floor control server 1 performs floor arbitration for the MCPTT group call and determines the floor request to be accepted. The floor request message from floor participant 2 of the partner system is accepted by the floor control server 1 (arbitrator) and is determined that a floor granted is sent with permission to talk.

9. The floor granted message from floor control server 1 is routed to floor participant 2 via the floor control server 2 (partner).

10. Since floor participant 1 sent a floor request but was not granted,

10a.1 the primary floor control server may send a floor rejected message to floor participant 1.

10a.2 The user of the UE where the floor participant 1 is located may be notified of the rejection.

10b.1 if floor control server supports floor queuing, send a queue position info message to floor participant 1.

10b.2 The user of the UE where the floor participant 1 is located may be notified of the queue position.

NOTE 2: Steps 10a.1 through 10b.2 are optional as indicated by the dashed box enclosing them. However, if this box is implemented then either information flow 10a or 10b would occur.

NOTE 3: Optionally, the authorized user (e.g., dispatcher) receiving notifications about another user when their floor request is queued, when their queued floor request is rejected and when their queued floor request is removed from the queue is not shown here for the sake of brevity.

11. A floor taken message is sent to floor participant 1.

12. The user of the UE where the floor participant 1 is located may be notified.

NOTE 4: Step 10 through Step 12 can occur any time between step 8 and step 18.

13. Since the floor control server 2 (partner) filters floor requests, when the floor control server 2 (partner) receives the floor granted for floor participant 2 from floor control server 1, the floor control server 2 (partner) needs to use the information received to generate the floor taken which will be sent to all other floor participants (floor control participant 3).

14. The floor control server 2 (partner) sends a floor granted message to floor participant 2.

15. The user of the UE where the floor participant 2 is located is notified.

16. The floor control server 2 (partner) sends a floor taken message to all other floor participants (floor participant 3).

17. The user of the UE where the floor participant 1 is located may be notified.

18. Upon successful floor grant, the group call media transmission occurs.

NOTE 5: The media flow between the media gateways of primary and partner MCPTT systems have not been depicted in the figure for clarity.

### 10.9.1.5 Floor control for audio cut-in enabled group

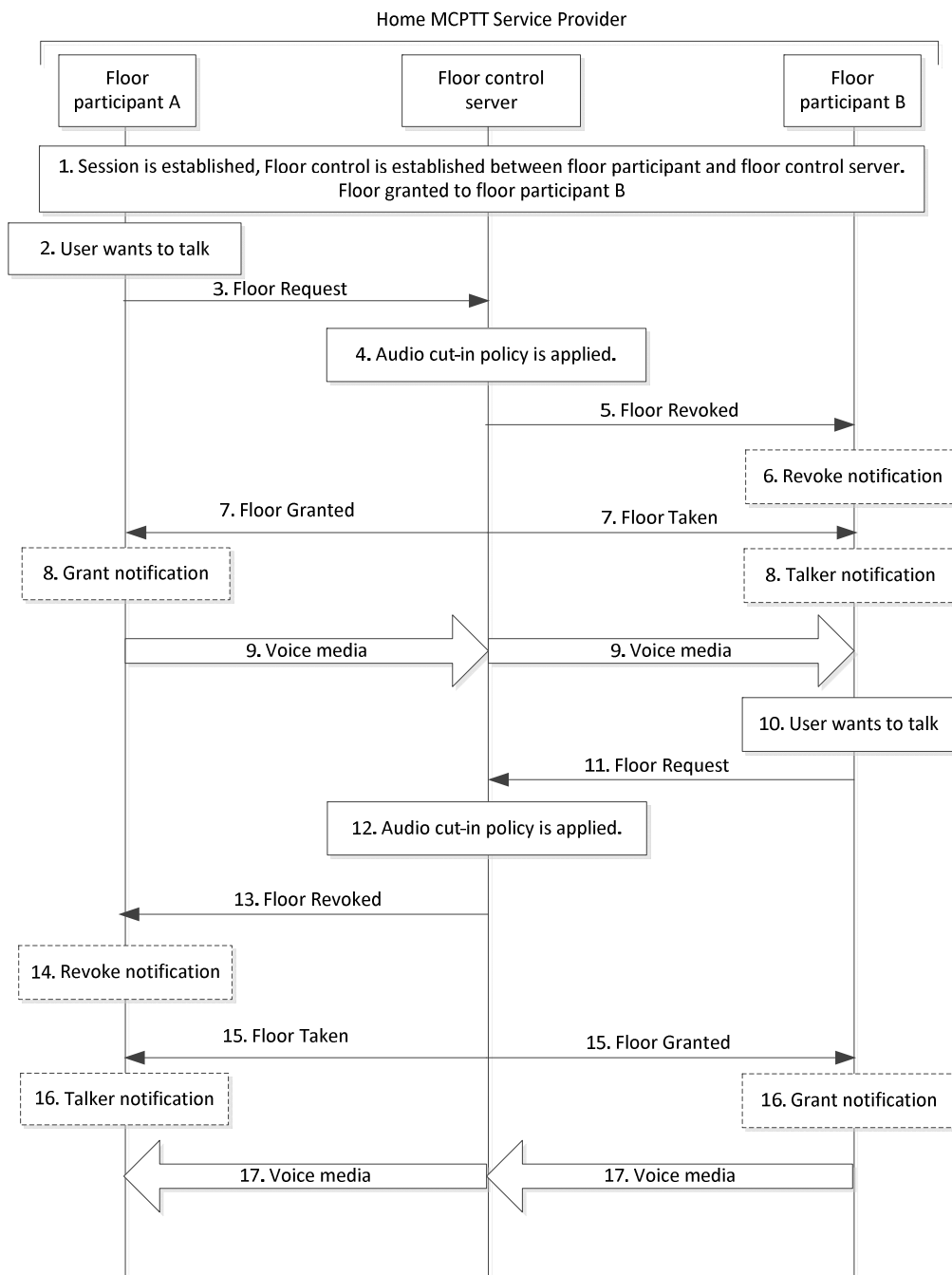
Figure 10.9.1.5-1 shows the procedure for audio cut-in for the session already established between the floor participants from same MCPTT service provider. Floor participants may request the floor while Floor Participant B is transmitting voice media. Floor control server grants floor immediately to the floor request received.

NOTE: The configuration parameter addressing the queue depth is out of scope of the present document.

Pre-conditions:

- The floor control server has been configured to support audio cut-in.

- It is assumed that the floor has been granted to floor participant B and floor participant B is transmitting voice media. There are several other floor participants (including floor participant A).



**Figure 10.9.1.5-1: Floor control for audio cut-in enabled group in single MCPTT system**

1. Floor participant B has been given floor and is transmitting voice media.
2. Floor participant A wants to send voice media over the session.
3. Floor participant A sends a floor request message to the floor control server.
4. The floor control server applies the audio cut-in policy with floor queue disabled i.e., floor is immediately granted to the floor participant A, and revoked from floor participant B.
5. The floor control server sends a floor revoked message to floor participant B stopping the voice media transmission from floor participant B.
6. The user of floor participant B may be notified that the floor is revoked.

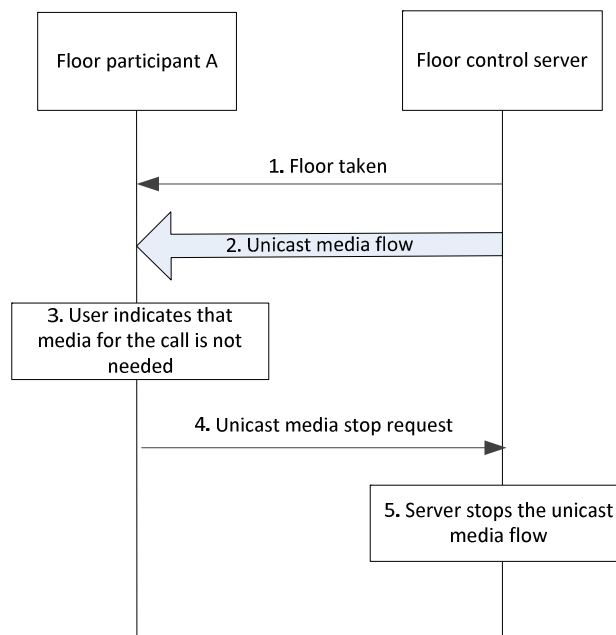
7. The Floor control server sends a floor granted message to floor participant A, and sends a floor taken message to floor participant B with information of who is granted the floor. The floor control server may limit the time a user talks (holds the floor).
8. The user of floor participant A may be notified that he is granted the floor. Similarly, the user of floor participant B may be notified who is granted the floor.
9. Floor participant A starts sending voice media over the session established.
10. Now floor participant B may want the floor to start sending voice media.
11. Floor participant B sends a floor request message to floor control server.
12. The floor control server applies the audio cut-in policy with floor queue disabled.
13. The floor control server sends a floor revoked message to floor participant A stopping the voice media transmission from floor participant A.
14. The user of floor participant A may be notified that the floor is revoked.
15. The Floor control server sends a floor granted message to floor participant B, and sends a floor taken message to floor participant A with information of who is granted the floor. The floor control server may limit the time a user talks (holds the floor).
16. The user of floor participant B may be notified that he is granted the floor. Similarly, the user of floor participant A may be notified who is granted the floor.
17. Floor participant B starts sending voice media over the session established.

#### 10.9.1.6 Unicast media stop and resume requests

Figure 10.9.1.6-1 shows the procedure for a floor participant to indicate to the floor control server that the unicast media flow of an active MCPTT group call can be stopped.

Pre-condition:

1. An MCPTT session is established between MCPTT client A and MCPTT server for an MCPTT group call. Other participants to the call are not shown in the figure for simplicity.
2. The floor control is established between the floor participant and the floor control server.



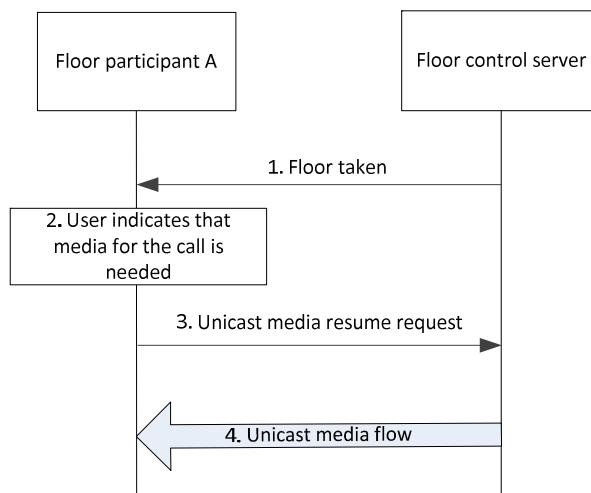
**Figure 10.9.1.6-1: Unicast media stop request during an MCPTT session**

1. Another floor participant has requested and has been granted the floor. The floor control server sends a floor taken message to floor participant A. The floor taken message may include an identifier of the associated media flow.
2. Floor control server sends the voice media flow to floor participant A over unicast.
3. Floor participant A gets the information, e.g. from the user, that media for the call is not needed.
4. Floor participant A sends a unicast media stop request to floor control server, identifying the media flow to be stopped.
5. Floor control server stops sending that unicast media flow to floor participant A. Associated bearer resources may be de-allocated by the MCPTT server.

Figure 10.9.1.6-2 shows the procedure for a floor participant to request from the floor control server that the unicast media flow of an active MCPTT group call be restarted.

Pre-condition:

1. An MCPTT session is established between MCPTT client A and MCPTT server for an MCPTT group call. Other participants to the call are not shown in the figure for simplicity
2. The floor control is established between the floor participant and the floor control server.
3. Floor participant A has previously indicated to the floor control server that unicast media flow for that call should be stopped, using the procedure described in Figure 10.9.1.6-1.



**Figure 10.9.1.6-2: Unicast media resume request during an MCPTT session**

1. Another floor participant has requested and has been granted the floor. The floor control server sends a floor taken message to floor participant A. The floor taken message may include an identifier of the associated media flow.
2. Floor participant A gets the information, e.g. from the user, that media for the call is needed again.
3. Floor participant A sends a unicast media resume request to floor control server, identifying the media flow to be re-started.
4. Floor control server starts sending that unicast media flow to floor participant A. This may need new bearer resources to be allocated.

NOTE 1: The identifier of the flow to be stopped or resumed is known by the floor participant from the floor control information flows associated with that MCPTT session.

NOTE 2: Stopping a media flow is not leaving the session and subsequent floor control messages will still be sent by the floor control server to the floor participant which has requested a unicast media stop.

NOTE 3: Both requests have no effect on a possible ongoing transmission of the media flow over MBMS. In particular, they are not interpreted by the MCPTT server as MBMS listening status reports.

## 10.9.2 Floor control for off-network MCPTT service

### 10.9.2.1 General

The procedures defined in this subclause provide floor control to MCPTT UEs in off-network operation. The procedures apply to both private calls and group calls.

In off-network, floor control is performed by using floor control messages among the MCPTT clients without centralized MCPTT server. The MCPTT client can transmit voice packets once it is granted the right to speak, either locally in the UE or by reception of a floor granted message from another MCPTT client.

In off-network, the MCPTT client currently speaking performs the temporary floor arbitrator during speaking since there is no centralized MCPTT floor control server. The floor arbitrator controls the floor whether or not queue is supported, and when floor is requested with override. If queue is supported, the MCPTT client performing floor arbitrator grants the right to speak to the next speaker and transfers the floor arbitrator role after completing the voice transfer and releasing the floor. For group calls, the floor arbitrator also transfers the floor control queue when granting

the floor. The next MCPTT client receiving the right to speak becomes the new floor arbitrator and, for group calls, has the floor control queue.

For group calls, the floor control message is delivered in multicast based communication and can be monitored by all the members within the MCPTT group.

The following information flows apply among MCPTT clients.

- Floor request (from the floor participants to the floor arbitrator): used to request a floor for voice transfer.
- Floor release (from the floor arbitrator to the floor participants): used to inform that the voice transfer is completed and the floor is released.
- Floor granted (from the floor arbitrator to a floor participant): used to indicate that the request for floor is granted, that voice transfer is possible and the current queue list.
- Queue position request (from the floor participant to the floor arbitrator): used to request the position in the floor request queue.
- Queue position info (from the floor arbitrator to the floor participant): used to indicate the floor request is queued and the current queue status.
- Floor rejected (from the floor arbitrator to the floor participant): used to indicate that a request for the floor is rejected.
- Floor taken (from the floor arbitrator to the floor participant): used to indicate the floor is granted to another MCPTT user.

## 10.9.2.2 Information flows for floor control for off-network

### 10.9.2.2.1 General

For floor control for off-network, the information flows defined under subclause 10.9.1.2 apply unless it is explicitly defined under this subclause.

### 10.9.2.2.2 Floor granted

Table 10.9.2.2.2-1 describes the information flow floor granted, from the floor participant to the floor participant, which is used to indicate that a request for floor is granted and media transfer is possible.

**Table 10.9.2.2.2-1: Floor granted**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	Requester identity
Duration	M	The time for which the granted party is allowed to transmit
Source identifier	O	Identifies the communication, e.g. by identifying the media flow within a media multiplex, present only in case of media multiplexing
Acknowledgement required	O	Indicates if acknowledgement from the floor participant is required

## 10.9.2.3 Floor control during silence

### 10.9.2.3.1 Successful floor taken (No floor contention)

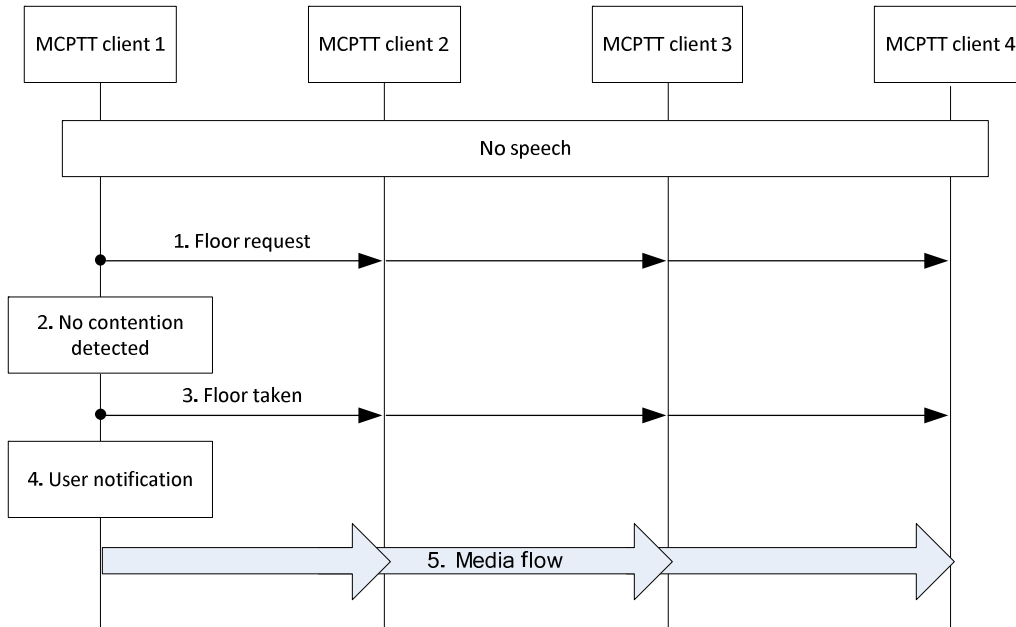
If a floor arbitrator still exists, the expected behaviour for floor requests during periods of silence is described in subclauses 10.9.2.5 and 10.9.2.6 (with the exception that no media was being generated prior to the floor request).

If a floor arbitrator does not exist, figure 10.9.2.3.1-1 shows the successful high level floor control procedure during periods when there is no detectable talker.

NOTE 1: The description also applies to private calls.

Pre-conditions:

1. An off-network group call had been established and all MCPTT clients have the call parameters. No participant is currently talking and no floor arbitrator is identified.



**Figure 10.9.2.3.1-1: Successful floor taken flow (No floor contention)**

1. The MCPTT client 1 sends the floor request message to the MCPTT group.
2. The MCPTT client 1 does not detect any floor contention. Floor contention occurs when multiple floor requests may exist simultaneously.

NOTE 2: The mechanism for detecting floor contention is out of scope of the present document.

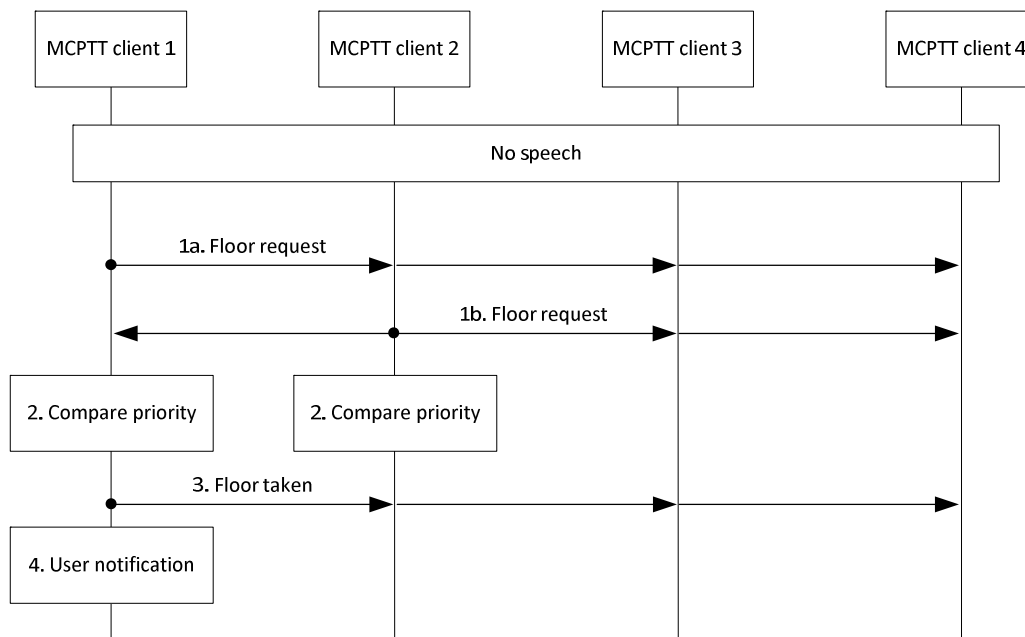
3. The MCPTT client 1 sends the floor taken message to the MCPTT group.
4. The user gets a notification that the floor request was successful (the floor has been granted).
5. The MCPTT client 1 begins voice transmission.

### 10.9.2.4 Simultaneous floor requests

If a floor arbitrator does not exist, figure 10.9.2.4.1-1 shows the expected behaviour in case of simultaneous floor requests are generated when there is no detectable talker.

Pre-conditions:

1. An off-network group call is established and all MCPTT clients have the call parameters. No participant is currently talking and no floor arbitrator is identified.
2. MCPTT client 1 has higher priority than MCPTT client 2.



**Figure 10.9.2.4.1-1: Simultaneous floor requests**

1a. The MCPTT client 1 sends the floor request message to the MCPTT group.

1b. The MCPTT client 2 sends the floor request message to the MCPTT group.

NOTE 1: Step 1a and 1b happen in parallel

2. On receiving a floor request message, while waiting for a response to the sent floor request message, the MCPTT client compares its floor priority with the floor priority indicated in the received floor request message.

3. On determining that it has higher floor priority than the received floor request message(s), and no response to the sent floor request message is received, the MCPTT client 1 sends the floor taken message to the MCPTT group.

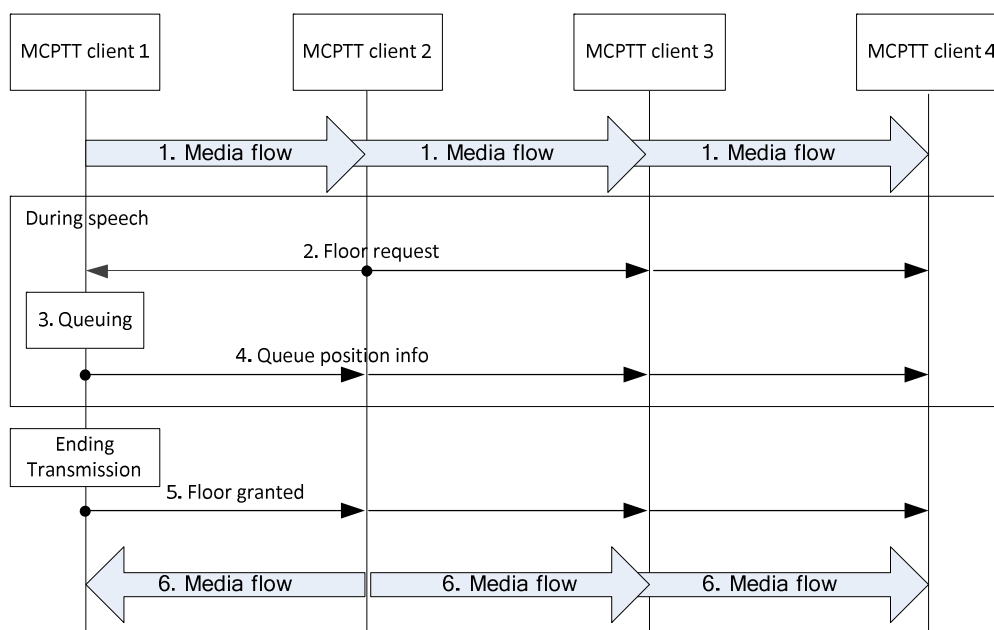
4. The user at MCPTT client 1 gets notification that the floor request was successful (the floor has been granted).

NOTE 2: If the floor priority in the received floor request message is same as its own floor priority, the MCPTT client can use another scheme to decide who gets the floor.

### 10.9.2.5 Floor request during speaking with queue

Figure 10.9.2.5-1 shows the high level procedure that the floor control is conducted when the MCPTT off-network session is already established among MCPTT floor participants and while voice media is transmitting. In the case, MCPTT clients should support queue function. The current speaking MCPTT client acting as the floor arbitrator put the floor request into the queue list when receiving the floor request from other MCPTT clients. This procedure happens while voice media is transmitting. In the flow, MCPTT client 1 transmits the voice media to the MCPTT group and acts as the floor arbitrator.

NOTE: The description only applies to group calls.



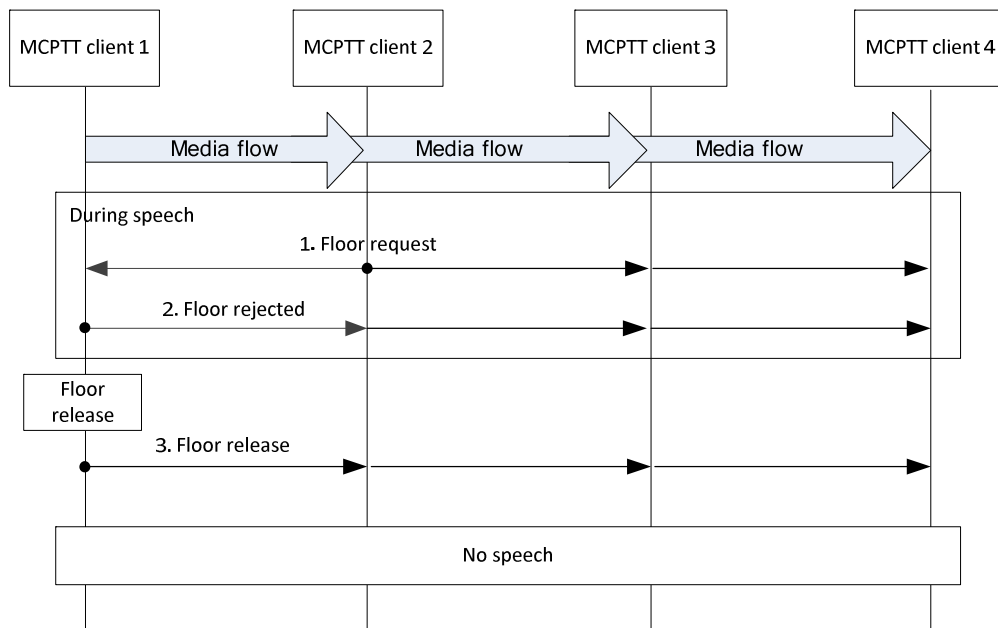
**Figure 10.9.2.5-1: Floor request during speaking with queue**

1. MCPTT client 1 is transmitting voice media to the MCPTT group.
2. MCPTT client 2 sends the floor request message to the MCPTT group.
3. MCPTT client 1 acting as the floor arbitrator put the floor request of MCPTT client 2 into the queue list.
4. MCPTT client 1 sends the queue position info message with the queuing status regarding the floor request of MCPTT client 2 in order to inform the floor request is queued.
5. MCPTT client 1 sends the floor granted message to the MCPTT group when releasing the floor. The message contains the MCPTT ID to be granted to send the voice media, and queue list, if any. MCPTT client 1 may include the maximum duration that MCPTT client 2 transmits in the floor granted message.
6. MCPTT client 2 sends the voice media when receiving the floor granted message and being granted as next speaker in the floor granted message. In addition, MCPTT client 2 becomes the floor arbitrator.

### 10.9.2.6 Floor request during speaking without queue

Figure 10.9.2.6-1 shows the high level procedure that the floor control is conducted when the MCPTT off-network session is already established among MCPTT floor participants. In the case, MCPTT clients do not support queue function. The current speaking MCPTT client acting as the floor arbitrator controls the floor request when receiving the floor request from other MCPTT clients. This procedure happens while voice media is transmitting. In the flow, MCPTT client 1 transmits the voice media to the MCPTT group and acts as the floor arbitrator.

NOTE: The description also applies to private calls.



**Figure 10.9.2.6-1: Floor request during speaking without queue**

1. MCPTT client 2 sends the floor request message to the MCPTT group.
2. MCPTT client 1 acting as the floor arbitrator rejects the floor request from MCPTT client 2 if no queue function is supported and sends the floor rejected message to the MCPTT group.
3. MCPTT client 1 sends the floor release message to the MCPTT group when releasing the floor, in order to indicate that MCPTT client 1 finishes to send the voice media and releases the floor.

When the floor release message is transmitted, there are no voice media in the MCPTT group until an MCPTT client requests the floor as described in subclause 10.9.2.3.

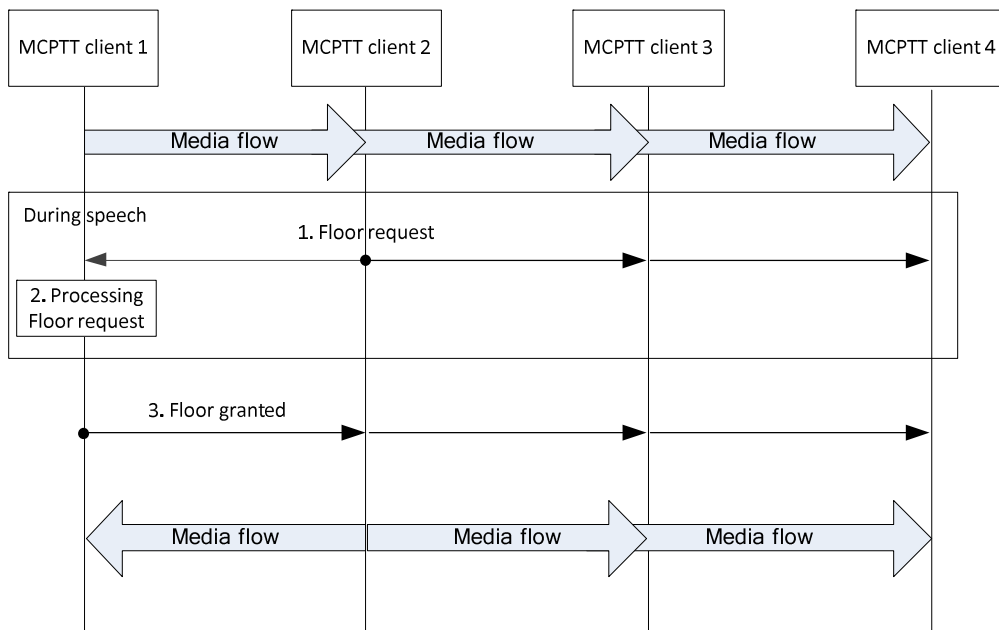
### 10.9.2.7 Override

Figure 10.9.2.7-1 shows the high level procedure that the floor control is conducted when the MCPTT off-network session is already established among MCPTT floor participants and while voice media is transmitting. When the currently speaking MCPTT floor participant receives the floor request message from another floor participant who is authorized to revoke the active transmission (e.g. higher hierarchy), the current speaking MCPTT floor participant immediately stops sending the audio media and then grants the permission to that authorized floor participant.

NOTE: The description also applies to private calls.

Pre-condition:

- MCPTT client 1, who acts as the floor arbitrator, transmits the audio media to the MCPTT group.



**Figure 10.9.2.7-1: Floor request with override authorization**

1. MCPTT client 2 sends the floor request message with override criteria (e.g., priority level) to the MCPTT group.
2. MCPTT client 1 acting as the floor arbitrator determines if the floor is to be revoked based on override criteria. If this is the case, MCPTT client 1 revokes its right of the floor and stops sending the voice media immediately.
3. MCPTT client 1 sends the floor granted message to the MCPTT group. The floor granted message contains the MCPTT ID to be granted, the floor and the floor control queue (if supported). MCPTT client 1 may also include the maximum duration that MCPTT client 2 can transmit voice in the floor granted message.

MCPTT client2 who has revoked the floor is the new floor arbitrator and transmits the audio media to the MCPTT group.

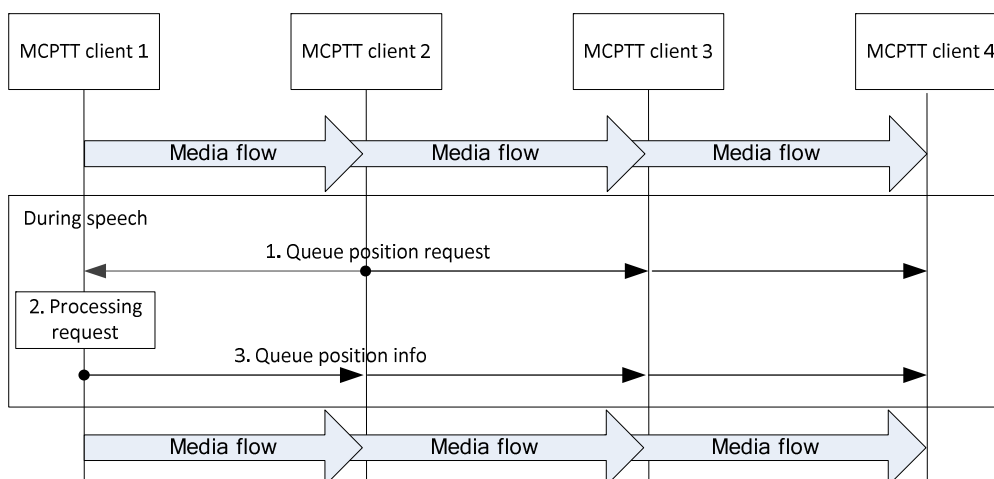
### 10.9.2.8 Floor queue status

Figure 10.9.2.8-1 shows the high level procedure that the floor control is conducted when the MCPTT off-network session is already established among MCPTT floor participants and while voice media is transmitting. If the floor control queueing is supported by the floor control mechanism, the current speaking MCPTT group member who is acting as the floor arbitrator collects the information about the queue status based on the received request(s) from the MCPTT group participant(s). The current speaker can then share information about the queue status of the MCPTT floor participant upon request.

NOTE: The description only applies to group calls.

Pre-condition:

- MCPTT client 1, who acts as the floor arbitrator, transmits the audio media to the MCPTT group.



**Figure 10.9.2.8-1: Queue status request**

1. MCPTT client 2 sends the queue position request message targeted to MCPTT client 1 i.e. the floor arbitrator by broadcasting the message to the MCPTT group to get its queue status.
2. Since the queue function is assumed to be supported in this call flow, MCPTT client 1 i.e. the floor arbitrator processes the queue position request to find out the status of MCPTT client 1 in the queue.
3. MCPTT client 1 constructs the queue position info message containing the MCPTT client 2's queue status and sends it toward MCPTT client 2 by broadcasting the message to the MCPTT group.

MCPTT client1 continues being the floor arbitrator and transmits the audio media to the MCPTT group.

## 10.10 Use of MBMS transmission (on-network)

### 10.10.1 Information flows for MBMS Transmission

#### 10.10.1.1 MapGroupToBearer

Table 10.10.1.1-1 describes the information flow to associate a MCPTT group call to a MBMS bearer. It is sent from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.10.1.1-1: MapGroupToBearer**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT group ID	M	This element identifies the MCPTT group, in which the call is started.
Media stream identifier	M	This element identifies the media stream of the SDP used for the group call (e.g. MBMS subchannel).
TMGI (see NOTE)	O	The MBMS bearer identifier if the media of the MCPTT group call is not sent on the same MBMS bearer as this MapGroupToBearer message.
Call acknowledgement indicator	O	Indication that the MCPTT group call requires acknowledgement from receiving MCPTT clients.
NOTE: TMGI shall be present if this message is sent over a different MBMS bearer than the media of the group call; TMGI may be present if this message is sent over the same MBMS bearer as the media of the group call.		

### 10.10.1.2 UnmapGroupFromBearer

Table 10.10.1.2-1 describes the information flow to disconnect a MCPTT group call from a MBMS bearer. It is sent from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.10.1.2-1: UnmapGroupFromBearer**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT group ID	M	This element identifies the MCPTT group which will no longer use the MBMS bearer.

### 10.10.1.3 Application paging

Table 10.10.1.3-1 describes the information flow application paging from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT clients.

**Table 10.10.1.3-1: Application paging**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT Group ID (see NOTE)	O	This element identifies the MCPTT group which is paged by the application.
MCPTT ID (see NOTE)	O	Identity of the MCPTT user which is paged by the application for the private call.
Cause	M	The cause for this message being sent (e.g. for the use in group calls or private calls).
NOTE: Either MCPTT Group ID or MCPTT ID is present.		

## 10.10.2 Use of pre-established MBMS bearers

The MCPTT service shall support the procedure for using pre-established MBMS bearers as specified 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]. The MCPTT service shall use the MCPTT-1, MCPTT-6, MCPTT-8 and MCPTT-9 reference points for this procedure.

MCPTT may use pre-established MBMS bearer for the different types of MCPTT group calls. Both pre-arranged group calls and chat group calls can use the pre-established MBMS bearer for distributing the media. The MBMS bearer can be used by any group. Depending on the capacity of the MBMS bearer, the bearer can be used to broadcast one or more group calls in parallel.

Both the media packets as well as the floor control messages to the receiving users are sent on the MBMS bearer. Optionally a separate MBMS bearer could be used for the floor control messages, due to different bearer characteristic requirements.

When using the pre-established procedure for MCPTT, the MCPTT server perform the procedure of call connect and disconnect over MBMS as defined in subclause 10.10.4 at the group communication session establishment step.

### 10.10.3 Use of dynamic MBMS bearer establishment

The MCPTT service shall support the procedure for using dynamic MBMS bearers as specified 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]. The MCPTT service shall use the MCPTT-1, MCPTT-4, MCPTT-6, MCPTT-7, MCPTT-8 and MCPTT-9 reference points for this procedure.

MCPTT may use dynamic MBMS bearer establishment for the different types of MCPTT group calls. Both pre-arranged group calls and chat group calls can use the dynamic MBMS bearer for distributing the media.

Both the media packets as well as the floor control messages to the receiving users are sent on the MBMS bearer.

When using the procedures for dynamic MBMS bearer establishment for MCPTT, the MCPTT server perform the procedure of call connect and disconnect over MBMS as defined in subclause 10.10.4 at the group communication session establishment step.

## 10.10.4 Call connect and disconnect over MBMS

### 10.10.4.1 General

MBMS bearer can be used for MCPTT group calls. One MBMS bearer is not permanently associated to one specific group or group call. Before sending media packets of a group call over MBMS bearer, the MCPTT server shall send the association information between group call and the MBMS bearer. The group call setup procedure indicates the media stream within one MBMS bearer that is used for the specific group call. When the group call over the MBMS bearer is finished, this temporary association information of an MCPTT group call to specific resources on a MBMS bearer is undone. The procedure in figure 10.10.4.2.1-1 requires that the group session is setup before the call start. This eliminates the need for the receiving clients to continuously use a unicast bearer. Prior to this the MBMS bearer is activated and announced to the MCPTT clients.

### 10.10.4.2 Procedure

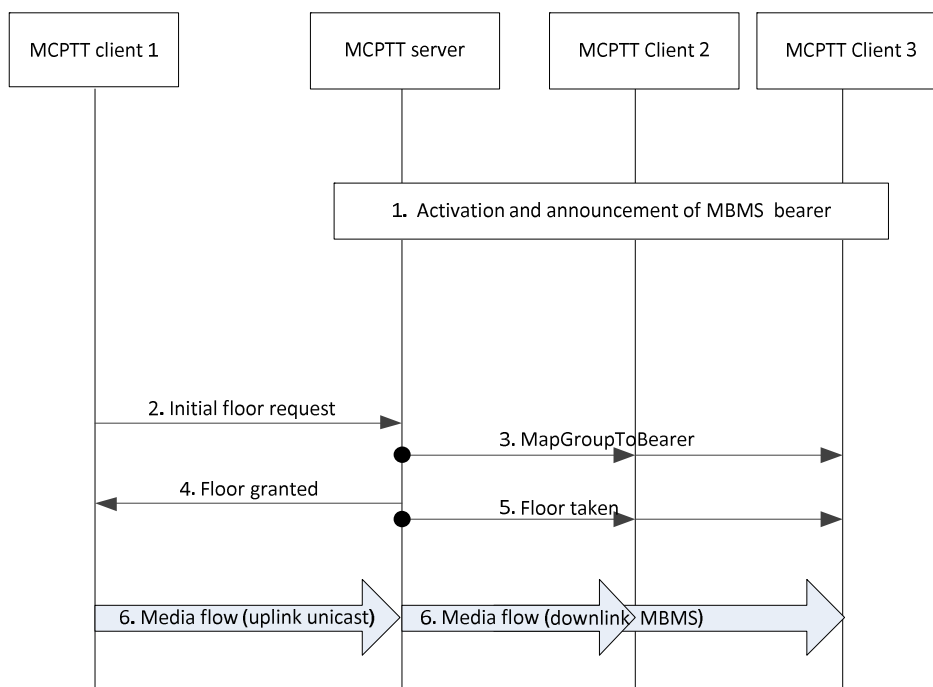
#### 10.10.4.2.1 Call connect over MBMS

In figure 10.10.4.2.1-1 the MCPTT client 1 is the client that initiate an MCPTT chat group call and also the transmitting client. MCPTT client 1 may, but does not have to, be in an MBMS service area. The MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 represents MCPTT clients receiving the MCPTT call over an MBMS bearer. There may be other receiving clients both over unicast bearers and over this or other MBMS bearer(s), however they are not illustrated in this figure.

The same procedure as for chat group call can also be applied for pre-arranged calls. However, that requires that the pre-arranged sessions are already active. If a pre-arranged group session is initiated the use of pre-established sessions are required.

Pre-conditions:

- All users participating in the MCPTT group call are already affiliated to the group.
- All participating users have joined the group session.



**Figure 10.10.4.2.1-1: Chat group call connect on MBMS bearer**

1. Activation and announcement of MBMS bearer availability.

NOTE 1: The procedure does not include the steps for MCPTT client location reporting, or for MBMS capability information exchange.

2. MCPTT client 1 initiate the MCPTT group call by sending an initial floor request over a unicast bearer to the MCPTT server (reference point MCPTT-4).
3. The MCPTT server will send a MapGroupToBearer message over a previously activated MBMS bearer to all users that will receive the call over an MBMS bearer. The MapGroupToBearer message includes association information between the group call and MBMS bearer. The MapGroupToBearer message includes MCPTT group ID and information about the media stream identifier of the activated MBMS bearer and may include the identifier (i.e. the TMGI) of the MBMS bearer broadcasting the call. The message is sent over reference point MCPTT-9.

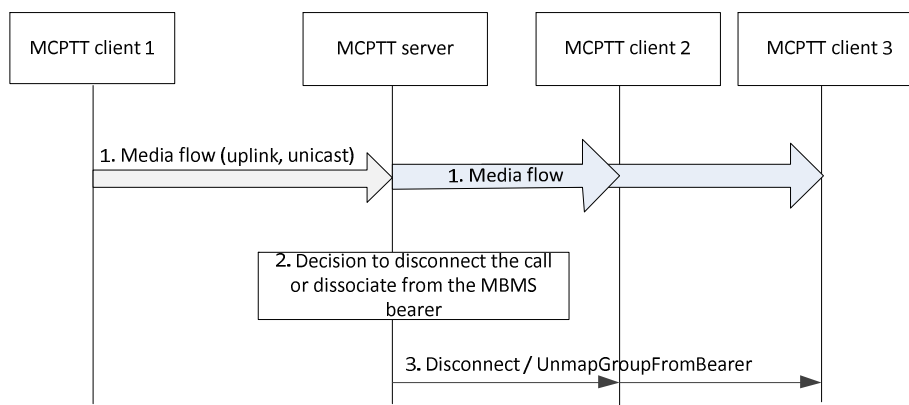
NOTE 2: Step 3 can be deferred until step 5 and the MapGroupToBearer message can then be included in the floor taken message.

4. The MCPTT server grants the right to transmit for MCPTT client 1 and by that sends a floor granted message to the MCPTT client 1. This message is sent over a unicast bearer (reference point MCPTT-4).
5. A floor taken message is sent from the MCPTT server to all receiving users. This message includes the MCPTT ID of the transmitting MCPTT client as well as the MCPTT group ID. The message is sent over a MBMS bearer to all users that have previously been setup to receive calls over the MBMS bearer. The message is sent over reference point MCPTT-9.
6. The media is sent from MCPTT client 1 to the MCPTT server over unicast bearer and from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 over MBMS bearer.

NOTE 3: Additional floor request messages in the same call will not trigger the MapGroupToBearer message to be sent.

#### 10.10.4.2.2 Call disconnect over MBMS

Figure 10.10.4.2.2-1 shows the high level procedure where an UnmapGroupFromBearer message is sent by the MCPTT server to the MCPTT clients to indicate that the MCPTT group call is being dissociated from the MBMS bearer.



**Figure 10.10.4.2.2-1: Chat group call disconnect on MBMS bearer**

1. An MCPTT group call is ongoing; the media is broadcasted over MBMS bearer to MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3.
2. MCPTT server has determined to disconnect the call over the MBMS bearer for the MCPTT clients
3. An UnmapGroupFromBearer message is sent by the MCPTT server to MCPTT client 2, MCPTT client 3 and possibly to MCPTT client 1 (if in MBMS coverage area) on MBMS bearer(s).

NOTE 4: The UnmapGroupFromBearer message can be sent as part of other messages.

NOTE 5: The UnmapGroupFromBearer message and the MapGroupToBearer message can be combined, to facilitate switching bearers in one signalling step, as necessary.

### 10.10.5 Switching from MBMS bearer to unicast bearer

The MCPTT service shall support the procedure for switching from MBMS bearer to unicast bearer as specified 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]. The MCPTT service shall use the MCPTT-1, MCPTT-4, MCPTT-7, MCPTT-8 and MCPTT-9 reference points for this procedure.

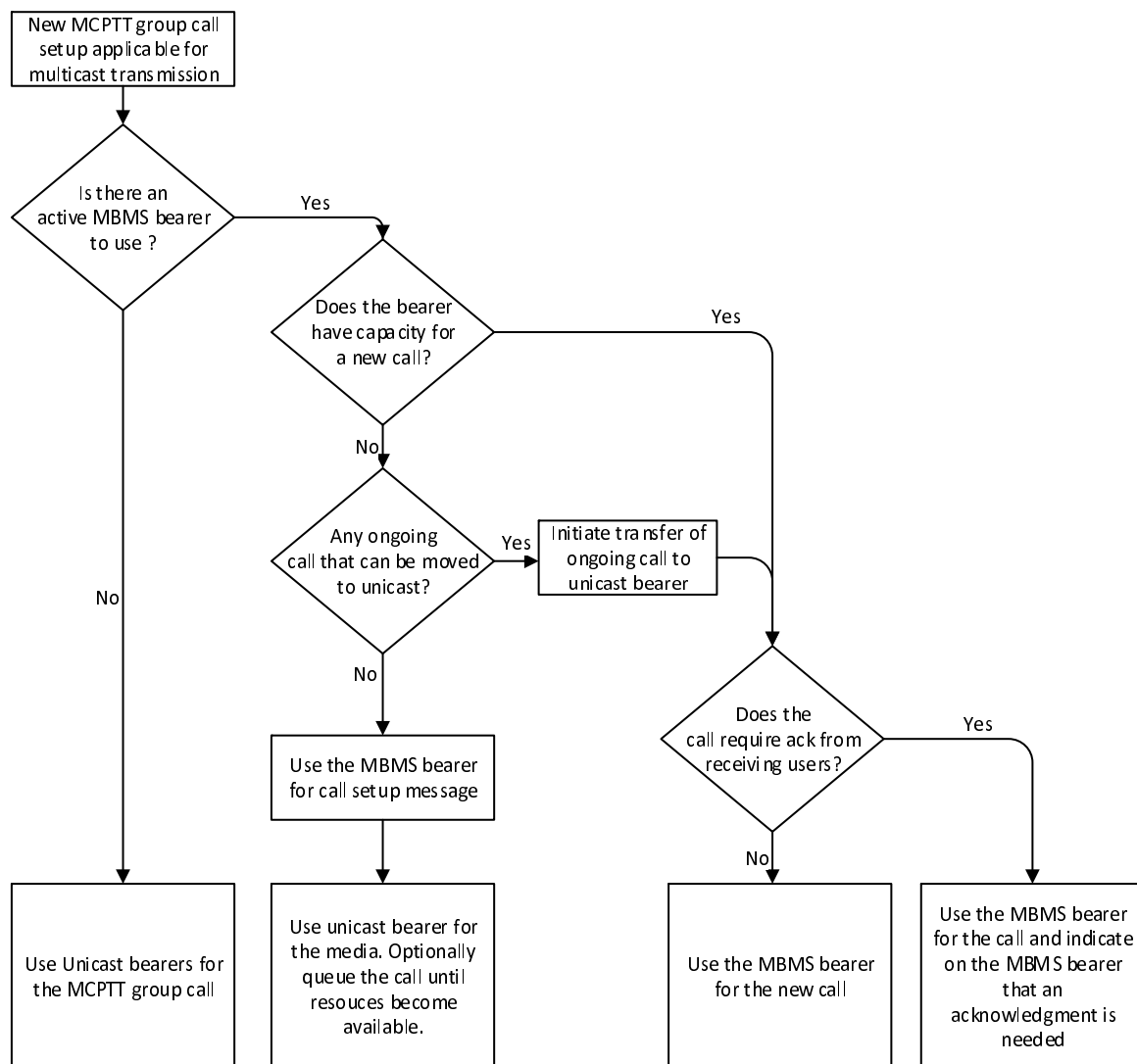
### 10.10.6 Enhanced MCPTT group call setup procedure with MBMS bearer

#### 10.10.6.1 Description

When the MCPTT server initiates a new MCPTT call, the MCPTT server shall decide to use unicast bearers or broadcast bearers for the downlink media. A similar decision may also be made for other types of media communication e.g. MCVideo. To decide to use broadcast or unicast involves a number of aspects. The figure 10.10.6.1-1 specifies a procedural flow to perform such decision.

The flow described evaluates which bearer type to use for a new MCPTT group call. It is assumed that if an MBMS bearer is active it is also announced to the MCPTT client.

When using an MBMS bearer for application level control signalling, the announcement of an already active MBMS bearer could be part of the MCPTT group call setup, however that will have an impact on the call setup time.



**Figure 10.10.6.1-1: MBMS bearer decision flow**

On a high level the procedure outcome is to use unicast or broadcast bearers for the new MCPTT group call. For an enhanced group call setup procedure, the MBMS bearer may be used to trigger the use of a unicast bearer.

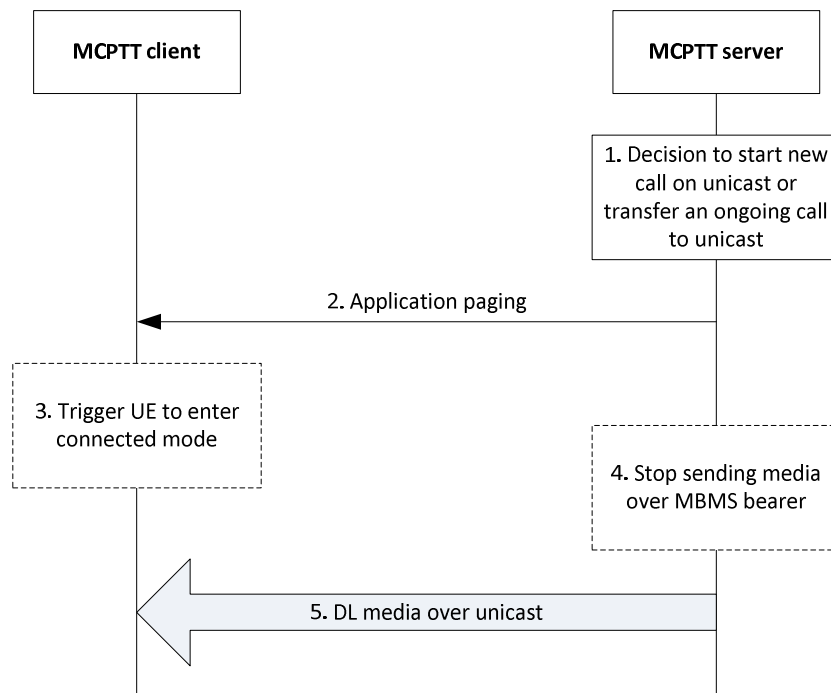
## 10.10.6.2 Procedure

The procedure in figure 10.10.6.2-1 can be used in the following scenarios:

- Initiate a new call on unicast bearer
- Transfer an ongoing call from broadcast bearer to unicast bearers

Pre-conditions:

- There must be an active and announced MBMS bearer



**Figure 10.10.6.2-1: Application paging over an MBMS bearer**

1. The MCPTT server initiates a new MCPTT group call on unicast or decides to transfer an ongoing call to unicast, or may initiate an MCPTT private call.
2. The MCPTT sends an application paging message on the MBMS bearer to inform the MCPTT client that the MCPTT server will initiate media transmission over a unicast bearer.

**NOTE:** The application paging message is sent with the assumption that there are UEs in idle mode. Furthermore, this message is an application level paging message and does not replace the normal paging procedure executed by EPC and RAN.

3. In the case that the UE is in idle mode the UE will initiate a service request to transfer the UE to connected mode.
4. The MCPTT server stops sending the media over an MBMS bearer. This step is only performed if transferring an ongoing call.
5. The MCPTT server initiates the media transmission over the unicast bearer.

Step 4-5 may be performed in parallel with step 2-3. Step 5 will trigger a normal paging in EPC and RAN if the client is still in idle mode.

## 10.11 MCPTT resource management (on-network)

### 10.11.1 General

Procedures for resource management are defined in subclause 10.11 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

### 10.11.2 Request for unicast resources at session establishment

Void

### 10.11.3 Request for modification of unicast resources

Void

### 10.11.4 Management of multicast media bearers

Void

### 10.11.5 Request for resources with shared priority

#### 10.11.5.1 General

Void

#### 10.11.5.2 Procedure

Void

## 10.12 MCPTT media plane transmissions with partner MCPTT systems (on-network)

The MCPTT user is able to receive MCPTT media services (e.g. group communication, private calls) from partner MCPTT systems in normal and roaming conditions. In this service delivery model, the media plane transmissions between the MCPTT UE of the user and the partner MCPTT system can be achieved directly or via the primary MCPTT system, selected by the PLMN operator's policy. The protocol used for media plane signalling is non-SIP like RTCP.

Figure 10.12-1 provides the procedure for media related signalling.

Figure 10.12-2 provide the procedure for the media transmission (directly) between MCPTT UE of the user and the partner MCPTT system.

Figure 10.12-3 provides the procedure for the media transmission (via the primary MCPTT system) between MCPTT UE of the user and the partner MCPTT system.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT group is defined in the partner MCPTT system, where the MCPTT client of user receives the MCPTT service.
2. An MCPTT group call is set up and active.
3. The partner MCPTT system is the group host MCPTT server that is hosting the MCPTT group. The corresponding floor control server manages the media corresponding to the group call.
4. Protocol used for signalling of media plane is non-SIP, it can be protocol like RTCP.
5. Media related signalling is sent via the primary MCPTT system.

6. The path for media between the MCPTT UE and partner MCPTT system has been selected to be sent directly to the partner MCPTT system or via the primary MCPTT system based on PLMN operator's policy.

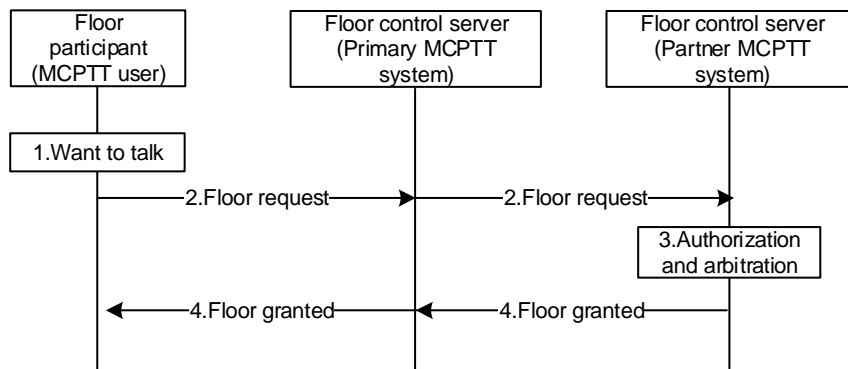


Figure 10.12-1: Media related signalling communication

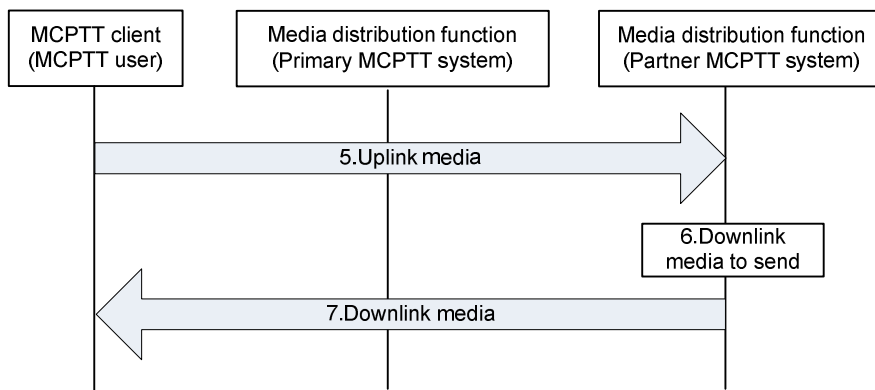


Figure 10.12-2: Media communication direct

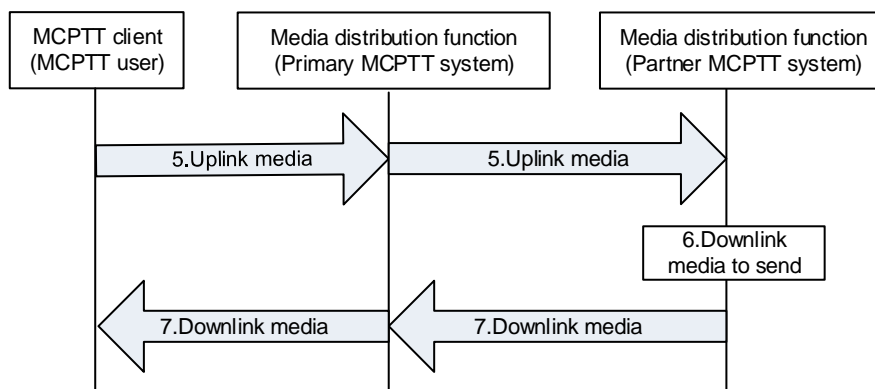


Figure 10.12-3: Media communication via primary MCPTT system

For media related signalling communication:

1. An MCPTT user wants to talk.
2. The floor participant corresponding to the MCPTT user sends a floor request message to floor control server (partner MCPTT system) to get the authorization and/or permission to talk.
3. The floor control server (partner MCPTT system) performs the authorization and arbitrates between requests that are in contention (i.e., floor control).

4. If the floor control server (partner MCPTT system) allows the floor participant to talk, a floor granted is provided with permission granted to talk.

For media communication:

5. The MCPTT client can now send uplink media data to the media distribution function of the MCPTT server (partner MCPTT system).
6. The media distribution function of the MCPTT server (partner MCPTT system) has downlink media data to transfer.
7. The media distribution function of the MCPTT server (partner MCPTT system) transfers the downlink media to the MCPTT client of the MCPTT user.

## 10.13 Location information (on-network)

The MCPTT system makes use of all of the procedures for location management as specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16], utilising the CSC-14 reference point between the location management client and location management server and the CSC-15 reference point between the MCPTT server and location management server.

- The MC service client is the MCPTT client;
- The MC service server is the MCPTT server;
- The MC service group is the MCPTT group;
- The MC service ID is the MCPTT ID; and
- The MC service group ID is the MCPTT group ID.

## 10.14 Ambient listening call

### 10.14.1 General

The ambient listening call is a type of a private MCPTT call that only allows a "listened to" user to transmit media to a "listening" user such that there is no indication on the MCPTT UE of the "listened to" user about the call and the media transmission.

NOTE 1: "listened to" user refers to the user who is transmitting media in an ambient listening call.

NOTE 2: "listening" user refers to the user who is receiving media in an ambient listening call.

There are two types of ambient listening call as below:

- Remotely initiated ambient listening is initiated by the authorized user (e.g., dispatcher) who wants to listen to another user. In this case, the "listened to" user is the called party, and shall automatically accept the call without causing any indication about the call and transmit the media to the "listening" user.
- Locally initiated ambient listening is initiated by an authorized user who wants another user to listen to the MCPTT UE communication. In this case, the "listened to" user is the calling party and shall automatically transmit the media to the "listening" user without causing any indication about the call processing and media transmission.

### 10.14.2 Information flows for ambient listening call

#### 10.14.2.1 Ambient listening call request

Table 10.14.2.1-1 describes the information flow ambient listening call request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.14.2.1-1: Ambient listening call request**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the "listening" user
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the "listened to" user
SDP offer	M	Media parameters of MCPTT client.
Ambient listening type	M	The ambient listening type indicates remotely initiated ambient listening call or locally initiated ambient listening call.

### 10.14.2.2 Ambient listening call response

Table 10.14.2.2-1 describes the information flow ambient listening call response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.14.2.2-1: Ambient listening call response**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the "listening" user
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the "listened to" user
SDP answer	M	Media parameters selected

### 10.14.2.3 Ambient listening call release request

Table 10.14.2.3-1 describes the information flow ambient listening call release request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.14.2.3-1: Ambient listening call release request**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the "listening" user
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the "listened to" user
Ambient listening type	M	The ambient listening type indicates a remotely initiated ambient listening call or a locally initiated ambient listening call.

### 10.14.2.4 Ambient listening call release response

Table 10.14.2.4-1 describes the information flow ambient listening call release response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.14.2.4-1: Ambient listening call release response**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the "listening" user
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the "listened to" user
Ambient listening type	M	The ambient listening type indicates a remotely initiated ambient listening call or a locally initiated ambient listening call.

### 10.14.2.5 Ambient listening call release notification

Table 10.14.2.5-1 describes the information flow ambient listening call release notification from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.14.2.5-1: Ambient listening call release notification**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the "listening" user
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the "listened to" user
Call release reason	M	The reason for call release by the MCPTT server
Ambient listening type	M	The ambient listening type indicates a remotely initiated ambient listening call or a locally initiated ambient listening call.

## 10.14.3 Ambient listening call procedures

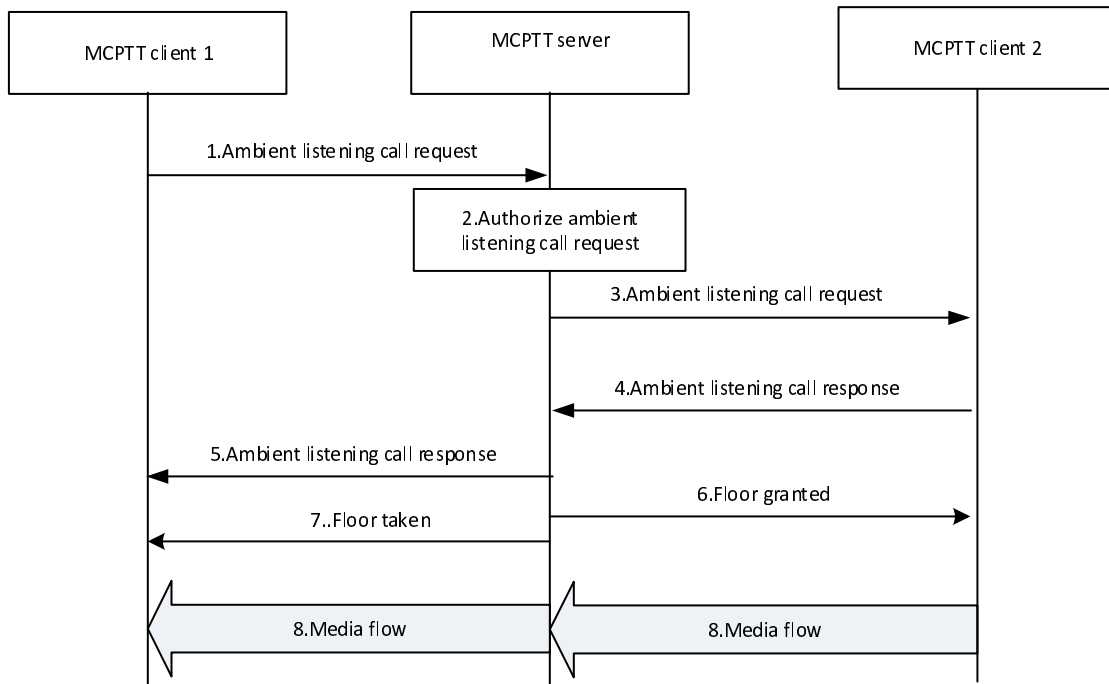
### 10.14.3.1 Remotely initiated ambient listening call setup

The MCPTT service provides the capability for an authorised user to initiate a remotely initiated ambient listening call at an MCPTT client.

Figure 10.14.3.1-1 illustrates the information flow for remotely initiated ambient listening call setup.

Pre-conditions:

- MCPTT client 1 is the client of the authorized user who is authorized to invoke a remotely initiated ambient listening call to be set up at the requested MCPTT client 2.
- MCPTT user 1 is the "listening" user at MCPTT client 1, and MCPTT user 2 is the "listened to" user at MCPTT client 2.



**Figure 10.14.3.1-1: Remotely initiated ambient listening call**

1. MCPTT client 1 initiates a remotely initiated ambient listening call by sending the ambient listening call request to the MCPTT server. The remotely initiated ambient listening call type is included.
2. The MCPTT server performs an authorization check for the authorized user 1 for the remotely initiated ambient listening call. If authorization fails, the MCPTT server provides a failure response to MCPTT client 1.
3. The MCPTT server sends the ambient listening call request to MCPTT client 2.  
NOTE: MCPTT client 2 does not provide any indication of the ambient listening call request to its user.
4. MCPTT client 2 returns the ambient listening call response to the MCPTT server.
5. MCPTT server provides an ambient listening call response to MCPTT client 1, indicating whether the call is set up successfully or not.
6. The floor control server of the MCPTT server then sends a floor granted to MCPTT client 2 according to the ambient listening type received in step 1.
7. Accordingly, the floor control server of the MCPTT server sends a floor taken to MCPTT client 1.
8. After receiving the floor granted message at the MCPTT client 2, the media is transmitted from MCPTT client 2 to MCPTT client 1.

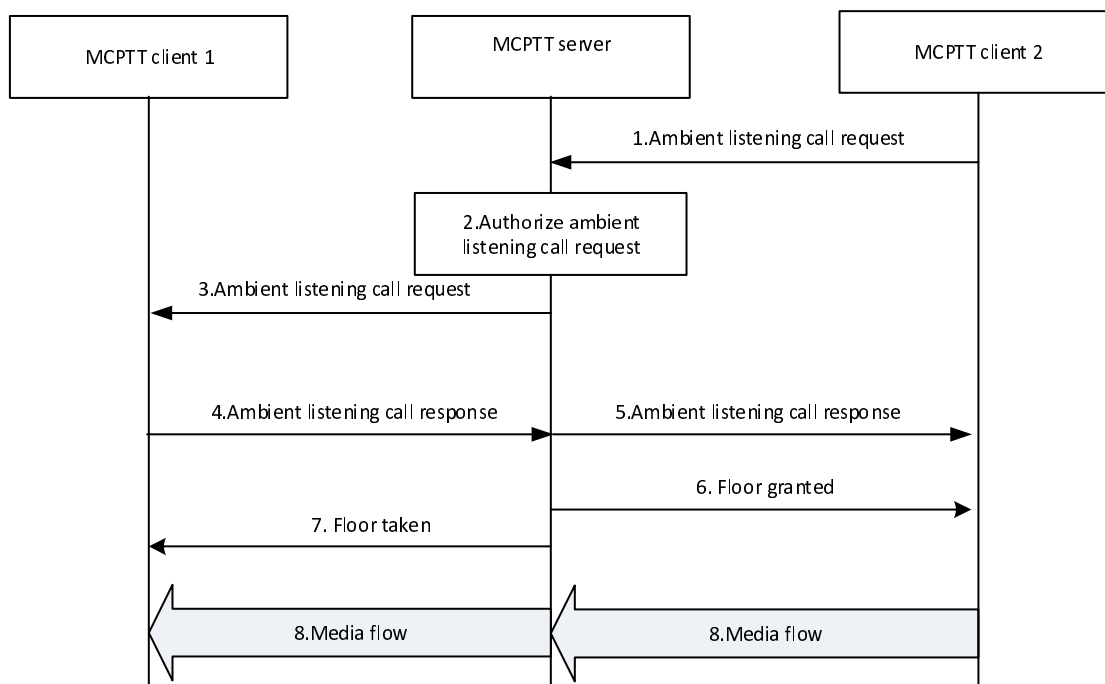
### 10.14.3.2 Locally initiated ambient listening call setup

The MCPTT service provides the capability for an authorised user to initiate a locally initiated ambient listening call at an MCPTT client.

Figure 10.14.3.2-1 illustrates the information flow for locally initiated ambient listening call setup.

Pre-conditions:

- MCPTT client 2 is the client of the authorized user who is authorized to invoke a locally initiated ambient listening call to be set up at the requested MCPTT client 1.
- MCPTT user 1 is the "listening" user at MCPTT client 1, and MCPTT user 2 is the "listened to" user at MCPTT client 2.



**Figure 10.14.3.2-1: Locally initiated ambient listening call**

1. MCPTT client 2 initiates a locally initiated ambient listening call by sending the ambient listening call request to the MCPTT server. The locally initiated ambient listening call type is included.
2. The MCPTT server performs an authorization check for the authorized user 2 for the locally initiated ambient listening call. If authorization fails, the MCPTT server provides a failure response to MCPTT client 2.
3. The MCPTT server sends the ambient listening call request to MCPTT client 1.
4. MCPTT client 1 returns the ambient listening call response to the MCPTT server.
5. MCPTT server provides an ambient listening call response to MCPTT client 2, indicating whether the call is set up successfully or not.
6. The floor control server of the MCPTT server then sends a floor granted to MCPTT client 2 according to the ambient listening type received in step 1.
7. Accordingly, the floor control server of the MCPTT server sends a floor taken to MCPTT client 1.
8. After receiving the floor granted message at the MCPTT client 2, the media is transmitted from MCPTT client 2 to MCPTT client 1.

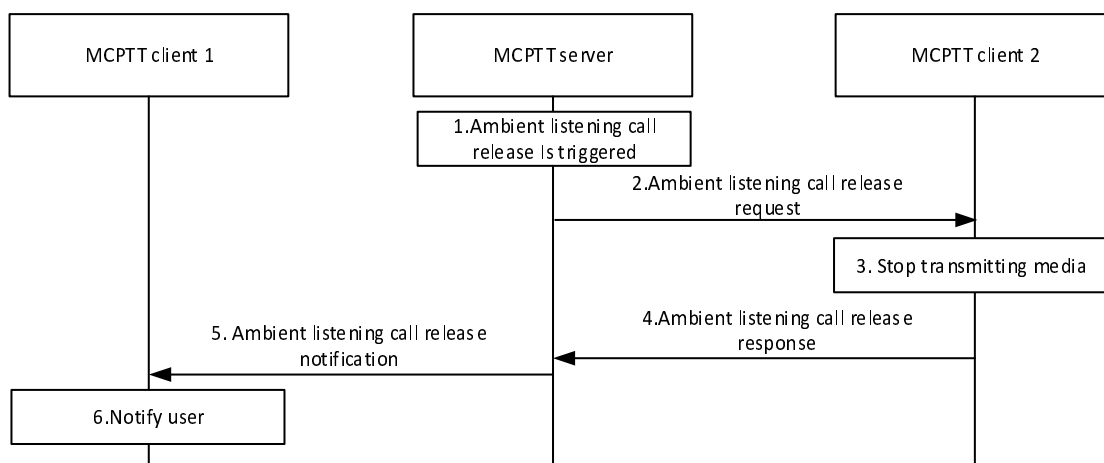
NOTE: MCPTT client 2 does not provide any indication of the ambient listening call request to its user.

### 10.14.3.3 Ambient listening call release – server initiated

Figure 10.14.3.3-1 illustrates the information flow for ambient listening call release – server initiated when triggered by the MCPTT administrator. This procedure is applied for both remotely initiated ambient listening call and the locally initiated ambient listening call.

Pre-conditions:

- MCPTT client 1 is the MCPTT client of the authorized user, who initiated the ambient listening call at MCPTT client 2.
- There is an ongoing ambient listening call between MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 1.
- MCPTT user 1 is the current user at MCPTT client 1 who is listening, and MCPTT user 2 is the current user at MCPTT client 2 who is being listened to.



**Figure 10.14.3.3-1: Ambient listening call release – server initiated**

1. The ambient listening call release is triggered by the MCPTT administrator or by one of the following events:
  - the MCPTT server receives MCPTT call requests towards MCPTT client 2; or
  - the MCPTT client 2 initiates MCPTT call requests;

2. The MCPTT server sends an ambient listening call release request to MCPTT client 2.
3. MCPTT client 2 stops transmitting media to MCPTT client 1.

NOTE: MCPTT client 2 does not provide any indication of the ambient listening call release to its user.

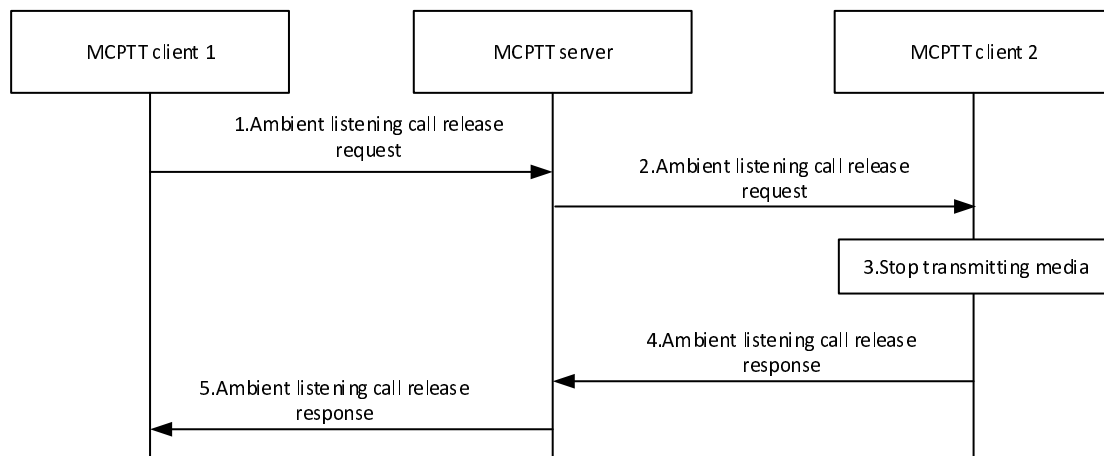
4. MCPTT client 2 provides an ambient listening call release response to the MCPTT server.
5. The MCPTT server sends an ambient listening call release notification to MCPTT client 1 together with a reason code identifying that the call was released.
6. MCPTT client 1 notifies the authorized user 1.

#### 10.14.3.4 Remotely initiated ambient listening call release – "listening" user initiated

Figure 10.14.3.4-1 illustrates the information flow for ambient listening call release – "listening" user initiated. This procedure is applied for both remotely initiated ambient listening call and the locally initiated ambient listening call.

Pre-conditions:

- MCPTT client 1 is the MCPTT client of the authorized user, who is authorized to release the ambient listening call at MCPTT client 2.
- There is an ongoing ambient listening call between MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 1.
- MCPTT user 1 is the "listening" user at MCPTT client 1, and MCPTT user 2 is the "listened to" user at MCPTT client 2.



**Figure 10.14.3.4-1: Ambient listening call release – "listening" user initiated**

1. The authorized user 1 at MCPTT client 1 initiates the ambient listening call release by sending an ambient listening call release request to the MCPTT server.
2. The MCPTT server provides an ambient listening call release request to MCPTT client 2.
3. MCPTT client 2 stops transmitting media to MCPTT client 1.

NOTE: MCPTT client 2 does not provide any indication of the ambient listening call release to its user.

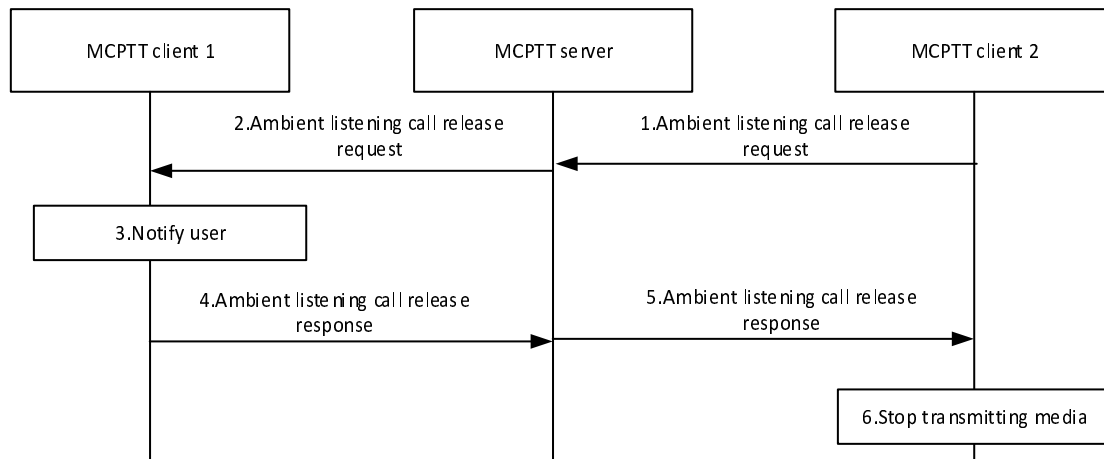
4. MCPTT client 2 provides an ambient listening call release response to the MCPTT server.
5. The MCPTT server provides the ambient listening call release response to MCPTT client 1.

### 10.14.3.5 Ambient listening call release – "listened to" user initiated

Figure 10.14.3.5-1 illustrates the information flow for ambient listening call release – "listened to" user initiated. This procedure is only applied for the locally initiated ambient listening call.

Pre-conditions:

- There is an ongoing ambient listening call between MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2.
- MCPTT user 1 is the "listening" user at MCPTT client 1, and MCPTT user 2 is the "listened to" user at MCPTT client 2.
- MCPTT client 2 is the MCPTT client of the authorized user, who is authorized to release the locally initiated ambient listening call at MCPTT client 2.



**Figure 10.14.3.5-1: Ambient listening call release – "listened to" user initiated**

1. The authorized user 2 at MCPTT client 2 initiates the ambient listening call release by sending an ambient listening call release request to the MCPTT server.
2. The MCPTT server provides an ambient listening call release request to MCPTT client 1.
3. The user 1 at MCPTT client 1 is notified about the ambient listening call release.
4. MCPTT client 1 provides an ambient listening call release response to the MCPTT server.
5. The MCPTT server provides the ambient listening call release response to MCPTT client 2.
6. MCPTT client 2 stops transmitting media to MCPTT client 1.

NOTE: MCPTT client 2 does not provide any indication of the ambient listening call release to its user.

## 10.15 First-to-answer call setup

### 10.15.1 Description

Figure 10.15.3-1 describes the basic procedure for the MCPTT client initiating MCPTT first-to-answer call. The flow may use a floor request in the MCPTT call request indicating that the originator will be given the floor when the call starts and eliminates the need for a separate initial floor request message during media plane establishment. Alternatively, the call initiation may be sent without the floor request, which allows the called party to request the floor first. For a MCPTT first-to-answer call without floor control, floor control is not established.

Figure 10.15.3-1 also describes the handling of private calls when a functional alias replaces the MCPTT ID as target address. A functional alias can be simultaneously used by more than one MCPTT user, i.e. multiple MCPTT clients can activate the same functional alias.

### 10.15.2 Information flows for first-to-answer call

#### 10.15.2.1 MCPTT first-to-answer call request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server)

Table 10.15.2.1-1 describes the information flow MCPTT first-to-answer call request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.15.2.1-1: MCPTT first-to-answer call request (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ID list (see NOTE)	O	The list of MCPTT IDs of the called party
Functional alias (see NOTE)	O	The functional alias of the called party
Use floor control indication	M	This element indicates whether floor control will be used for the private call.
SDP offer	O	Media parameters of MCPTT client.
Implicit floor request	O	An indication that the user is also requesting the floor.
Location information	O	Location of the calling party
NOTE: At least one identity shall be present. If both are present the MCPTT ID list shall be used to route the call request and the functional alias is just for information.		

### 10.15.2.2 MCPTT first-to-answer call request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client)

Table 10.15.2.2-1 describes the information flow MCPTT first-to-answer call request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.15.2.2-1: MCPTT first-to-answer call request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the called party
Use floor control indication	M	This element indicates whether floor control will be used for the private call.
SDP offer	M	Media parameters of MCPTT client.
Implicit floor request	O	An indication that the user is also requesting the floor.

### 10.15.2.3 MCPTT first-to-answer call response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server)

Table 10.15.2.3-1 describes the information flow MCPTT first-to-answer call response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.15.2.3-1: MCPTT first-to-answer call response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the called party
SDP answer	M	Media parameters selected

#### 10.15.2.4 MCPTT first-to-answer call response (MCPTT server to MCPTT client)

Table 10.15.2.4-1 describes the information flow MCPTT first-to-answer call response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.15.2.4-1: MCPTT first-to-answer call response (MCPTT server to MCPTT client) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the called party
SDP answer	M	Media parameters selected

#### 10.15.2.5 MCPTT first-to-answer call cancel request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client)

Table 10.15.2.5-1 describes the information flow MCPTT first-to-answer call cancel request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.15.2.5-1: MCPTT first-to-answer call cancel request (MCPTT server to MCPTT client) information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party

#### 10.15.2.6 MCPTT first-to-answer call cancel response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server)

Table 10.15.2.6-1 describes the information flow MCPTT first-to-answer call cancel response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.15.2.6-1: MCPTT first-to-answer call cancel response (MCPTT client to MCPTT server) information elements**

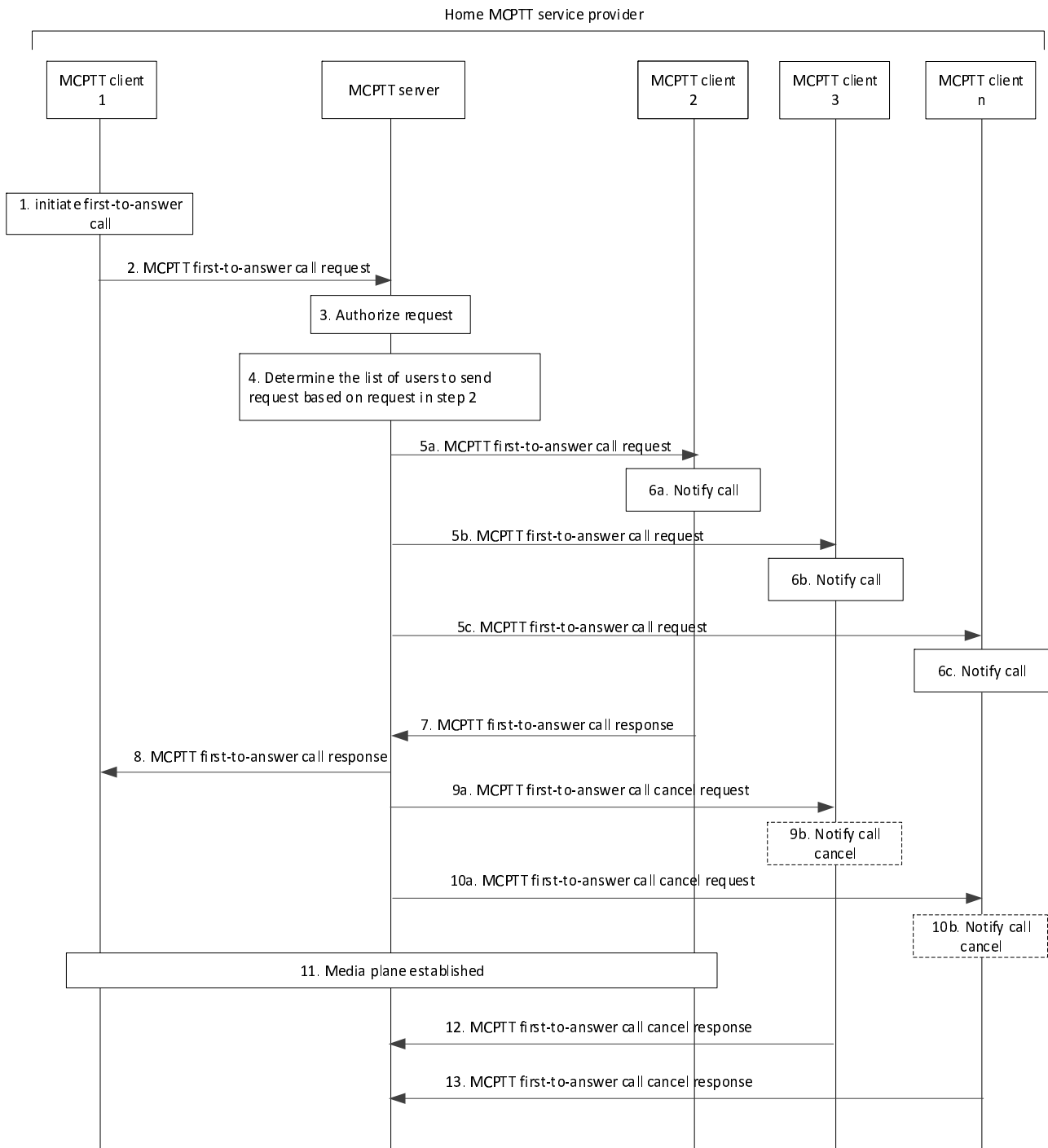
Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party

### 10.15.3 Procedure

All clients are served by the primary MCPTT service provider in figure 10.15.3-1.

Pre-conditions:

1. The calling MCPTT user has selected first-to-answer call.
2. MCPTT clients 1 to n are registered and their respective users, MCPTT user 1 to MCPTT user n, are authenticated and authorized to use the MCPTT service, as per procedure in subclause 10.2.
3. MCPTT clients 2 to n have activated the same functional alias.
4. The MCPTT server has subscribed to the MCPTT functional alias controlling server within the MC system for functional alias activation/de-activation updates.



**Figure 10.15.3-1: MCPTT first-to-answer call – MCPTT users in the same MCPTT system**

1. MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 would like to establish a MCPTT first-to-answer call indicating a set of potential target recipients or by calling a functional alias. For a MCPTT first-to-answer call with floor control, floor control is to be established. For first-to-answer call without floor control, both users will have the ability to transmit without floor arbitration.
2. MCPTT client 1 sends an MCPTT first-to-answer call request including a set of potential target recipients to the MCPTT server (via the SIP core as defined in 3GPP TS 23.228 [5]), using either a list of MCPTT IDs or a functional alias. The MCPTT first-to-answer call request contains the MCPTT ID and may contain the functional alias of originating user and an SDP offer containing one or more media types. The MCPTT first-to-answer call request may also contain a data element that indicates that MCPTT client 1 is requesting the floor, for a first-to-

answer call with floor control. The MCPTT client 1 includes a first-to-answer call indication that the call is to be established only to the first answering user.

3. The MCPTT server confirms that MCPTT users are authorized for the call and whether the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate a first-to-answer call. The MCPTT server checks whether the provided functional alias of the calling user, if present, can be used and has been activated for the MCPTT user. If a functional alias is present, the MCPTT server shall also check whether MCPTT client 1 is allowed to use the functional alias of MCPTT client 2 (to MCPTT client n) to setup a private call and whether MCPTT client 2 (to MCPTT client n) is (are) allowed to receive a private call from MCPTT client 1 using a functional alias.
4. The MCPTT server determines the list of MCPTT users to send MCPTT first-to-answer call request, based on a set of allowed potential target recipients obtained from the request from MCPTT client 1. Alternatively, when a functional alias is used as target address, the MCPTT server resolves the functional alias to a corresponding list of related MCPTT IDs of MCPTT client 2 to MCPTT client n who have activated the functional alias. The functional alias must have been activated to identify the MCPTT IDs of the called users.

NOTE 1: Based on some selection criteria (e.g. using the current location of the initiating user to determine the dispatchers that are responsible for the related geographic areas), the MCPTT server can send MCPTT first-to-answer call requests only to a sub-set of the MCPTT users that have activated the functional alias. The selection of the appropriate sub-set of MCPTT IDs is left to implementation.

5a, 5b, 5c. The MCPTT server includes information that it communicates using MCPTT service, offers the same media types or a subset of the media types contained in the initial received request and sends similar MCPTT first-to-answer call request to each potential target recipient, including the MCPTT ID and, if present, the functional alias of the calling MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1. If one or more called MCPTT users have registered to the MCPTT service with multiple MCPTT UEs and has designated the MCPTT UE for receiving the calls, then the incoming MCPTT first-to-answer call request is delivered only to the designated MCPTT UE. Otherwise MCPTT first-to-answer call request may be delivered to all the registered MCPTT UEs. If a functional alias is present and more than one MCPTT client has activated that functional alias, then the MCPTT server sends an MCPTT first-to-answer call request to each MCPTT client.

6a, 6b, 6c. The MCPTT users are alerted, regardless of the commencement mode.

7. MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2 accepted the call which causes MCPTT client 2 to send an MCPTT first-to-answer call response to the MCPTT server.

NOTE 2: MCPTT server does not divert MCPTT first-to-answer call to voicemail if MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2 has not accepted the incoming call.

8. The MCPTT server sends an MCPTT first-to-answer call response to MCPTT client 1 indicating that MCPTT user at MCPTT client 2 has accepted the call, including the accepted media parameters.

9a. The MCPTT server sends a MCPTT first-to-answer call cancel request to MCPTT client 3.

9b. Optionally, MCPTT client 3 notifies the user.

10a. The MCPTT server sends a MCPTT first-to-answer call cancel request to MCPTT client n.

10b. Optionally, MCPTT client n notifies the user.

11. The media plane for communication is established. Either user can transmit media individually when using floor control. For successful call establishment for first-to-answer call with floor request from MCPTT client 1, the floor participant associated with MCPTT client 1 is granted the floor initially. At the same time the floor participant associated with MCPTT client 2 is informed that the floor is taken. For a first-to-answer call without floor control both users are allowed to transmit simultaneously.

NOTE 3: Prior to media plane establishment, MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 set up a security association for the media, if end-to-end encryption is used for this call.

**Editor's note:** It is assumed that MCPTT client 1 initiates the set up as is done for private calls, but the details for the media security establishment are FFS and are in the scope of SA3. Results provided by SA3 may require changes in the procedure.

NOTE 4: The steps 9a, 10a and 11 can occur in any order and can also be performed in parallel.

12. MCPTT client 3 sends an MCPTT first-to-answer cancel call response.

13. MCPTT client n sends an MCPTT first-to-answer cancel call response.

## 10.16 Remotely initiated MCPTT call

### 10.16.1 General

A remotely initiated MCPTT call allows an authorized user to cause a remote MCPTT UE to initiate a call by itself, without its user explicitly initiating the call.

### 10.16.2 Information flows for remotely initiated MCPTT call

#### 10.16.2.1 Remotely initiated MCPTT call request

Table 10.16.2.1-1 describes the information flow remotely initiated MCPTT call request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and from the MCPTT server to MCPTT client.

**Table 10.16.2.1-1: remotely initiated MCPTT call request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party (remote)
Notification to remote user of remotely initiated call	M	Use to determine whether the called party (remote) receives any indication of the remotely initiated MCPTT call.
MCPTT ID	O (see NOTE)	For a remotely initiated MCPTT private call the MCPTT User ID to be called
MCPTT Group ID	O (see NOTE)	For a remotely initiated MCPTT group call to use.
Requested commencement mode	O	Requested commencement mode for the remotely initiated MCPTT private call.
Requested priority	O	Requested priority for the remotely initiated MCPTT private call or MCPTT group call.
NOTE: One and only one of these shall be present.		

#### 10.16.2.2 Remotely initiated MCPTT call response

Table 10.16.2.2-1 describes the information flow remotely initiated MCPTT call response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server and from the MCPTT server to MCPTT client.

**Table 10.16.2.2-1: Remotely initiated MCPTT call response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the called party
Result	M	Result of the remotely initiated MCPTT call request – success or fail.

### 10.16.3 Procedure

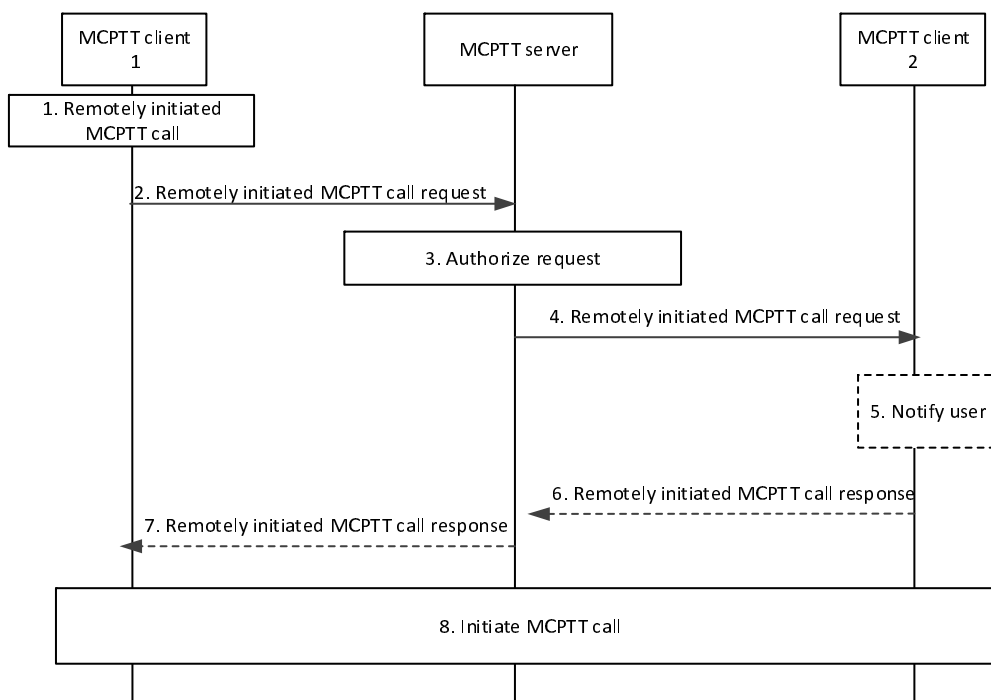
#### 10.16.3.1 Remotely initiated MCPTT call request

The remotely initiated MCPTT call request procedure includes the initial remotely initiated MCPTT call request from the MCPTT user to the remote UE and either the MCPTT private call procedures or the MCPTT group call procedures originating at the remote UE.

Procedures in figure 10.16.3.1-1 show the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT client initiating a remotely initiated MCPTT call request with the chosen MCPTT user.

Pre-conditions:

1. If the MCPTT user on MCPTT client 1 wants the resulting remotely initiated MCPTT call to be:
  - a. an MCPTT group call, then MCPTT user 2 on MCPTT client 2 is an affiliated MCPTT group member of the MCPTT group that is the target of the remotely initiated MCPTT call.
  - b. an MCPTT private call, then the MCPTT user 2 on MCPTT client 2 is permitted to initiate an MCPTT private call to the identified MCPTT user.



**Figure 10.16.3.1-1: Remotely initiated MCPTT call request**

1. MCPTT user on MCPTT client 1 initiates a remotely initiated MCPTT call request to the MCPTT user of MCPTT client 2.
2. MCPTT client 1 sends a remotely initiated MCPTT call request towards the MCPTT server.
3. MCPTT server checks whether the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate a remotely initiated MCPTT call request. If the resulting of this request is to initiate a group call, MCPTT client 1 is authorized to remotely initiate the MCPTT call request, and if MCPTT client 2 is a member of the group, the MCPTT server

implicitly affiliates the MCPTT user 2 on MCPTT client 2 to the MCPTT group if the MCPTT client 2 is not already affiliated and notifies the MCPTT client 2 of this affiliation change.

4. If authorized, MCPTT server sends the corresponding remotely initiated MCPTT call request towards the MCPTT client 2.
5. Based on the received information the receiving MCPTT client 2 may notify the user of the remotely initiated MCPTT call request.
6. Optionally the receiving MCPTT client 2 sends a remotely initiated MCPTT call response to the MCPTT server.
7. After receiving the remotely initiated MCPTT call response from MCPTT client 2, the MCPTT server informs the MCPTT client 1 about successful remotely initiated MCPTT call request.

NOTE 1: Step 6 and step 7 might not be sent, since it could be determined that the remotely initiated MCPTT call was successful by receiving the MCPTT call initiated by MCPTT client 2.

8. Based on the received information the MCPTT client 2 initiates an MCPTT call (either an MCPTT group call or an MCPTT private call) using the normal MCPTT call establishment procedures (10.6.2.3.1.1.2 or 10.7.2.2) with implicit floor request and other call set up parameters if received in the remotely initiated call request. The MCPTT call request may include the additional information such as indication of whether the call initiation is due to receiving of remotely initiated call request.

NOTE 2: Step 6 and step 7 are received in this order. However, step 6 or step 7 or both might occur before or after step 8.

NOTE 3: The received information can have call setup related information, such as requested application priority level, commencement mode, etc.

9. If the remotely initiated call is a group call, then when the ongoing MCPTT group call is terminated, the MCPTT server de-affiliates the MCPTT user 2 on MCPTT client 2 from the MCPTT group if MCPTT client 2 is implicitly affiliated as defined in the step 3 above (the de-affiliation is not shown in the figure for simplicity).

The result of these procedures is an on-going MCPTT (group or private) call which includes MCPTT client 1.

## 10.17 Support for multiple devices

### 10.17.1 General

An MCPTT user may be authorized to use the MCPTT service from multiple MCPTT UEs as per the procedure in subclause 10.2.

If an MCPTT server receives a service authorization request for an MCPTT user who is previously MCPTT service authorized on another MCPTT UE, then the MCPTT server shall process this service authorization request as described in subclause 10.2. In the MCPTT service authorization response to the MCPTT user, the MCPTT server shall also indicate that the MCPTT user is already MCPTT service authorized from another MCPTT UE.

**Editor's Note: How to log off remotely from MCPTT clients on one or more other MCPTT UEs that the MCPTT user is already MCPTT service authorized from is FFS.**

## 10.18 Subscription and notification for functional alias

### 10.18.1 General

The MCPTT service shall support the procedures and related information flows as specified in subclauses 10.13.10 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [5] with the following clarifications:

- The MC service client is the MCPTT client;
- The MC service server is the MCPTT server;

## 10.18.2 Void

## 10.18.3 Void

# 10.19 Ad hoc group call

## 10.19.1 General

This subclause contains procedures for ad hoc group call across a one or more MCPTT systems, and associated functions such as emergency call, Imminent peril call, broadcast call and others.

The ad hoc group calls can use the participants list provided by either an initiator of the call or MCPTT server. The MCPTT server can use the criteria provided by the initiator of the call to determine the participants list along with its own criteria or local policies. The resulting ad hoc group uses the configuration of a separate preconfigured MCPTT group.

NOTE 1: A preconfigured group which is intended only to provide configuration for the ad hoc group is identified by a parameter in the group configuration described in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

The preconfigured MCPTT group that provides the configuration is not used for the MCPTT group communication, it only provides configuration for one or more adhoc group calls. The MCPTT group ID of the ad hoc group call is provided by the MCPTT server when the ad hoc group call is originated. In order to establish security context for the end-to-end secured ad hoc group call, the security related information is used from this preconfigured group.

NOTE 2: The configurations defined for the adhoc group call in user profile and service configuration document as described in the Annex A.3 and A.5 is applicable only for single MCPTT system.

## 10.19.2 Information flows

### 10.19.2.1 Ad hoc group call request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.19.2.1-1 describes the information flow ad hoc group call request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.19.2.1-1 Ad hoc group call request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ad hoc group ID (see NOTE 1)	O	The MCPTT group ID to be associated with the ad hoc group communication
Encryption supported (see NOTE 2)	O	Indicates whether this ad hoc group call supports end-to-end encryption
MCPTT ID list (see NOTE 3, NOTE 6, NOTE 7)	O	MCPTT IDs of the participants being invited for the ad hoc group call
SDP offer	M	Offered Media parameters
Implicit floor request (see NOTE 4)	O	When originating client requests the floor, this element shall be included
Broadcast indicator (see NOTE 5)	O	Indicates that the ad hoc group call request is for a broadcast ad hoc group call
Imminent peril indicator (see NOTE 5)	O	Indicates that the ad hoc group call request is an MCPTT imminent peril ad hoc group call
Emergency Indicator (see NOTE 5)	O	Indicates that the ad hoc group call request is an MCPTT emergency ad hoc group call
MCPTT ID list (see NOTE 3)	O	List of participants required to acknowledge the ad hoc group call before start of the audio transmission
Location information	O	Location of the calling party.
Criteria for determining the participants (see NOTE 6, NOTE 7)	O	Carries the details of criteria or meaningful label identifying the criteria or the combination of both which will be used by the MCPTT server for determining the participants e.g., it can be a location based criteria to invite participants in a particular area
Requested priority	O	Application priority level requested for this group call
<p>NOTE 1: If this information element is not included, the MCPTT server assigns an MCPTT ad hoc group ID to be used for the ad hoc group communication. This information element is returned to the calling party to use in the ad hoc group communication. If the request follows an ad hoc group for emergency alert, then this element must be present.</p> <p>NOTE 2: This information element is present and set to true only if this ad hoc group call is encrypted. When the ad hoc group call is initiated with participants provided by the initiator this acts as an indicator that subsequent requests follow targeting the individual participants and carrying the relevant key material. If this information element is set to false or not present, then this ad hoc group call is unencrypted.</p> <p>NOTE 3: This element is included only when the originating client sends the list of participants.</p> <p>NOTE 4: This element is included only when the originating client requests the floor.</p> <p>NOTE 5: If used, only one of these information elements is present.</p> <p>NOTE 6: Only one of these information elements is present.</p> <p>NOTE 7: If the request follows an ad hoc group for emergency alert, then this element is not present.</p>		

### 10.19.2.2 Ad hoc group call request return (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.19.2.2-1 describes the information flow ad hoc group call request return from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client. This response could be intermediate response to provide the server assigned MCPTT ad hoc group ID.

**Table 10.19.2.2-1 Ad hoc group call request return information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ad hoc group ID (see NOTE)	O	The MCPTT group ID to be associated with the ad hoc group call which is either provided by the group call initiator or assigned by the MCPTT server. This information element shall be present if the authorization result is success.
Pre-configured group ID (see NOTE)	O	The preconfigured MCPTT group ID whose group configuration is to be used for the ad hoc group call (e.g. information for end-to-end security).
Authorization result	M	Indicate if authorization is success or failure
NOTE: These IEs are included only when the Authorization Result IE indicates authorization is successful.		

### 10.19.2.3 Ad hoc group call request (MCPTT server – group host MCPTT server)

Table 10.19.2.3-1 describes the information flow ad hoc group call request between the MCPTT server and the group host MCPTT server.

**Table 10.19.2.3-1: Ad hoc group call request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID to be associated with the ad hoc group call
MCPTT ID list (see NOTE 1, NOTE 3)	O	MCPTT IDs of the participants being invited for the ad hoc group call
SDP offer	M	Offered Media parameters of MCPTT server
Implicit floor request (see NOTE 4)	O	Indicates that the originating client requests the floor
Broadcast indicator (see NOTE 2)	O	Indicates that the ad hoc group call request is for a broadcast ad hoc group call
Imminent peril indicator (see NOTE 2)	O	Indicates that the ad hoc group call request is an MCPTT imminent peril ad hoc group call
Emergency Indicator (see NOTE 2)	O	Indicates that the ad hoc group call request is an MCPTT emergency ad hoc group call
Preconfigured MCPTT group ID	O	Group identity whose configuration is to be applied for this ad hoc group call.
Criteria for determining the participants (see NOTE 3)	O	Carries the details of criteria or meaningful label identifying the criteria or the combination of both which will be used by the MCPTT server for determining the participants e.g., it can be a location based criteria to invite participants in a particular area
Requested priority	O	Application priority level requested for this group call
NOTE 1: This element is included only when the originating client sends the list of participants. NOTE 2: If used, only one of these information elements is present. NOTE 3: Only one of these information elements is present. NOTE 4: This information element shall be included only when the originating client requests the floor.		

NOTE: Whether the server-to-server message is needed in a call request is out of scope of the present document.

#### 10.19.2.4 Ad hoc group call request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.19.2.4-1 describes the information flow ad hoc group call request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.19.2.4-1: Ad hoc group call request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
MCPTT ID	M	The identity of the MCPTT user towards which the request is sent
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID to be associated with the ad hoc group call
SDP offer	M	Offered Media parameters of MCPTT server
Broadcast indicator (see NOTE)	O	Indicates that the ad hoc group call request is for a broadcast ad hoc group call
Imminent peril indicator (see NOTE)	O	Indicates that the ad hoc group call request is an MCPTT imminent peril ad hoc group call
Emergency Indicator (see NOTE)	O	Indicates that the ad hoc group call request is an MCPTT emergency ad hoc group call
Preconfigured MCPTT group ID	O	Group identity whose configuration is to be applied for this ad hoc group call.
NOTE: If used, only one of these information elements is present.		

### 10.19.2.5 Ad hoc group call response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.19.2.5-1 describes the information flow ad hoc group call response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.19.2.5-1 Ad hoc group call response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the calling party
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the calling party
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID associated with the ad hoc group call
SDP answer	O	Media parameters selected and present if the Result is success.
Result	M	Result of the group call request (success or failure)

### 10.19.2.6 Ad hoc group call response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.19.2.6-1 describes the information flow ad hoc group call response between the MCPTT servers.

**Table 10.19.2.6-1 Ad hoc group call response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the target MCPTT user
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the target MCPTT user
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID associated with the ad hoc group call
SDP answer	O	Media parameters selected and present if the Result is success.
Result	M	Result of the ad hoc group call request (success or failure)

NOTE: Whether the server-to-server message is needed in a call response is out of scope of the present document.

### 10.19.2.7 Ad hoc group call response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.19.2.7-1 describes the information flow ad hoc group call response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.19.2.7-1 Ad hoc group call response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the target MCPTT user
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the target MCPTT user
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID associated with the ad hoc group call
SDP answer	O	Media parameters selected and present if the Result is success.
Result	M	Result of the ad hoc group call request (success or failure)

### 10.19.2.8 Ad hoc group call release request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.19.2.8-1 describes the information flow ad hoc group call release request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.19.2.8-1 Ad hoc group call release request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the ad hoc group call participant
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the ad hoc group call participant
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the ad hoc group call on which call is released

### 10.19.2.9 Ad hoc group call release response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.19.2.9-1 describes the information flow ad hoc group call release response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.19.2.9-1 Ad hoc group call release response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the ad hoc group call participant
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the ad hoc group call participant
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of the ad hoc group call that is released

### 10.19.2.10 Ad hoc group call notify (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.19.2.10-1 describes the information flow ad hoc group call notify from MCPTT server to MCPTT client.

**Table 10.19.2.10-1: Ad hoc group call notify**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of ad hoc group call participant
Functional alias	O	The associated functional alias of the MCPTT user of the ad hoc group call participant
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID associated with the ad hoc group call
MCPTT ID list	O	The list of the invited MCPTT users who did not acknowledge the ad hoc group call request within a configured time or the list of the invited MCPTT users who acknowledged the ad hoc group call request and joined or the list of the MCPTT users who joined or left the ongoing MCPTT ad hoc group call.

### 10.19.2.11 Modify ad hoc group call participants request (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.19.2.11-1 describes the information flow Modify ad hoc group call participants request from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.19.2.11-1: Modify ad hoc group call participants request**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the requesting MCPTT user who is authorized to modify the ad hoc group call participants
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the requesting MCPTT user who is authorized to modify the ad hoc group call participants
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of ad hoc group call whose participants needs to be modified
MCPTT ID list (see NOTE)	O	List of additional MCPTT users to be added to the on-going ad hoc group call
MCPTT ID list (see NOTE)	O	List of MCPTT users to be removed from the on-going ad hoc group call
NOTE: Either one or both of these information elements is present		

### 10.19.2.12 Modify ad hoc group call participants response (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.19.2.12-1 describes the information flow Modify ad hoc group call participants response from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.19.2.12-1: Modify Ad hoc group call participants response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the requesting MCPTT user who is authorized to modify the ad hoc group call participants
Functional alias	O	The functional alias of the requesting MCPTT user who is authorized to modify the ad hoc group call participants
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of ad hoc group call whose participants needs to be modified
Result	M	Result of the modify ad hoc group call participants request (success of failure)
MCPTT ID list	O	List of MCPTT users who are not allowed to be added to the on-going ad hoc group call. This list is provided if the operation is partially success.

### 10.19.2.13 Ad hoc group call leave request (MCPTT server – MCPTT client)

Table 10.19.2.13-1 describes the information flow ad hoc group call leave request from the MCPTT server to the MCPTT client.

**Table 10.19.2.13-1 Ad hoc group call leave request information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the ad hoc group call participant leaving the call
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of ad hoc group call on which call is on-going
Reason to leave	O	Carries the reason of why the MCPTT client is being asked to leave the ongoing ad hoc group call

### 10.19.2.14 Ad hoc group call leave response (MCPTT client – MCPTT server)

Table 10.19.2.14-1 describes the information flow Ad hoc group call leave response from the MCPTT client to the MCPTT server.

**Table 10.19.2.14-1 Ad hoc group call leave response information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ID	M	The MCPTT ID of the ad hoc group call participant leaving the call
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID of ad hoc group call on which call is on-going

### 10.19.2.15 Ad hoc group call add user notification (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.19.2.15 -1 describes the information flow Ad hoc group call add user notification from one MCPTT server to another MCPTT server. This notification is to provide the list of MCPTT IDs meeting the criteria specified in the ad hoc group communication get userlist request from one MCPTT server to another MCPTT server.

**Table 10.19.2.15-1 Ad hoc group call add user notification information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID associated with the ad hoc group communication
MCPTT ID list	M	List of MCPTT IDs meeting the criteria specified in the ad hoc group communication get userlist

### 10.19.2.16 Ad hoc group call remove user notification (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.19.2.16-1 describes the information flow Ad hoc group call remove user notification from one MCPTT server to another MCPTT server. This notification is to provide the list of MCPTT IDs no longer meeting the criteria specified in the ad hoc group communication get userlist request from one MCPTT server to another MCPTT server.

**Table 10.19.2.16-1 Ad hoc group call remove user notification information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID associated with the ad hoc group communication
MCPTT ID list	M	List of MCPTT IDs no longer meeting the criteria specified in the ad hoc group communication get userlist

### 10.19.2.17 Ad hoc group call release notification (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.19.17 -1 describes the information flow Ad hoc group call release notification from one MCPTT server to another MCPTT server. This notification is to indicate to stop evaluating the criteria to determine the participants list if another MCPTT server is having the criteria specified in the ad hoc group communication get userlist request.

**Table 10.19.17-1 Ad hoc group call release notification information elements**

Information Element	Status	Description
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The MCPTT group ID associated with the ad hoc group communication

### 10.19.2.18 Ad hoc group call get userlist (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.19.2.18-1 describes the information flow ad hoc group call get userlist between MCPTT servers.

**Table 10.19.2.18-1: Ad hoc group call get userlist**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The associated MCPTT group ID of the ad hoc group call
Criteria for determining the participants	M	Carries the details of criteria or meaningful label identifying the criteria or the combination of both which will be used by the MCPTT server for determining the participants e.g., it can be a location based criteria to invite participants in a particular area

### 10.19.2.19 Ad hoc group call get userlist response (MCPTT server – MCPTT server)

Table 10.19.2.19-1 describes the information flow ad hoc group call get userlist response between MCPTT servers.

**Table 10.19.2.19-1: Ad hoc group call get userlist response**

Information element	Status	Description
MCPTT ad hoc group ID	M	The associated MCPTT group ID of the ad hoc group call
MCPTT ID list	M	List of MCPTT IDs meeting the criteria specified in the ad hoc group call get userlist

## 10.19.3 Procedures

### 10.19.3.1 Ad hoc group call procedures in single MCPTT system

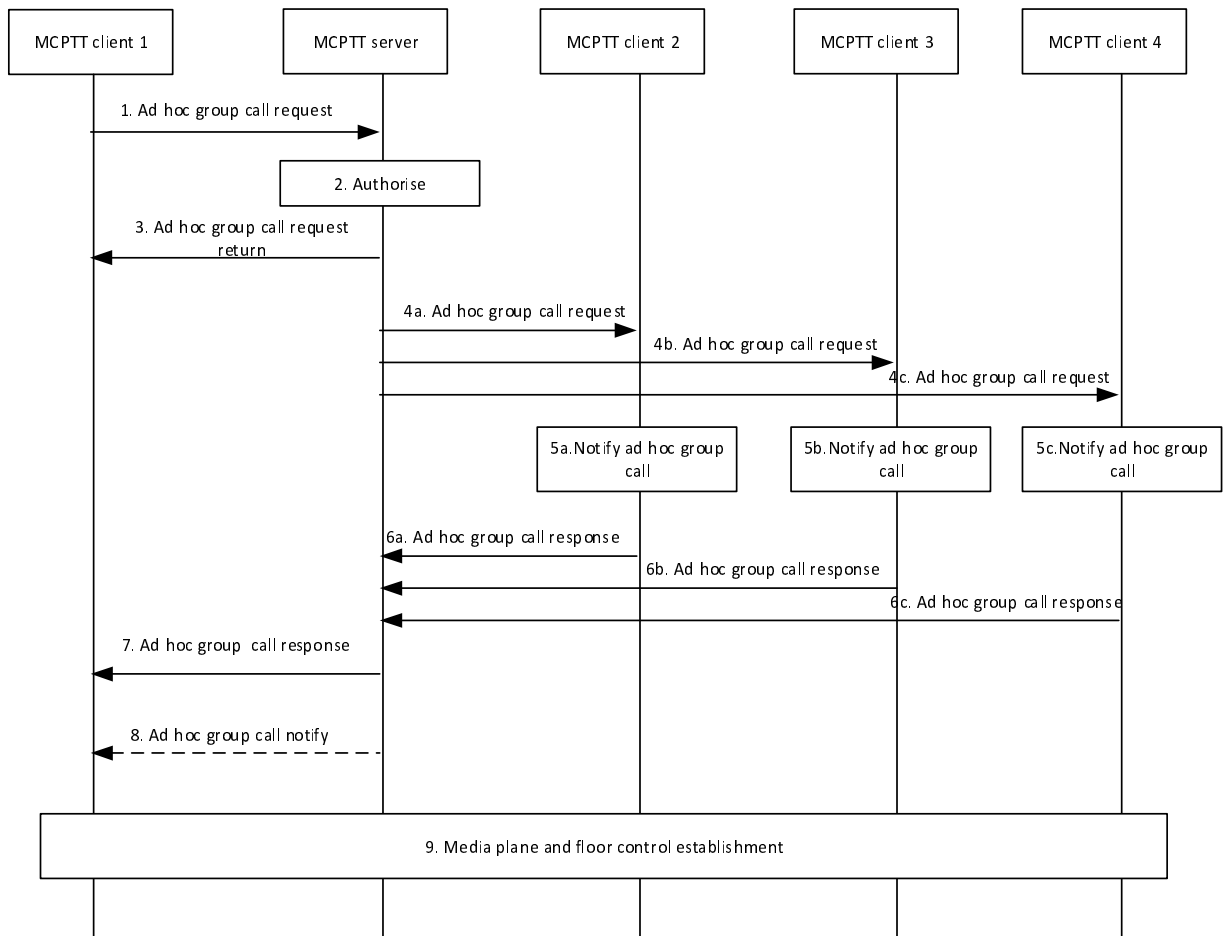
#### 10.19.3.1.1 Ad hoc group call setup

Figure 10.19.3.1.1-1 below illustrates the ad hoc group call setup procedure initiated by an authorized user.

Pre-conditions:

1. The authorized user at MCPTT client 1 wants to invite MCPTT users at MCPTT client 2, MCPTT client 3 and MCPTT client 4 for the ad hoc group call and is aware of the MCPTT IDs of the participants or to invite the ad hoc group member if the ad hoc group call follows an ad hoc group emergency alert, the MCPTT client 1 is aware of the ad hoc group ID.
2. Number of participants being invited for the ad hoc group call is within the limit.
3. End-to-End encryption is supported for this ad hoc group call.
4. The pre-configured group identity and pre-configured group configuration to be used for an ad hoc group have been preconfigured in MCPTT client and other participants of ad hoc group have also received the relevant security related information to allow them to communicate in an ad hoc group communication.

NOTE 1: Selection of MCPTT IDs of the participants can be manual or from the user profile configuration data or by any other means. This is left for the implementation.



**Figure 10.19.3.1.1-1: Ad hoc group call setup**

1. User at MCPTT client 1 would like to initiate an ad hoc group call. The MCPTT client 1 initiates the ad hoc group call by sending the ad hoc group call request containing the list of participants or an ad hoc group ID from an ad hoc group emergency alert to the MCPTT server. Encryption supported information element shall be set to true since end-to-end encryption is supported. An SDP offer containing the MCPTT client media parameters is included. If there is a floor request to transmit, then the ad hoc group call request contains an indication of an implicit floor request. If the MCPTT user of MCPTT client 1 has selected a functional alias, then the ad hoc group call request contains that functional alias. If the ad hoc group call request contains an implicit floor request it may also include location information.

If the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 initiates an MCPTT emergency ad hoc group call or the MCPTT emergency state is already set for the MCPTT client 1 (due to a previously triggered MCPTT emergency alert):

- i. the MCPTT ad hoc group call request shall contain an emergency indicator;
  - ii. if the MCPTT emergency state is not set already, MCPTT client 1 sets its MCPTT emergency state. The MCPTT emergency state of MCPTT client 1 is retained until explicitly cancelled by the user of MCPTT client 1.
2. If the ad hoc group call is supported, the MCPTT server verifies whether the user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate an ad hoc group call. If not authorized, the MCPTT server rejects the ad hoc group call request as specified in the step 3. The MCPTT server accepts the ad hoc group call request if the ad hoc group call is supported and authorized. If authorised, it validates whether the number of invited participants is within the configured limit before proceeding with the call setup.

If functional alias is present, the MCPTT server checks whether the provided functional alias allowed to be used and has been activated for the user.

If location information was included in the ad hoc group call request, the MCPTT server checks the privacy policy of the MCPTT user to decide if the location information of MCPTT client 1 can be provided to other users on the call (refer to Annex A.3 "Authorisation to provide location information to other MCPTT users on a call when talking").

If an emergency indicator is present in the received MCPTT ad hoc group call request, the MCPTT ad hoc group is considered to be in the in-progress emergency state until this ad hoc group call is terminated; and

If an imminent peril indicator is present in the received MCPTT ad hoc group call request, the MCPTT ad hoc group is considered to be in the in-progress imminent peril state until this ad hoc group call is terminated.

If the MC service users' information received in step 1 does not contain an ad hoc group ID from an ad hoc group emergency alert, the MCPTT server forms the ad hoc group by using MCPTT users' information received in step 1, determines the preconfigured group to be used for the configuration of the ad hoc group and assigns a MC service group ID for the newly formed ad hoc group. If no MC service ad hoc group ID was included in the ad hoc group call request of step 1, or if the provided MC service ad hoc group ID is not accepted by the MC service server, the MCPTT server assigns a MCPTT group ID for the newly formed ad hoc group.

The MCPTT server considers the ad hoc group call participants as implicitly affiliated to the ad hoc group.

3. The MCPTT server shall send the ad hoc group call request return message to MCPTT client 1 containing the below:
  - i. The MCPTT ad hoc group ID either generated by the MCPTT server or provided by the MCPTT client 1 if the ad hoc group ID is from an ad hoc group emergency alert (only included when the ad hoc group call is authorized);
  - ii. The group ID of the pre-configured group to be used for the ad hoc group call (only included when the ad hoc group call is authorized); and
  - iii. Result of whether the ad hoc group call is authorized or not.

If the ad hoc group call request is not authorized, the MCPTT server and MCPTT client 1 shall not proceed with the rest of the steps.

- 4a-4c. The MCPTT server sends the ad hoc group call requests towards the MCPTT clients of the invited users based on step 1. While sending the ad hoc group call requests, the MCPTT server shall remove the information elements that are not required to be conveyed to the target MCPTT clients (e.g. MCPTT ID list of the users who are required to acknowledge)

- 5a-5c. The receiving MCPTT clients notify their corresponding MCPTT user about the incoming ad hoc group call request with the information of the MCPTT group ID for the ad hoc group.

- 6a-6c. The receiving MCPTT clients may accept or reject the ad hoc group call requests and send ad hoc group call responses to the MCPTT server. The response may also contain a functional alias of the responding MCPTT user, which is verified (valid and activated for the user) by the MCPTT server.

7. The MCPTT server sends the ad hoc group call response to MCPTT client 1 through the signalling path to inform about successful call establishment.

NOTE 2: Steps 5 to step 7 can start to occur before all of step 4 is completed since the MCPTT server do not require to wait for the previous ad hoc group call request to complete before sending the ad hoc group request to another participant.

8. If the initiating MCPTT user requires the acknowledgement from the invited MCPTT users, and the required MCPTT users do not acknowledge the call setup within a configured time (the "acknowledged call setup timeout"), then the MCPTT server may proceed with or abandon the call and then notify the initiating MCPTT user that the acknowledgements did not include all required members according to ad hoc group call policy from the user profile configuration. The MCPTT server may notify the initiating MCPTT user of all MCPTT users who did not acknowledge the ad hoc group call request within the configured time. This notification may be sent to the initiating MCPTT user by the MCPTT server more than once during the call when MCPTT users join or leave the MCPTT ad hoc group call.

9. MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2, MCPTT client 3 and MCPTT client 4 establish media plane and floor control resources.

NOTE 3: Step 9 can occur any time following step 7 if the conditions to proceed with the call are met.

### 10.19.3.1.2 Release ad hoc group call

The procedure focuses on the case where the MCPTT server releases an ongoing MCPTT ad hoc group call for all the participants of that ad hoc group call, since at least one of the release conditions are met e.g., due to hang time expiry, last participant leaving, second last participant leaving, initiator leaving.

Figure 10.19.3.1.2-1 below illustrates the signalling control plane procedure for the MCPTT server initiating termination an ongoing ad hoc group call.



**Figure 10.19.3.1.2-1: Release ad hoc group call**

1. It is assumed that MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1, client 2 and client 3 are already part of the ongoing ad hoc group call.
2. MCPTT server would like to release the MCPTT ad hoc group call which is ongoing e.g., due to hang time expiry, last participant leaving, second last participant leaving, initiator leaving.
3. MCPTT server identifies the participants of the ongoing ad hoc group call and generates ad hoc group call release request to release ongoing session. The MCPTT server cancels the in-progress emergency state or in-progress imminent peril state of the ad hoc group if the ad hoc group call is an emergency or imminent peril call respectively.

4. MCPTT server sends ad hoc group call release request via SIP core towards each participant of the ongoing ad hoc group call.
5. MCPTT users are notified about the release of the ad hoc group call.
6. MCPTT client(s) receiving ad hoc group call release request, acknowledge towards the MCPTT server by sending an ad hoc group call release response.

NOTE: If the initiator of the ad hoc group call does not supply the participants list, the MCPTT client(s) may choose to store the list of participants for easy re-initiation of another ad hoc group call with the same participants.

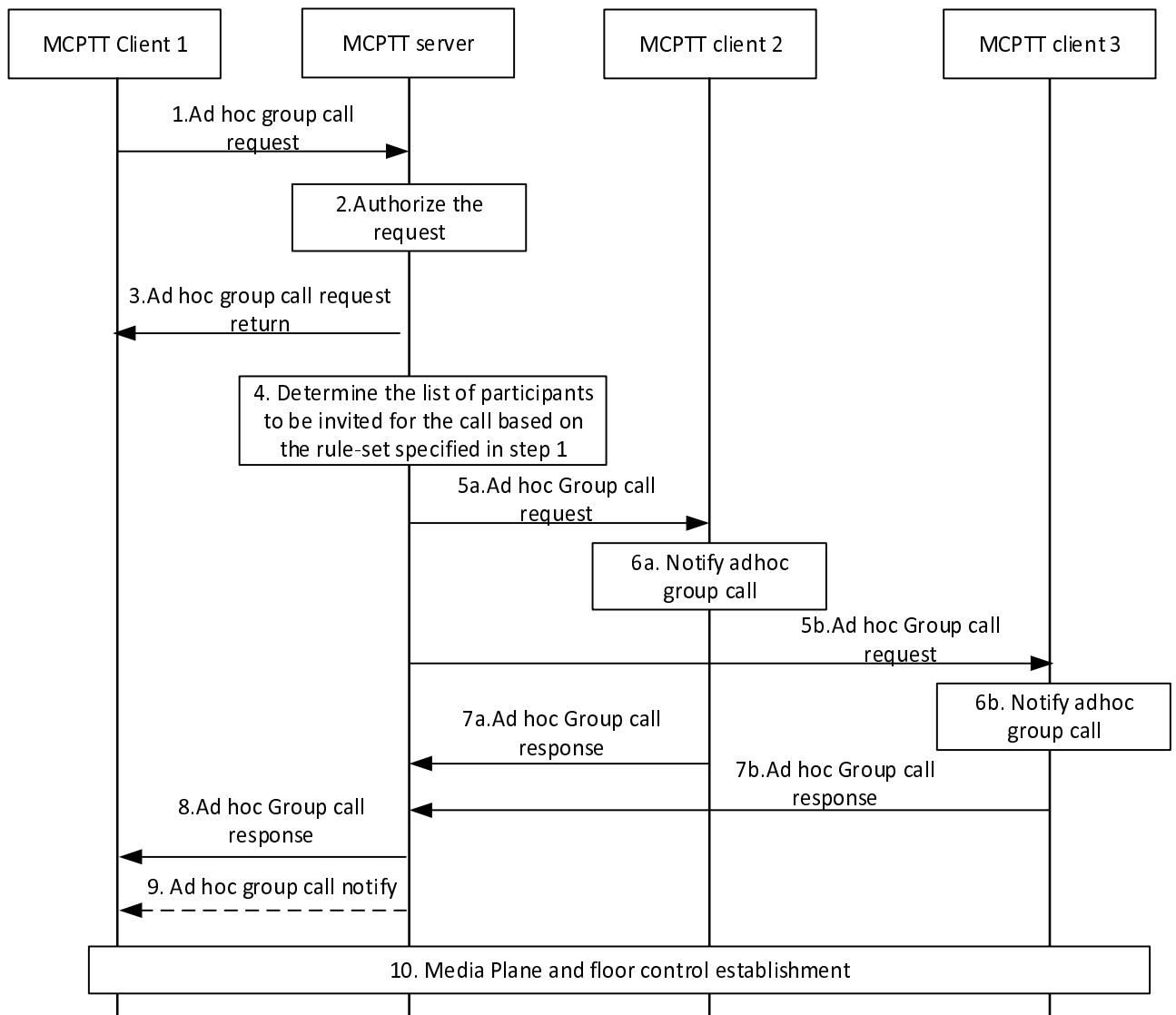
7. MCPTT client 1, client 2 and client 3 have successfully released the floor control and media plane resources associated with the ad hoc group call that is terminated and the ad hoc group ceases to exist (i.e., further call is not possible over the same ad hoc group, otherwise if the ad hoc group call follows an ad hoc group emergency alert the ad hoc group continues to exist (i.e., further calls over the same ad hoc group are possible).

#### 10.19.3.1.3 Ad hoc group call setup with MCPTT server determining the participants lists

Figure 10.19.3.1.3-1 below illustrates the ad hoc group call setup procedure initiated by the MCPTT user and MCPTT client 1 wherein the list of participants is determined by the MCPTT server based on the criteria received from the MCPTT client.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate ad hoc group call.
2. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 wants to invite MCPTT users who are satisfying certain criteria for the ad hoc group call.



**Figure 10.19.3.1.3-1: Ad hoc group call participants determined by MCPTT server**

1. User at MCPTT client 1 would like to initiate an ad hoc group call in-order to invite the participants satisfying specific criteria. The MCPTT client 1 initiates the ad hoc group call by sending the ad hoc group call request containing the details of the criteria to be applied by the MCPTT server for determining the participant list. If end-to-end encryption is supported, the Encryption supported information element shall be set to true and pre-configured MCPTT group whose configuration is to be applied is included. An SDP offer containing the MCPTT client media parameters is included. If there is a floor request to transmit, then the ad hoc group call request contains an indication of an implicit floor request. If the MCPTT user of MCPTT client 1 has selected a functional alias, then the ad hoc group call request contains that functional alias. If the ad hoc group call request contains an implicit floor request it may also include location information.

If the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 initiates an MCPTT emergency ad hoc group call or the MCPTT emergency state is already set for the MCPTT client 1 (due to a previously triggered MCPTT emergency alert):

- i. the MCPTT ad hoc group call request shall contain an emergency indicator;
- ii. if the MCPTT emergency state is not set already, MCPTT client 1 sets its MCPTT emergency state. The MCPTT emergency state of MCPTT client 1 is retained until explicitly cancelled by the user of MCPTT client 1.

2. If the ad hoc group call is supported, the MCPTT server verifies whether the user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate an ad hoc group call. If not authorized, the MCPTT server rejects the ad hoc group call request as specified in the step 3. The MCPTT server accepts the ad hoc group call request if the ad hoc group call is supported and authorized.

If functional alias is present, the MCPTT server checks whether the provided functional alias is allowed to be used and has been activated for the user.

If location information was included in the ad hoc group call request, the MCPTT server checks the privacy policy of the MCPTT user to decide if the location information of MCPTT client 1 can be provided to other users on the call (refer to Annex A.3 "Authorisation to provide location information to other MCPTT users on a call when talking").

If an emergency indicator is present in the received MCPTT ad hoc group call request, the MCPTT ad hoc group is considered to be in the in-progress emergency state until this ad hoc group call is terminated; and

If an imminent peril indicator is present in the received MCPTT ad hoc group call request, the MCPTT ad hoc group is considered to be in the in-progress imminent peril state until this ad hoc group call is terminated.

If the information received in the request in step 1 does not contain an ad hoc group ID from an ad hoc group emergency alert, the MCPTT server forms the ad hoc group by using received information, and determines the preconfigured group to be used for the configuration of the ad hoc group. The MCPTT server assigns a MCPTT group ID for the newly formed ad hoc group. Further, the ad hoc group participants are included to ad hoc group once determined as specified in the step 4.

3. The MCPTT server shall send the ad hoc group call request return message to MCPTT client 1 containing the below:
  - i. The MCPTT ad hoc group ID, either generated by the MCPTT server, if not included in the ad hoc group call request of step 1, or if the provided MCPTT ad hoc group ID is not accepted by the MCPTT server, or provided by the MCPTT client 1 if the ad hoc group ID is from an ad hoc group emergency alert;
  - ii. The group ID of the pre-configured group to be used for the ad hoc group communication (only included when the ad hoc group data session is authorized); and
  - iii. Result of whether the ad hoc group call is authorized or not

If the ad hoc group call request is not authorized, the MCPTT server and MCPTT client 1 shall not proceed with the rest of the steps.

4. The MCPTT server determines the list of participants to be invited for the ad hoc group call based on the information present in the information element Criteria for determining the participants. This information element could carry either criteria or indicator identifying pre-defined criteria or a combination of both.

NOTE: The content of the Criteria information element, the details of the pre-defined criteria, and the way how their MCPTT server determines the list of participants are left to implementation.

5. The MCPTT server sends the ad hoc group call requests towards the MCPTT clients 2 and 3. While sending the ad hoc group call requests, the MCPTT server shall remove the information elements that are not required to be conveyed to the target MCPTT clients. This request carries the pre-configured group ID whose configuration is to be applied for this ad hoc group call if end-to-end encryption is requested. The MCPTT server considers the ad hoc group call participants as implicitly affiliated to the ad hoc group.
6. The receiving MCPTT clients notify their corresponding MCPTT user about the incoming ad hoc group call request with the information of the MCPTT group ID for the ad hoc group.
7. The receiving MCPTT clients may accept or reject the ad hoc group call requests and send ad hoc group call responses to the MCPTT server. The response may also contain a functional alias of the responding MCPTT user, which is verified (valid and activated for the user) by the MCPTT server.
8. The MCPTT server sends the ad hoc group call response to MCPTT client 1 through the signalling path to inform about successful call establishment.
9. The MCPTT server may notify the initiating MCPTT user of all MCPTT users who acknowledged the ad hoc group call request and joined the ad hoc group call. This notification may be sent to the initiating MCPTT user

by the MCPTT server more than once during the call when MCPTT users join or leave the MCPTT ad hoc group call. The authorized users (not shown in figure), who are configured to receive the participants information of ad hoc group call, are notified to receive the MCPTT IDs of the MCPTT users who acknowledged the ad hoc group call request and joined the ad hoc group call, when the MCPTT users joins late or leave the MCPTT ad hoc group call.

10. MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 3 establish media plane and floor control resources.

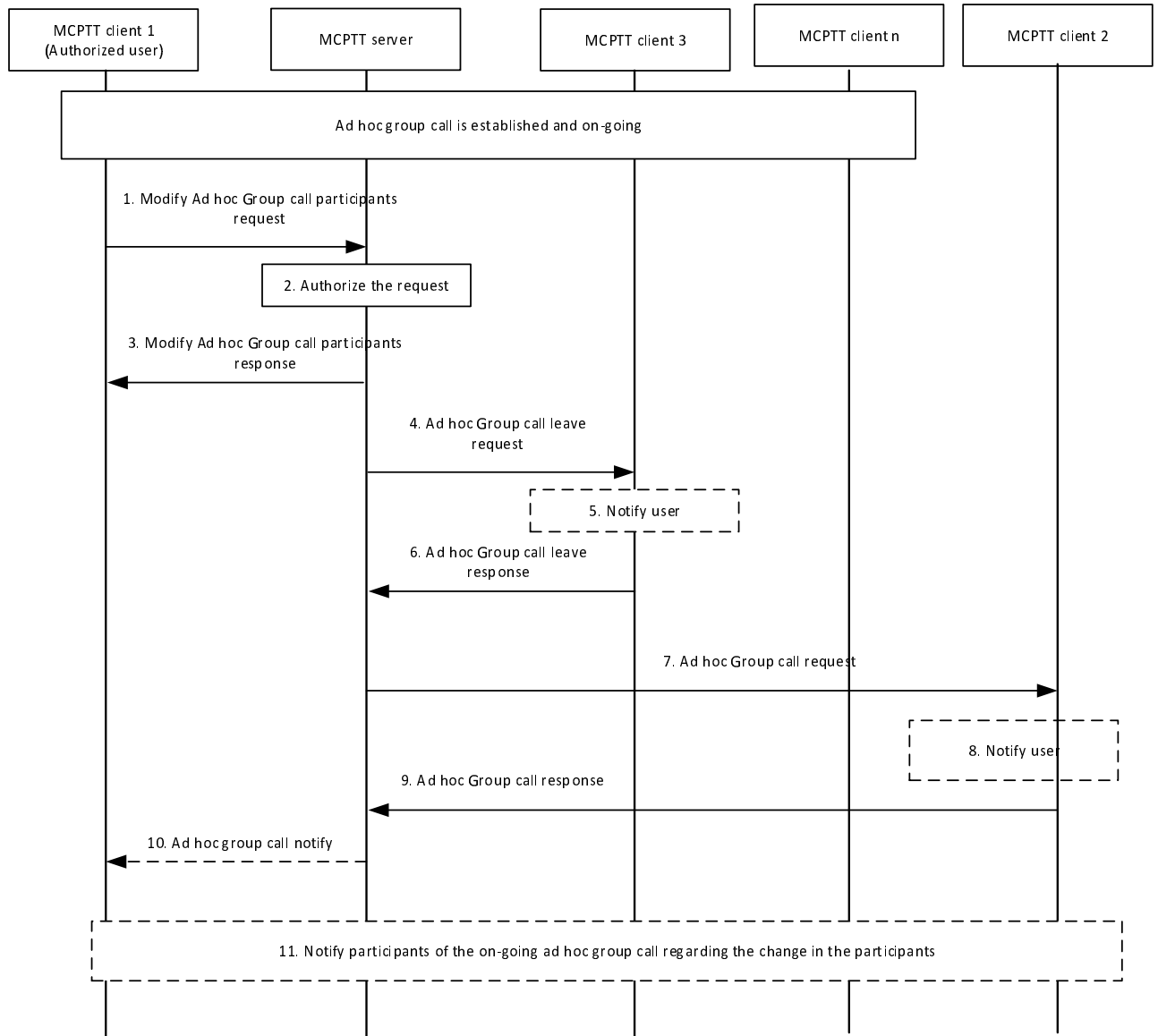
The MCPTT server continuously checks whether other MCPTT users meet the criteria in order to add them to the ongoing ad hoc group call, or whether any of the participating MCPTT users no longer meet the criteria in order to remove them from the ongoing ad hoc group call, according to clause 10.19.3.1.5.

#### 10.19.3.1.4 Modification of ad hoc group call participants by an authorized user

Figure 10.19.3.1.4-1 below illustrates the modification of ad hoc group call participants procedure by an authorized user.

Pre-conditions:

1. An ad hoc group call is already in progress and the participants list is provided by the originating MCPTT user while initiating the MCPTT ad hoc group call.
2. The participants of the MCPTT ad hoc group call belong to the single MCPTT system.
3. The MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 3 to MCPTT client n are on an ongoing ad hoc group call.
4. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 determines to remove the user of MCPTT client 3 from the ad hoc group call and add user of MCPTT client 2 into the on-going ad hoc group call.



**Figure 10.19.3.1.4-1: Modification of ad hoc group call participants by an authorized user**

1. The MCPTT user at the MCPTT client 1 is authorized and requests to modify ad hoc group call participants. The MCPTT client 1 sends the modify ad hoc group call participants request to the MCPTT server in order to remove MCPTT client 3 from the ongoing ad hoc group call and add MCPTT client 2 into it.
2. The MCPTT server verifies whether the MCPTT client 1 is authorized to add or remove (modify) the participants of the on-going ad hoc group call.
3. The MCPTT server sends modify ad hoc group call participants response to the MCPTT client 1.
4. The MCPTT server sends the ad hoc group call leave request to the MCPTT client 3 in order to remove it from the on-going ad hoc group call.
5. The MCPTT client 3 notifies the user of the ad hoc group call leave request.
6. The MCPTT client 3 sends the ad hoc group call leave response to the MCPTT server.
7. The MCPTT server sends the ad hoc group call request towards MCPTT client 2.

NOTE: Steps 7 to 9 can occur at any time following step 3.

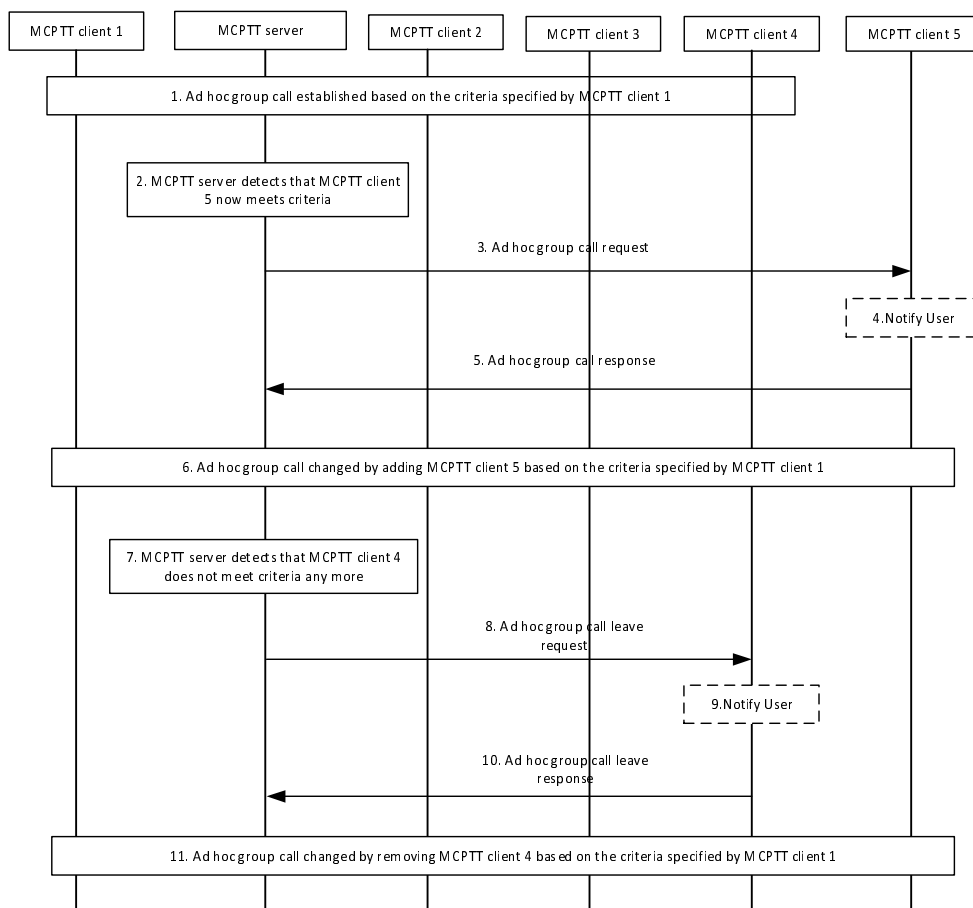
8. The receiving MCPTT client 2 notifies the user about the incoming ad hoc group call.
9. The MCPTT client 2 accepts the ad hoc group call request and send ad hoc group call responses to the MCPTT server. The response may also contain a functional alias of the responding MCPTT user, which is verified (valid and activated for the user) by the MCPTT server. The MCPTT server considers the MCPTT user as implicitly affiliated to the ad hoc group.
10. The MCPTT server may notify the initiating MCPTT user of all the users who are added to the on-going ad hoc group call. This notification may be sent to the initiating MCPTT user by the MCPTT server more than once during the call when MCPTT users join or leave the ad hoc group call.
11. The MCPTT server may notify the participants about the change in the participants of on-going ad hoc group call.

#### 10.19.3.1.5 Modification of ad hoc group call participants by the MCPTT server

Figure 10.19.3.1.5-1 below illustrates the modification of ad hoc group call participants procedure by the MCPTT server.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT client 1 is the initiator of the ad hoc group call.
2. MCPTT server determined the participants for the ad hoc group call based on the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1 while initiating the ad hoc group call.
3. MCPTT server continuously evaluates the criteria to monitor the list of users who meets or not meets the criteria for participating in the on-going ad hoc group call.
4. The MCPTT server detects that the MCPTT client 5 satisfies the criteria and MCPTT client 4 stops to meet the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1.



**Figure 10.19.3.1.5-1: Modification of ad hoc group call participants by the MCPTT server**

1. The ad hoc group call is established and on-going with the participants MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2, MCPTT client 3 and MCPTT client 4. The participants list is determined by the MCPTT server based on the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1 while initiating the call
2. The MCPTT server detects that the MCPTT client 5 satisfies the criteria specified by the MCPTT client.
3. The MCPTT server sends the ad hoc group call request to the MCPTT client 5.
4. The MCPTT client 5 notifies the user about the incoming ad hoc group call.
5. The MCPTT client 5 accepts the ad hoc group call request and sends the ad hoc group call response to the MCPTT server.
6. The on-going ad hoc group call is updated by adding MCPTT client 5 which satisfies the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1.
7. The MCPTT server detects that the MCPTT client 4 is no more satisfying the criteria to be the participant of the ad hoc group call.
8. The MCPTT server sends the ad hoc group call leave request to the MCPTT client 4 and removes it from the on-going ad hoc group call.
9. The MCPTT client 4 notifies the user of the ad hoc group call leave request.
10. The MCPTT client 4 sends the ad hoc group call leave response to the MCPTT server.
11. The on-going ad hoc group call is updated by removing MCPTT client 4, which no more satisfies the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1.

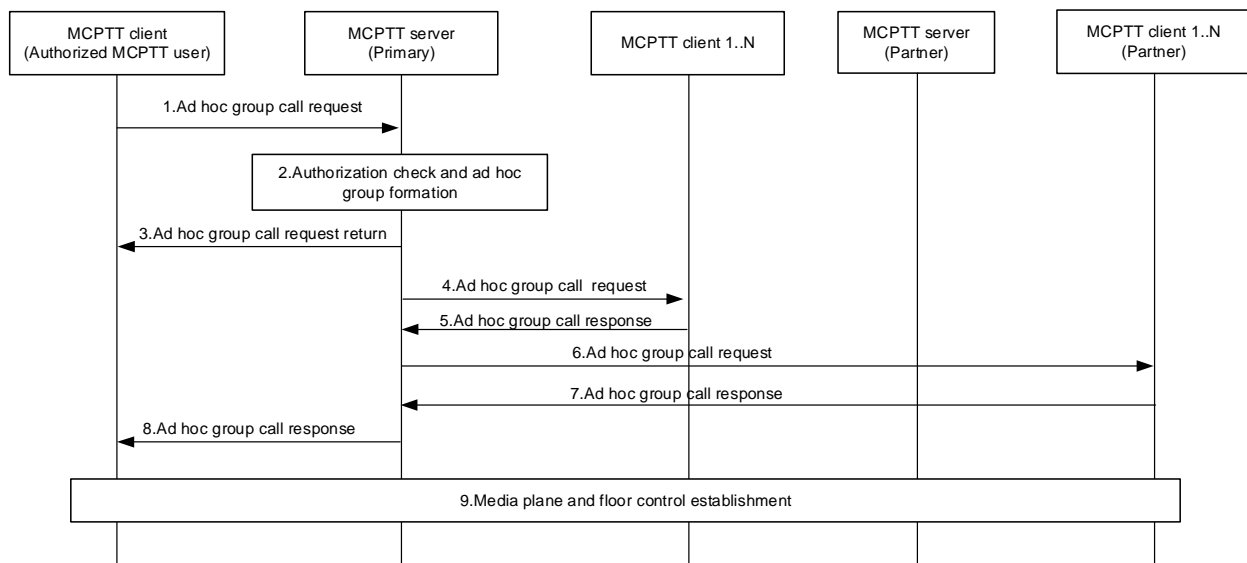
### 10.19.3.2 Ad hoc group call involving multiple MC systems

#### 10.19.3.2.1 Procedure for ad hoc group call setup – Participants list provided by the Initiator

Figure 10.19.3.2.1-1 illustrates the procedure for ad hoc group call setup procedure initiated by an authorized user wherein either a list of participants or an ad hoc group ID from an ad hoc group emergency alert is provided by the authorised user and the determined MCPTT users are from multiple MCPTT systems.

Pre-conditions:

1. The security aspects of sharing the user information between primary and partner MC systems shall be governed as per the service provider agreement between them. In this case, it is considered that the partner MC system shares their users' information to the primary MC system.
2. The authorized MCPTT user/dispatcher belongs to the primary MC system.
3. The MCPTT server of the primary MC system is where the authorized MCPTT user/dispatcher controls the ad hoc group.
4. Some users of the ad hoc group belong to partner MC systems.
5. The preconfigured group identity and preconfigured group configuration to be used for an ad hoc group have been preconfigured in the MCPTT client and other participants of ad hoc group have also received the relevant security related information to allow them to communicate in an ad hoc group communication.
6. If an ad hoc group ID from an ad hoc group emergency alert is used to invite the ad hoc group members, MCPTT client is aware of the ad hoc group ID.



**Figure 10.19.3.2.1-1: Ad hoc group call setup**

1. The MCPTT client of the authorized user initiates an ad hoc group call with multiple users from primary and partner MC systems. An ad hoc group call request message with the information of the MCPTT IDs or an ad hoc group ID if the ad hoc group call follows an ad hoc group emergency alert is routed to the MCPTT server of the primary MC system.
2. If the ad hoc group call is supported, the MCPTT server of the primary MC system verifies whether the user at of MCPTT client is authorized to initiate an ad hoc group call. If not authorized, the MCPTT server of the primary MC system rejects the ad hoc group call request as specified in the step 3. If the the MC service users' information received in step 1 does not contain an ad hoc group ID from an ad hoc group emergency alert, the MCPTT server of the primary MC system forms the ad hoc group by using MCPTT users' information received in step 1, determines the preconfigured group to be used for the configuration and assigns an MCPTT group ID for the newly formed ad hoc group. If no MC service ad hoc group ID was included in the ad hoc group call

request of step 1, or if the provided MC service ad hoc group ID is not accepted by the MC service server, the MCPTT server assigns a MCPTT group ID for the newly formed ad hoc group.

The MCPTT server identifies the appropriate MCPTT server responsible for the MCPTT users of the ad hoc group. The MCPTT server considers the ad hoc group call participants as implicitly affiliated to the ad hoc group.

NOTE 1: The ad hoc group information including the MCPTT group ID and the list of users is held in dynamic data in the MCPTT server.

3. The MCPTT server shall send the ad hoc group call request return message to the MCPTT client containing the below:
  - i. The MCPTT ad hoc group ID either generated by the MCPTT server or provided by the MCPTT client if the ad hoc group ID is from an ad hoc group emergency alert (only included when the ad hoc group call is authorized);
  - ii. The group ID of the pre-configured group to be used for the ad hoc group call (only included when the ad hoc group call is authorized); and
  - iii. Result of whether the ad hoc group call is authorized or not.

If the ad hoc group call request is not authorized, the MCPTT server and MCPTT client shall not proceed with the rest of the steps.

4. The MCPTT server of the primary MC system sends the ad hoc group call requests towards the MCPTT clients of the invited users belonging to the primary MC system based on step 1. While sending the ad hoc group call requests, the MCPTT server of the primary MC system shall remove the information elements that are not required to be conveyed to the target MCPTT clients (e.g. MCPTT ID list of the users who are required to acknowledge).
5. The receiving MCPTT clients notify their corresponding MCPTT users about the incoming ad hoc group call request with the information of the MCPTT group ID for the ad hoc group, and may accept or reject the call and respond with an ad hoc group call response.
6. The primary MCPTT server further initiates an ad hoc group call request message to the MCPTT users of the partner MC system. The ad hoc group call request message is routed to the MCPTT users via the MCPTT server of the partner MC system.
7. The receiving MCPTT clients notify their corresponding MCPTT users about the incoming ad hoc group call request with the information of the MCPTT group ID for the ad hoc group. The MCPTT users upon receipt of the invitation may accept or reject the call, and respond with the ad hoc group call response. The ad hoc group call response message is routed to the MCPTT server of the primary MC system via the MCPTT server of the partner MC system.
8. The MCPTT server of the primary MC system provides an ad hoc group call response message to the MCPTT client of the authorized MCPTT user upon receiving response to the corresponding ad hoc group call request in step 1. The ad hoc group call response will consist of the success or failure result and/or detailed reason information in case of failure.

NOTE 2: The ad hoc group call response message is triggered depending on the conditions to proceed with the call.

9. Upon successful ad hoc group call setup, a group call is established amongst the multiple group members from primary and partner MC systems. The media plane and floor control resources are established.

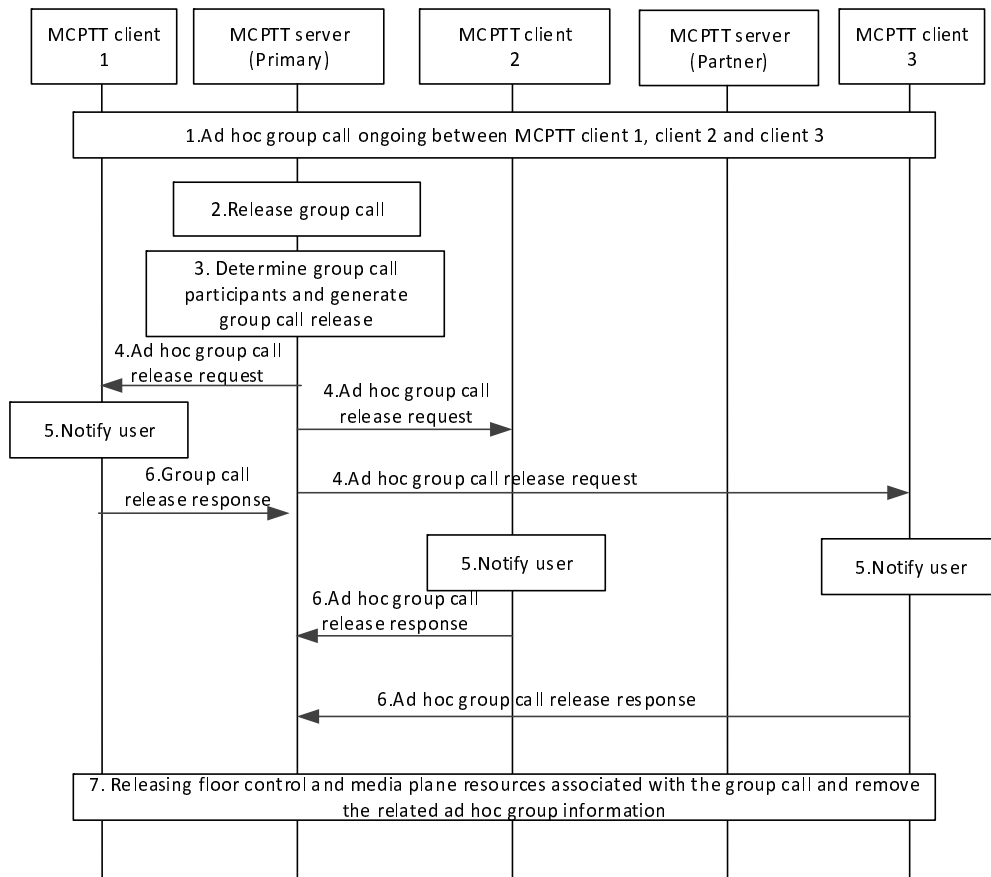
#### 10.19.3.2.2 Procedure for ad hoc group call release by MCPTT server – Participants list provided by the Initiator

This procedure focuses on the case where an MCPTT server initiates the termination of an ongoing MCPTT ad hoc group call for all the participants of that group call, since at least one of the termination conditions are met e.g., due to hang time expiry, last participant leaving, second last participant leaving, initiator leaving, or minimum number of affiliated MCPTT group members are not present.

Procedures in figure 10.19.3.2.2-1 are the signalling control plane procedures for the MCPTT server initiating termination of an ongoing MCPTT ad hoc group call.

Pre-condition:

- The MCPTT client 1 and MCPTT client 2 belong to primary MC system. The MCPTT client 3 belongs to partner MC system.



**Figure 10.19.3.2.2-1: Ad hoc group call release**

1. The MCPTT users on MCPTT client 1, client 2 and client 3 are already part of the ongoing ad hoc group call (e.g. as a result of ad hoc group call setup as specified in clause 10.19.3.2.x).
2. The MCPTT server would like to release the ad hoc group call which is ongoing e.g., due to hang time expiry, last participant leaving, second last participant leaving, initiator leaving, or minimum number of affiliated MCPTT group members are not present.
3. The MCPTT server identifies the participants of the ongoing ad hoc group call and generates ad hoc group call release request to release ongoing session.
4. The MCPTT server sends a ad hoc group call release request via SIP core towards each participant of the ongoing group call. If the participants belong to partner MC system, then ad hoc group call release request is routed to the MCPTT clients of the partner MC system via the partner MCPTT server.
5. The MCPTT users are notified about the release of the ad hoc group call.
6. The MCPTT client(s) receiving ad hoc group call release request, send acknowledgement towards the MCPTT server by sending a ad hoc group call release response.
7. The MCPTT client 1, client 2 and client 3 have successfully released the floor control and media plane resources associated with the ad hoc group call that is terminated. The MCPTT servers remove the ad hoc group information from the dynamic data held in the MCPTT servers and the ad hoc group ceases to exist, otherwise if the ad hoc group call follows an ad hoc group emergency alert the MCPTT servers keep the dynamic data and the ad hoc group continues to exist.

10.19.3.2.3 Ad hoc group call setup – Participants list determined by the MCPTT server

Figure 10.19.3.2.3-1 below illustrates the ad hoc group call setup procedure initiated by an authorized user wherein the list of participants is determined by the MCPTT server based on the criteria received from the MCPTT client and determined MCPTT users are from multiple MCPTT systems.

Pre-conditions:

1. The security aspects of sharing the user information between primary and partner MC systems shall be governed as per the service provider agreement between them. In this case, it is considered that the partner MC system share their users' information to the primary MC system.
2. The authorized MCPTT user/dispatcher belongs to the primary MC system.
3. The MCPTT server 1 of the primary MC system is where the authorized MCPTT user/dispatcher creates the ad hoc group.
4. Some users of the ad hoc group belong to MCPTT server 2 of the partner MC systems.
5. The pre-configured group identity and pre-configured group configuration to be used for an ad hoc group have been preconfigured in MCPTT client and other participants of ad hoc group have also received the relevant security related information to allow them to communicate in an ad hoc group communication.

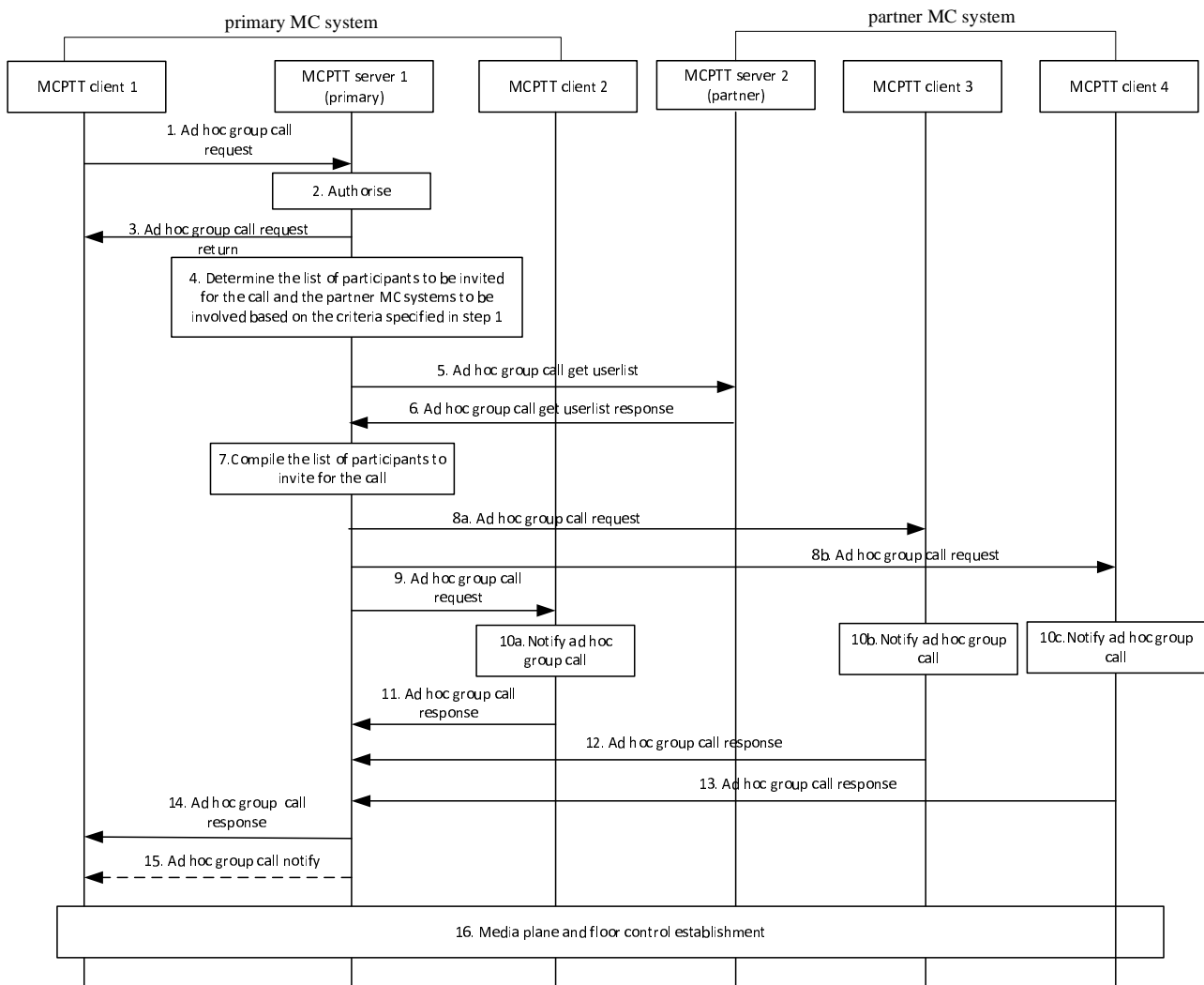


Figure 10.19.3.2.3-1: Ad hoc group call setup involving multiple MCPTT systems

1-3. Same as described in subclause 10.19.3.1.3.

4. The MCPTT server 1 determines the list of participants from the primary MC system and determines the partner MC system to be involved in the ad hoc group call based on the information present in the information element Criteria for determining the participants. This information element carries the criteria, indicator identifying pre-defined criteria, or a combination of both.

NOTE 1: The content of the Criteria information element, the details of the pre-defined criteria, and the way how their MCPTT server determines the list of participants are left to implementation.

5. If the MCPTT server 1 needs to involve the partner system based on the agreement and based on the criteria for determining the participant list, it sends the ad hoc group call get userlist request to the MCPTT server 2. This request carries the criteria specified in the step 1.
6. MCPTT server 2 evaluates the criteria and determines the participants satisfying the criteria (i.e., MCPTT client 3 and MCPTT client 4) and sends the response containing the list of MCPTT users satisfying the criteria. The partner MCPTT server may apply local policies if any while determining the participants satisfying the criteria.
7. The MCPTT server 1 compiles the list of participants to be invited for the ad hoc group call including the participants from both primary and partner MC system.
- 8a-8b. The MCPTT server 1 sends the ad hoc group call request towards the MCPTT client 3 and MCPTT client 4. While sending the ad hoc group call request, the MCPTT server shall remove the information elements that are not required to be conveyed to the target MCPTT clients. This request carries the pre-configured group ID whose configuration is to be applied for this ad hoc group call if end-to-end encryption is requested. The MCPTT server 1 considers the ad hoc group call participants as implicitly affiliated to the ad hoc group.
9. The MCPTT server 1 sends the ad hoc group call requests towards the MCPTT client 2. While sending the ad hoc group call request, the MCPTT server shall remove the information elements that are not required to be conveyed to the target MCPTT clients. This request carries the pre-configured group ID whose configuration is to be applied for this ad hoc group call if end-to-end encryption is requested. The MCPTT server 1 considers the ad hoc group call participants as implicitly affiliated to the ad hoc group.
- 10a-10c. The receiving MCPTT clients notify their corresponding MCPTT user about the incoming ad hoc group call request with the information of the MCPTT group ID for the ad hoc group.
11. The MCPTT client 2 may accept or reject the ad hoc group call request and send ad hoc group call response to the MCPTT server 1.
12. The MCPTT client 3 may accept or reject the ad hoc group call request, and sends ad hoc group call response to the MCPTT server 1.
13. The MCPTT client 4 may accept or reject the ad hoc group call request, and sends ad hoc group call response to the MCPTT server 1.
14. The MCPTT server 1 sends the ad hoc group call response to MCPTT client 1 through the signalling path to inform about successful call establishment.
15. The MCPTT server 1 may notify the initiating MCPTT user of all MCPTT users who acknowledged the ad hoc group call request and joined the ad hoc group call. The MCPTT server 1 more than once during the call may send this notification to the initiating MCPTT user whenever an MCPTT user joins or leaves the MCPTT ad hoc group call. The authorized users (not shown in figure), who are configured to receive the participants information of ad hoc group call, are notified to receive the MCPTT IDs of the MCPTT users who acknowledged the ad hoc group call request and joined the ad hoc group call, when the MCPTT users joins late or leave the MCPTT ad hoc group call.
16. The MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2, MCPTT client 3 and MCPTT client 4 establish media plane and floor control resources.

NOTE 2: The ad hoc group call request and response exchanged between MCPTT server 1 of primary MC system and MCPTT client 3/MCPTT client 4 will always traversal through the MCPTT server 2.

The MCPTT server at the primary MC system and MCPTT server at the partner MC system continuously check whether other MCPTT users in the primary MC system and MCPTT users in the partner MC system, respectively, meet the criteria in order to add them to the ongoing ad hoc group communication, or whether any of the participating

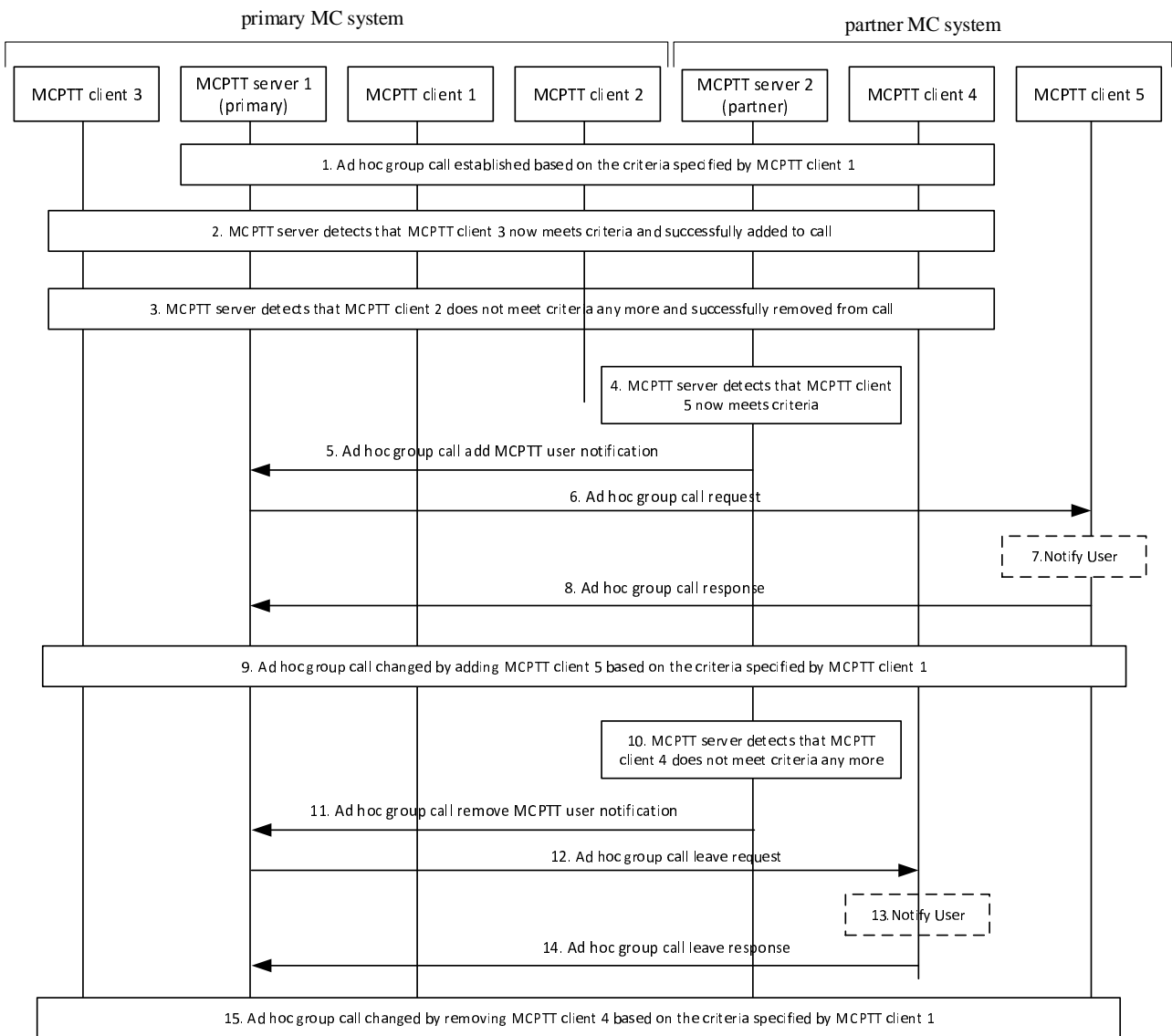
MCPTT users in the primary MC system and MCPTT users in the partner MC system, respectively, no longer meet the criteria in order to remove them from the ongoing ad hoc group communication, according to clause 10.19.3.2.4.

#### 10.19.3.2.4 Modification of ad hoc group call participants by the MCPTT server

Figure 10.19.3.2.4-1 below illustrates the MCPTT server modifying the ad hoc group call participants procedure involving multiple MCPTT systems.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate ad hoc group call.
2. The MCPTT server 1 of the primary and MCPTT server 2 of the partner MCPTT systems determined the participants for the ad hoc group call based on the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1 while initiating the ad hoc group call.
3. The MCPTT server 1 of the primary and MCPTT server 2 of the partner MCPTT systems continuously evaluates the criteria to monitor the list of users who meets or not meets the criteria for participating in the on-going ad hoc group call.
4. The MCPTT server 1 of the primary MCPTT system detects that the MCPTT client 3 meets the criteria and MCPTT client 2 stops to meet the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1.
5. The MCPTT server 2 of the partner MCPTT system detects that the MCPTT client 5 meets the criteria and MCPTT client 4 stops to meet the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1.



**Figure 10.19.3.2.4-1: Modification of ad hoc group call participants by the MCPTT server**

1. The ad hoc group call is established and on-going with the participants MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2, and MCPTT client 4. The participants list is determined by both primary and partner systems MCPTT server based on the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1 while initiating the call.
2. The MCPTT server 1 detects that MCPTT client 3 now meets criteria and successfully added to call.
3. The MCPTT server 1 detects that MCPTT client 2 does not meet criteria any more and successfully removed from a call.
4. The MCPTT server 2 detects that the MCPTT client 5 meets the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1.
5. The MCPTT server 2 sends the notification to MCPTT server 1 of the primary MCPTT system to add the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 5 to on-going ad hoc group call.
6. The MCPTT server 1 sends the ad hoc group call request to the MCPTT client 5.
7. The MCPTT client 5 notifies the user about the incoming ad hoc group call.
8. The MCPTT client 5 accepts the ad hoc group call request and sends the ad hoc group call response to the MCPTT server 1.

9. The on-going ad hoc group call is updated by adding MCPTT client 5 which meets the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1.
10. The MCPTT server 2 detects that the MCPTT client 4 is no more satisfying the criteria to be the participant of the ad hoc group call.
11. The MCPTT server 2 sends the notification to MCPTT server 1 of the primary MCPTT system to remove the MCPTT user at MCPTT client 4 from on-going ad hoc group call.
12. The MCPTT server 1 sends the ad hoc group call leave request to the MCPTT client 4 and removes it from the on-going ad hoc group call.
13. The MCPTT client 4 notifies the user of the ad hoc group call leave request.
14. The MCPTT client 4 sends the ad hoc group call leave response to the MCPTT server 1.
15. The on-going ad hoc group call is updated by removing MCPTT client 4, which no more meets the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1.

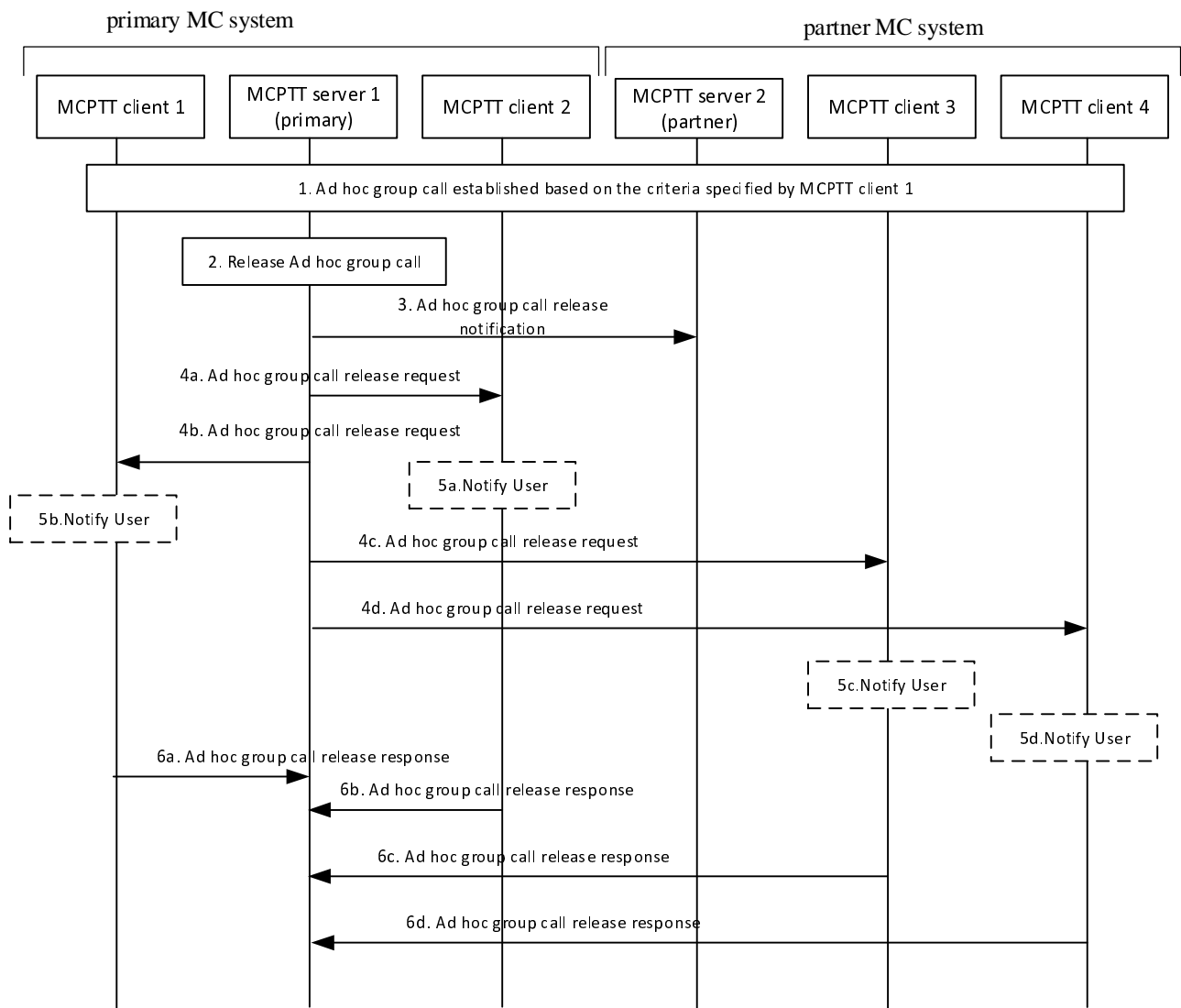
NOTE: The ad hoc group call request and response exchanged between MCPTT server 1 of primary MC system and MCPTT client 4/MCPTT client 5 will always traversal through the MCPTT server 2.

#### 10.19.3.2.5 Release ad hoc group call and stop determining the ad hoc group call participants by partner MCPTT system – Participants list determined by the MCPTT server

Figure 10.19.3.2.5-1 below illustrates the release of ad hoc group call and stopping of MCPTT server at the partner MC system from determining the ad hoc group call participants' procedure once involving multiple MCPTT systems. This procedure, in particular describes about how the partner MC system is notified about ad hoc group call release to cease the determining of the participants by the partner MC system.

Pre-conditions:

1. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 is authorized to initiate ad hoc group call.
2. The MCPTT server 1 of the primary and MCPTT server 2 of the partner MCPTT systems determined the participants for the ad hoc group call based on the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1 while initiating the ad hoc group call.
3. The MCPTT server 1 of the primary and MCPTT server 2 of the partner MCPTT systems continuously evaluates the criteria to monitor the list of users who meets or not meets the criteria for participating in the on-going ad hoc group call.



**Figure 10.19.3.2.5-1: MCPTT server releases an ad hoc group call and stops the determination of ad hoc group call participants involving multiple MCPTT systems**

1. The ad hoc group call is established and on-going with the participants MCPTT client 1, MCPTT client 2, MCPTT client 3, and MCPTT client 4. The participant list is determined by both primary and partner systems MCPTT server based on the criteria specified by the MCPTT client 1 while initiating the call.
2. The MCPTT server 1 detects that the ad hoc group call which is ongoing is to be released e.g., due to hang time expiry, last participant leaving, second last participant leaving, initiator leaving, or minimum number of affiliated MCPTT group members are not present.
3. The MCPTT server 1 sends the notification to MCPTT server 2 of the partner MCPTT system about the ad hoc group call release to stop determining the participant list by MCPTT server 2 of the partner MCPTT system.
- 4a-4d. The MCPTT server 1 sends ad hoc group call release request to all the participants of the ad hoc group call.
- 5a-5d. The MCPTT clients notifies the user about the release of the ad hoc group call.
- 6a-6d. All the participants of the ad hoc group call receives the ad hoc group call release request and sends the ad hoc group call release response to the MCPTT server 1 of the primary MCPTT server.

**NOTE:** The ad hoc group call request and response exchanged between MCPTT server 1 of primary MC system and MCPTT client 3/MCPTT client 4 will always traversal through the MCPTT server 2.

10.19.3.2.6 Modification of ad hoc group call participants by an authorized user

Figure 10.19.3.2.6-1 below illustrates the MCPTT user modifying the ad hoc group call participants procedure involving multiple MCPTT systems.

Pre-conditions:

1. An MCPTT ad hoc group call is already in progress and the participants list provided by the originating MCPTT user while initiating the MCPTT ad hoc group call.
2. The participants of the MCPTT ad hoc group call belongs to the multiple MCPTT system.
3. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 determines that the MCPTT client 3 needs to be invited to on-going ad hoc group call and MCPTT client 2 needs to be removed from the on-going ad hoc group call from the primary MCPTT system.
4. The MCPTT user at MCPTT client 1 determines that the MCPTT client 5 needs to be invited to on-going ad hoc group call and MCPTT client 4 needs to be removed from the on-going ad hoc group call from the partner MCPTT system.

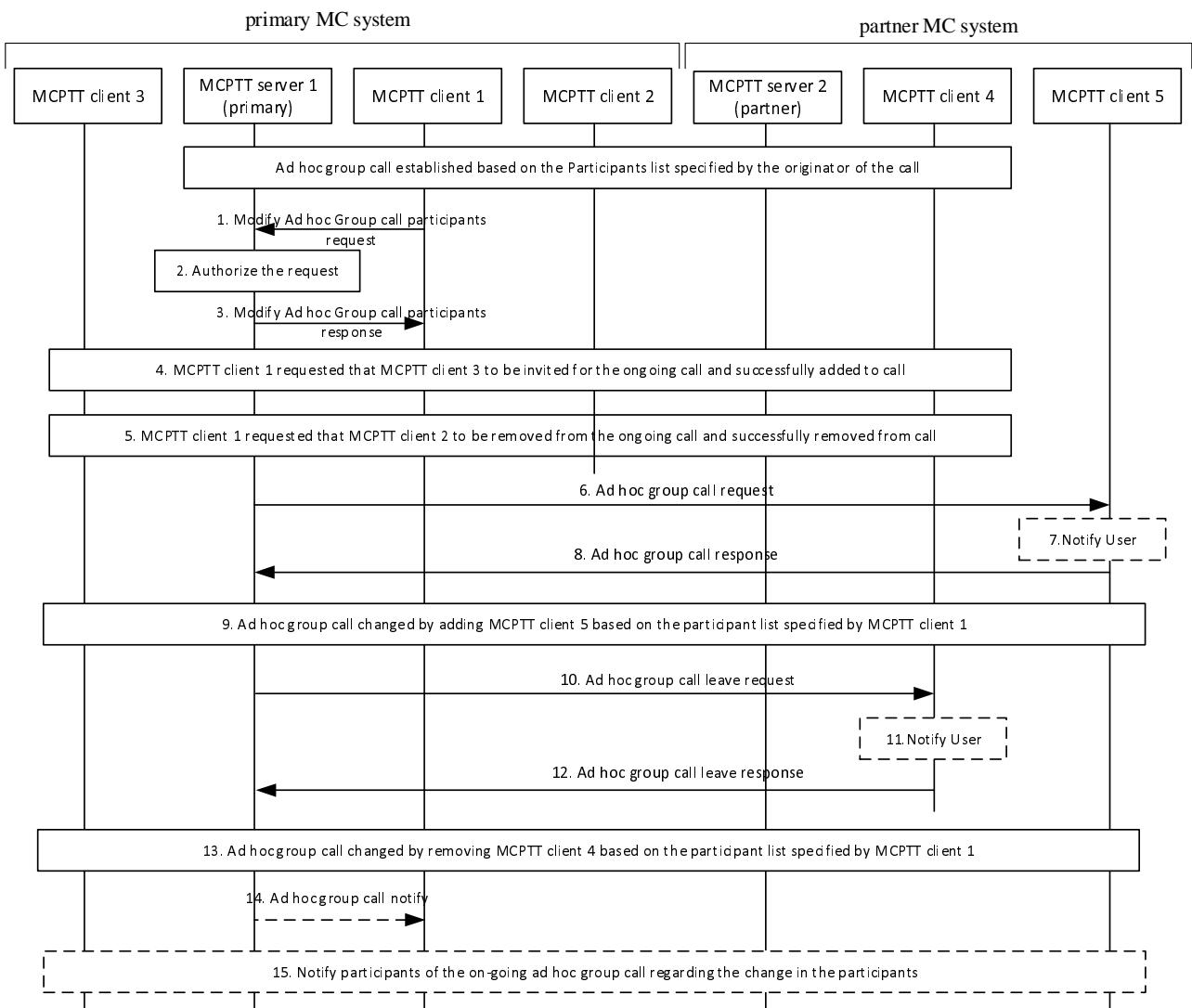


Figure 10.19.3.2.6-1: Modification of ad hoc group call participants by an authorized user

1. The MCPTT client 1 sends the modify ad hoc group call participants request to the MCPTT server 1 to remove both MCPTT client 2 and MCPTT client 4 from the on-going ad hoc group call and to add both MCPTT client 3 and MCPTT client 5 into on-going ad hoc group call.
  2. The MCPTT server 1 verifies whether the MCPTT client 1 is authorized to add or remove (modify) the participants of the on-going ad hoc group call.
  3. The MCPTT server 1 sends modify ad hoc group call participants response to the MCPTT client 1.
  4. The MCPTT server 1 determines that MCPTT client 1 has requested that MCPTT client 3 from the primary MC system be invited to an on-going ad hoc group call and successfully added to the call according to the procedure defined in clause 10.19.3.1.4.
  5. The MCPTT server 1 determines that MCPTT client 1 has requested that MCPTT client 2 from the primary MC system be removed from the on-going ad hoc group call and successfully removed from call according to the procedure defined in clause 10.19.3.1.4.
  6. The MCPTT server 1 determines that MCPTT client 1 has requested that MCPTT client 5 from the partner MC system be invited to an on-going ad hoc group call. The MCPTT server 1 sends the ad hoc group call request to the MCPTT client 5.
  7. The MCPTT client 5 notifies the user about the incoming ad hoc group call.
  8. The MCPTT client 5 accepts the ad hoc group call request and sends the ad hoc group call response to the MCPTT server 1.
  9. The on-going ad hoc group call is updated by adding MCPTT client 5 which is based on the modify participant list provided by the MCPTT client 1.
  10. The MCPTT server 1 determines that MCPTT client 1 has requested that MCPTT client 4 from the partner MC system be removed from the on-going ad hoc group call. The MCPTT server 1 sends the ad hoc group call leave request to the MCPTT client 4.
  11. The MCPTT client 4 notifies the user of the ad hoc group call leave request.
  12. The MCPTT client 4 sends the ad hoc group call leave response to the MCPTT server 1.
  13. The on-going ad hoc group call is updated by removing MCPTT client 4, which is based on the modify participant list provided by the MCPTT client 1.
- NOTE: The ad hoc group call request and response exchanged between MCPTT server 1 of primary MC system and MCPTT client 4/MCPTT client 5 will always traversal through the MCPTT server 2.
14. The MCPTT server 1 may notify the initiating MCPTT user of all the users who are added to the on-going ad hoc group call. This notification may be sent to the initiating MCPTT user by the MCPTT server more than once during the call when MCPTT users join or leave the ad hoc group call.
  15. The MCPTT server 1 may notify the authorized participants about the change in the participants list of on-going ad hoc group call.

---

# Annex A (normative): MCPTT related configuration data

## A.1 General

This Annex provides information about the static data needed for configuration for the MCPTT service, which belongs to one of the following categories:

- MCPTT UE configuration data (see subclause A.2);
- MCPTT user profile configuration data (see subclause A.3);
- MCPTT related group configuration data (see subclause A.4); and
- MCPTT service configuration data (see subclause A.5).

For each configuration category, data is split between configuration data that is applicable to both on-network and off-network, configuration data that is applicable to on-network only, and configuration data that is applicable to off-network only. The configuration data in each configuration category corresponds to a single instance of the category type i.e. the MCPTT UE, MCPTT group, MCPTT user and MCPTT service configuration data refers to the information that will be stored against each MCPTT UE, MCPTT group, MCPTT user and MCPTT service. This means that the three separate tables (on-network and off-network, on-network only, off-network only) for each configuration category represent the complete set of data for each configuration data category element.

The columns in the tables have the following meanings:

- Reference: the reference of the corresponding requirement in 3GPP TS 22.179 [2] or 3GPP TS 22.280 [17] or 3GPP TS 23.280 [16] or the corresponding subclause from the present document.
- Parameter description: A short definition of the semantics of the corresponding item of data, including denotation of the level of the parameter in the configuration hierarchy.
- When it is not clear to which functional entities the parameter is configured, then one or more columns indicating this are provided where the following nomenclature is used:
  - "Y" to denote "Yes" i.e. the parameter denoted for the row needs to be configured to the functional entity denoted for the column.
  - "N" to denote "No" i.e. the parameter denoted for the row does not need to be configured to the functional entity denoted for the column.

Parameters within a set of configuration data have a level within a hierarchy that pertains only to that configuration data. The hierarchy of the configuration data is common across all three tables of on-network and off-network, on network only and off network only. The level of a parameter within the hierarchy of the configuration data is denoted by use of the character ">" in the parameter description field within each table, one per level. Parameters that are at the top most level within the hierarchy have no ">" character. Parameters that have one or more ">" characters are child parameters of the first parameter above them that has one less ">" character. Parent parameters are parameters that have one or more child parameters. Parent parameters act solely as a "grouping" of their child parameters and therefore do not contain an actual value themselves i.e. they are just containers for their child parameters.

Each parameter that can be configured online shall only be configured through one online reference point. Each parameter that can be configured offline shall only be configured through one offline reference point. The most recent configuration data made available to the MCPTT UE shall always overwrite previous configuration data, irrespective of whether the configuration data was provided via the online or offline mechanism.

## A.2 MCPTT UE configuration data

The general aspects of UE configuration are specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]. Data in tables A.2-1 and A.2-2 have to be known by the MCPTT UE after MCPTT authorization.

Data in table A.2-1 can be configured offline using the CSC-11 reference point. Table A.2-2 contains the UE configuration required to support the use of off-network MCPTT service.

**Table A.2-1: UE configuration data (on and off network)**

Reference	Parameter description
[R-5. 4.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Maximum number of simultaneous group calls (Nc4)
[R-5.4.2-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Maximum number of transmissions (Nc5) in a group
[R-5.5.2-007] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Maximum number of private calls (N10)

**Table A.2-2: UE configuration data (on network)**

Reference	Parameter description
Subclause 5.2.3 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]	Relay service (Y/N)
Subclause 5.2.3 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]	List of allowed relayed MCPTT groups and their relay service code (as specified in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7]) (optional) (see NOTE)
	> MCPTT group ID
	> Relay service code (as specified in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7])
NOTE:	When the value of the parameter Relay service is N, this parameter and its child parameters are not needed.

## A.3 MCPTT user profile configuration data

The general aspects of MC service user profile configuration data are specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]. The MCPTT user profile configuration data is stored in the MCPTT user database. The MCPTT server obtains the MCPTT user profile configuration data from the MCPTT user database (MCPTT-2).

Tables A.3-1 and A.3-2 contain the MCPTT user profile configuration required to support the use of on-network MCPTT service. Tables A.3-1 and A.3-3 contain the MCPTT user profile configuration required to support the use of off-network MCPTT service. Data in table A.3-1 and A.3-3 can be configured offline using the CSC-11 reference point.

**Table A.3-1: MCPTT user profile data (on and off network)**

Reference	Parameter description	MCPTT UE	MCPTT Server	Configuration management server	MCPTT user database
Subclause 8.1.2 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]	MCPTT user identity (MCPTT ID)	Y	Y	Y	Y
3GPP TS 33.180 [19]	KMSUri for security domain of MCPTT ID (see NOTE 4)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Subclause 5.2.4 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]	Pre-selected MCPTT user profile indication (see NOTE 3)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Subclause 5.2.4 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]	MCPTT user profile index	Y	Y	Y	Y
Subclause 5.2.4 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]	MCPTT user profile name	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.19-007], [R-6.13.4-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	User profile status (enabled/disabled)		Y	Y	Y
[R-5.8-001], [R-6.9-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorised to create and delete aliases of an MCPTT User and its associated user profiles.			Y	Y
[R-5.8-002], [R-6.9-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Alphanumeric aliases of user	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.10-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Participant type of the user	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.3-002], [R-5.10-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	User's Mission Critical Organization (i.e. which organization a user belongs to)	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.4.2-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Maximum number of simultaneously received group calls (Nc5)		Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.5-004] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorised to make a private call	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.5-001] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorised to make a private call with manual commencement	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.5-003] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2] [R-6.7.3-007] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	List of user(s) who can be called in private call				
	> MCPTT ID	Y	Y	Y	Y
	> User info ID	Y	N	Y	Y
	> ProSe discovery group ID	Y	N	Y	Y
3GPP TS 33.180 [19]	> KMSUri for security domain of MCPTT ID (see NOTE 4)	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.7.4-004] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	> Presentation priority relative to other users and groups (see NOTE 2)	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.5-003] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorised to make a private call to users not included in "list of user(s) who can be called in private call"	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.5-002] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorised to make a private call with automatic commencement	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.3-011], [R-6.7.4-010] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorisation of user to force automatic answer for a private call	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.5-006], [R-6.7.5-002] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorised to restrict the provision of a notification of call failure reason for private call	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.13-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation to protect confidentiality and integrity of media in a private call (see NOTE 1)	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.13-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation to protect confidentiality and integrity of floor control signalling in a private call (see NOTE 1)	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.2.2.1-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation to make an MCPTT emergency group call functionality enabled for user	Y	Y	Y	Y

[R-5.6.2.4.1-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Group used on initiation of an MCPTT emergency group call (see NOTE 7)	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.2.4.1-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Recipient for an emergency private MCPTT call (see NOTE 7)				
	> MCPTT ID	Y	Y	Y	Y
3GPP TS 33.180 [19]	> KMSUri for security domain of MCPTT ID (see NOTE 4)	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.2.2.2-005] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation to cancel an in progress emergency associated with a group	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.2.2.3-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorised to make an Imminent Peril group call	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.2.2.3-009] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Group used on initiation of an MCPTT imminent peril group call (see NOTE 8)	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.2.2.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorised for imminent in- peril cancelation	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.2.3.1-001] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorised to make an emergency private call	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.2.3.2-001] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorised to cancel emergency priority in a private emergency call by an authorized user	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.2.4.1-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorised to activate emergency alert	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.2.4.1-013] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Automatically trigger a MCPTT emergency communication after initiating the MCPTT emergency alert	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.2.4.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation to cancel an MCPTT emergency alert	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.15.6.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorised to activate an MCPTT ad hoc group emergency alert	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.15.6.2-006] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation to cancel an MCPTT ad hoc group emergency alert	Y	Y	Y	Y
	Authorised to receive the participants information of an MCPTT ad hoc group emergency alert	N	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.15.6.2-007] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorised to set up a group call using the ad hoc group used for the alert	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.1.7-002] and [R-6.8.7.2-007] and [R-6.8.7.2-008] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Priority of the user (see NOTE 9)		Y	Y	Y
[R-5.2.2-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation to create a group-broadcast group			Y	Y
[R-5.2.2-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation to create a user-broadcast group			Y	Y
[R-5.3-003], [R-6.12-001], [R-7.2-005] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation to provide location information to other MCPTT users on a call when talking		Y	Y	Y
3GPP TS 23.283 [20]	Authorised to use LMR E2EE for interworking	Y	Y	Y	Y
3GPP TS 23.283 [20]	> List of supported LMR technology types				
3GPP TS 23.283 [20]	>> LMR technology type (P25, TETRA etc.)	Y	N	Y	Y
3GPP TS 23.283 [20]	>> URI of LMR key management functional entity (see NOTE 6)	Y	N	Y	Y
3GPP TS 23.283 [20]	>> LMR specific identity (RSI for P25 or ITSI for TETRA) (see NOTE 5)	Y	N	Y	Y
3GPP TS 23.283 [20]	>> LMR specific security information (see NOTE 5)	Y	N	Y	Y

[R-6.12-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorised to restrict the dissemination of the location information	Y	Y	Y	Y
Subclause 10.9 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]	Authorised to request location information of another user in the primary MCPTT system (see NOTE 10)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Subclause 10.9 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]	List of partner MCPTT systems for which user is authorised to request location information for another user				
	> Identity of partner MCPTT system	Y	Y	Y	Y
<p>NOTE 1: Security mechanisms are specified in 3GPP TS 33.180 [11].</p> <p>NOTE 2: The use of this parameter by the MCPTT UE is outside the scope of the present document.</p> <p>NOTE 3: As specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16], for each MCPTT user's set of MCPTT user profiles, only one MCPTT user profile shall be indicated as being the pre-selected MCPTT user profile.</p> <p>NOTE 4: If this parameter is absent, the KMSUri shall be that identified in the initial MC service UE configuration data (on-network) configured in table A.6-1 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].</p> <p>NOTE 5: This is an LMR specific parameter with no meaning within MC services.</p> <p>NOTE 6: The LMR key management functional entity is part of the LMR system and is outside the scope of the present document.</p> <p>NOTE 7: This parameter is used for the emergency communication and also used as a target of the emergency alert request. At most one of them is configured; i.e. emergency communication will go to either a group or a user. If both are not configured the MCPTT user's currently selected group will be used.</p> <p>NOTE 8: This group, if configured, will be used for imminent peril communication. If not configured the MCPTT user's currently selected group will be used.</p> <p>NOTE 9: The use of the parameter is left to implementation.</p> <p>NOTE 10: Further differentiation on authorisation for requesting location information based on detailed characteristics (e.g. MC organization, MC service ID, functional alias) is left to implementation.</p>					

**Table A.3-2: MCPTT user profile data (on network)**

Reference	Parameter description	MCPTT UE	MCPTT Server	Configuration management server	MCPTT user database
[R-5.1.5-001], [R-5.1.5-002], [R-5.10-001], [R-6.4.7-002], [R-6.8.1-008] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	List of on-network MCPTT groups for use by an MCPTT user				
	> MCPTT Group ID	Y	Y	Y	Y
	> Application plane server identity information of group management server where group is defined				
	>> Server URI	Y	N	Y	Y
	> Application plane server identity information of identity management server which provides authorization for group (see NOTE 1)				
	>> Server URI	Y	N	Y	Y
3GPP TS 33.180 [19]	> KMSUri for security domain of group (see NOTE 3)	Y	Y	Y	Y
	> Presentation priority of the group relative to other groups and users (see NOTE 2)	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.2.3.7.2-006] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	> Authorisation of an MCPTT user to change the maximum number of simultaneous talkers	Y	Y	Y	Y
Subclause 5.2.5 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]	List of groups user implicitly affiliates to after MCPTT service authorization for the user				
	> MCPTT Group IDs	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.4.2-006] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation of an MCPTT user to request a list of which groups an MCPTT user has affiliated to		Y	Y	Y
[R-6.4.6.1-002], [R-6.4.6.1-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation to change affiliated groups of other specified user(s)		Y	Y	Y
[R-6.4.6.2-001], [R-6.4.6.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation to recommend to specified user(s) to affiliate to specific group(s)		Y	Y	Y
[R-6.6.1-004] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation to perform regrouping	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.7.2-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Presence status is available/not available to other users	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.7.1-002], [R-6.7.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	List of MCPTT users that an MCPTT user is authorised to obtain presence of				
	> MCPTT IDs	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.7.2-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	User is able/ unable to participate in private calls	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.7.1-004], [R-6.7.2-003], [R-6.7.2-004] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation to query whether MCPTT User is available for private calls		Y	Y	Y
[R-6.7.1-010] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorisation to override transmission in a private call	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.7.1-013] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorisation to restrict provision of private call set-up failure cause to the caller		Y	Y	Y
[R-6.7.6-001] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorized to make a private call-back request	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.7.6-004] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorized to cancel a private call-back request	Y	Y	Y	Y

[R-6.8.7.4.2-001], [R-6.8.7.4.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation of an MCPTT user to cancel an emergency alert on any MCPTT UE of any MCPTT user		Y	Y	Y
[R-6.13.4-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation for a MCPTT user to enable/disable an MCPTT user		Y	Y	Y
[R-6.13.4-003], [R-6.13.4-005], [R-6.13.4-006], [R-6.13.4-007] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorisation for an MCPTT user to (permanently /temporarily) enable/disable a UE		Y	Y	Y
[R-6.2.3.4-001] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorisation to revoke permission to transmit		Y	Y	Y
[R-7.14-002], [R-7.14-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorization for manual switch to off-network while in on-network	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.1.5-004] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Limitation of number of affiliations per user (N2)	N	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.5.2-009] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Maximum number of simultaneous transmissions received in one group call for override (N7)		Y	Y	Y
[R-6.4.6.1-001], [R-6.4.6.1-004] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	List of MCPTT users whose selected groups are authorized to be remotely changed				
	> MCPTT IDs	Y	Y	Y	Y
Subclause 10.15.3	Authorization to make a first-to-answer call	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.15.2.2.2-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorization to make a remotely initiated ambient listening private call	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.15.2.2.3-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorization to make a locally initiated ambient listening private call	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.15.3.2-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorization to make a remotely initiated private call	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.15.3.2-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorization to make a remotely initiated group call	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.9a-013] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorised to request association between active functional alias(es) and MCPTT ID(s)		Y	Y	Y
[R-5.9a-012] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorised to take over a functional alias from another MCPTT user		Y	Y	Y
	List of functional alias(es) of the MCPTT user				
[R-5.9a-005] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	> Functional alias	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.4.2-007a] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Maximum number of parallel emergency group calls	Y		Y	Y
[R-5.9a-018] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Criteria for automatic activation by the MCPTT server (see NOTE 6)	N	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.9a-017], [R-5.9a-018] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Criteria for automatic de-activation by the MCPTT server (see NOTE 6)	N	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.9a-019] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Location criteria for activation	Y		Y	Y
[R-5.9a-019] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Location criteria for de-activation	Y		Y	Y
	>> Manual de-activation is not allowed if the location criteria are met	Y		Y	Y
[R-5.9a-020] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	List of functional aliases to which first-to-answer calls and private calls are allowed when using a certain functional alias				
	> Used functional alias	Y	Y	Y	Y
	>> List of functional aliases which can be called				
	>>> Functional alias	Y	Y	Y	Y

[R-5.9a-021] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	List of functional aliases from which first-to-answer calls and private calls can be received when using a certain functional alias				
	> Used functional alias	N	Y	Y	Y
	>> List of functional aliases from which calls can be received				
	>>> Functional alias	N	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.7.3-007a] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	List of user(s) from which private calls can be received				

	> MCPTT ID	Y	Y	Y	Y
3GPP TS 33.180 [19]	> KMSUri for security domain of MCPTT ID	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.7.4-004] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	> Presentation priority relative to other users and groups	Y	Y	Y	Y
	Authorized to receive private calls from any other MCPTT ID (see NOTE 8)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Subclause 5.2.9 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]	List of partner MCPTT systems in which this profile is valid for use during migration				
Subclause 5.2.9 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]	> Identity of partner MCPTT system	Y	Y	Y	Y
Subclause 10.1.1 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]	> Access information for partner MCPTT system (see NOTE 4)	Y		Y	Y
Subclause 10.6.2.9	Authorized to initiate or cancel group regrouping using a preconfigured regroup group	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.6.4.2-002a] and [R-6.6.4.2-002b] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	List of groups the client affiliates/de-affiliates when one or multiple criteria are met				
	> MCPTT Group ID	Y	Y	Y	Y
	>> Criteria for affiliation (see NOTE 5)	Y	Y	Y	Y
	>> Criteria for de-affiliation (see NOTE 5)	Y	Y	Y	Y
	>> Manual de-affiliation is not allowed if the criteria for affiliation are met	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.6.4.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	List of groups the client affiliates after receiving an emergency alert				
	> MCPTT Group ID	Y	Y	Y	Y
	>> Manual de-affiliation is not allowed if the criteria for affiliation are met	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.3-015], [R-6.7.4-016] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Allow private call forwarding		Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.3-015], [R-6.7.4-016] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Call Forwarding NoAnswer Timeout		Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.3-015], [R-6.7.4-016] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Call forwarding turned on		Y	Y	Y
R-5.6.3-015], [R-6.7.4-016] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Target of the MCPTT private call forwarding				
R-5.6.3-015], [R-6.7.4-016] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	> Target MCPTT ID (see NOTE 10)		Y	Y	Y
R-5.6.3-015], [R-6.7.4-016] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	> Target functional alias (see NOTE 10)		Y	Y	Y
R-5.6.3-015], [R-6.7.4-016] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Condition		Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.3-014], [R-6.7.4-015] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Allow private call transfer (see NOTE 7)	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.3-014], [R-6.7.4-015] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	List of MCPTT users that the MCPTT user is authorised to use as targets for call transfer				
[R-5.6.3-014], [R-6.7.4-015] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	> MCPTT ID		Y	Y	Y

[R-5.6.3-014], [R-6.7.4-015] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	List of functional aliases that the MCPTT user is authorised to use as targets for call transfer				
[R-5.6.3-014], [R-6.7.4-015] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	> Functional alias		Y	Y	Y
] [R-5.6.3-014], [R-6.7.4-015] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorised to transfer private calls to any MCPTT user	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.6.3-015], [R-6.7.4-016] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Authorised to forward private calls based on manual input to any MCPTT user (see NOTE 9)	Y	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.10-001b] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Maximum number of successful simultaneous MCPTT service authorizations for this user (see NOTE 11)	N	Y	Y	Y
	ad hoc group call authorizations				
[R-6.15.5.3-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	> Authorised to initiate ad hoc group call	Y	Y	Y	Y
R-6.15.5.3-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	> Authorised to participate in ad hoc group call	Y	Y	Y	Y
	> Authorised to initiate emergency ad hoc group call	Y	Y	Y	Y
	> Authorised to initiate imminent peril ad hoc group call	Y	Y	Y	Y
	> Authorised to receive the participants information of an ad hoc group call	N	Y	Y	Y
	> Authorised to modify the list of participants for an ad hoc group call	Y	Y	Y	Y
<p>NOTE 1: If this parameter is not configured, authorization to use the group shall be obtained from the identity management server identified in the initial MC service UE configuration data (on-network) configured in table A.6-1 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].</p> <p>NOTE 2: The use of this parameter by the MCPTT UE is outside the scope of the present document.</p> <p>NOTE 3: If this parameter is absent, the KMSUri shall be that identified in the initial MC service UE configuration data (on-network) configured in table A.6-1 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].</p> <p>NOTE 4: Access information for each partner MCPTT system comprises the list of information required for initial UE configuration to access an MCPTT system, as defined in table A.6-1 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]</p> <p>NOTE 5: The criteria may consist of conditions such as the MCPTT user location or the active functional alias of the MCPTT user.</p> <p>NOTE 6: The criteria may consist of conditions such as MCPTT user location or time.</p> <p>NOTE 7: Defines the right to perform a call transfer. For call transfer the MCPTT server does not check if the initial originating MCPTT user has the right to make a private MCPTT call to the final destination MCPTT user.</p> <p>NOTE 8: This parameter only applies to MCPTT users which are in the same security domain.</p> <p>NOTE 9: Defines the right to perform a call forwarding based on manual user input. For call forwarding based on manual user input the MCPTT server does not check if the initial originating MCPTT user has the right to make a private MCPTT call to the final destination MCPTT user.</p> <p>NOTE 10: Either the Target MCPTT ID or the Target functional alias may be present (but not both).</p> <p>NOTE 11: If configured, this value has precedence over the system level parameter "maximum number of successful simultaneous service authorisations" in table A.5-2. If not configured, the corresponding parameter from table A.5-2 shall be used.</p>					

Table A.3-3: MCPTT user profile data (off network)

Reference	Parameter description	MCPTT UE	MCPTT Server	Configuration management server	MCPTT user database
[R-7.2-003], [R-7.6-004] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	List of off-network MCPTT groups for use by an MCPTT user	Y	N	Y	Y
	> MCPTT Group ID	Y	N	Y	Y
	> Application plane server identity information of group management server where group is defined				
	>> Server URI	Y	N	Y	Y
	> Application plane server identity information of identity management server which provides authorization for group (see NOTE 1)				
	>> Server URI	Y	N	Y	Y
3GPP TS 33.180 [19]	> KMSUri for security domain of group (see NOTE 3)	Y	N	Y	Y
	> Presentation priority of the group relative to other groups and users (see NOTE 2)	Y	N	Y	Y
[R-7.3.3-008] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Allowed listening of both overriding and overridden	Y	N	Y	Y
[R-7.3.3-006] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Allowed transmission for override (overriding and/or overridden)	Y	N	Y	Y
[R-7.8.1-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorization for participant to change an off-network group call in-progress to off-network emergency group call	Y	N	Y	Y
[R-7.8.3.1-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorization for participant to change an off-network group call in-progress to off-network imminent peril group call	Y	N	Y	Y
[R-7.12-002], [R-7.12-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Authorization for off-network services	Y	N	Y	Y
Subclauses 10.6.3, 10.7.3	User info id (as specified in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7])	Y	N	Y	Y
NOTE 1: If this parameter is not configured, authorization to use the group shall be obtained from the identity management server identified in the initial MC service UE configuration data (on-network) configured in table A.6-1 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].					
NOTE 2: The use of this parameter by the MCPTT UE is outside the scope of the present document.					
NOTE 3: If this parameter is absent, the KMSUri shall be that identified in the initial MC service UE configuration data (on-network) configured in table A.6-1 of 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].					

## A.4 MCPTT related group configuration data

The general aspects of group configuration are specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

Parameters specified in table A.4-1 are child parameters of the "MCPTT configuration" parameter specified in table A.4-1 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]. Parameters specified in table A.4-2 are child parameters of the "MCPTT configuration" parameter specified in table A.4-2 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]. Parameters specified in table A.4-3 are child parameters of the "MCPTT configuration" parameter specified in table A.4-3 in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16].

Table A.4-1: Group configuration data (on and off network)

Reference	Parameter description	MCPTT UE	MCPTT Server	Group management server
[R-6.4.9-006] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Preferred voice codecs for MCPTT group	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.7.2.1.1-013], [R-5.7.2.4.1-008] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Indication whether emergency group call is permitted on the MCPTT group	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.7.2.2.1-009] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Indication whether imminent peril group call is permitted on the MCPTT group	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.7.2.4.1-012] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Indication whether emergency alert is possible on the MCPTT group	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.13-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Media confidentiality and integrity protection (see NOTE)	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.13-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Floor control confidentiality and integrity protection (see NOTE)	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.13-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Group media protection security material (see NOTE)	Y	N	Y
NOTE: Security mechanisms are specified in 3GPP TS 33.180 [19].				

**Table A.4-2: Group configuration data (on-network)**

Reference	Parameter description	MCPTT UE	MCPTT Server	Group management server
[R-5.7.2.1.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Timeout value for the cancellation of an in-progress emergency for an on-network group call	N	Y	Y
[R-5.7.2.2.2-004] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Timeout value for the cancellation of an in progress imminent-peril group call for an on-network group call	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.4-003], [R-6.4.9-002] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	>> Group call hang timer	N	Y	Y
[R-6.4.9-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Maximum duration of group calls	N	Y	Y
Subclause 10.6.2	>> Group call model used for group (chat/ pre-arranged)	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.2.1-004], [R-6.2.1-007] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	>> Minimum number of affiliated group members acknowledging before start of audio transmission	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.1-007] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	>> List of group members which, if affiliated, have to acknowledge before start of audio transmission			
	>>>MCPTT IDs	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.1-006], [R-6.2.1-007] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	>> Geographical area where acknowledgement of all affiliated group members is required before start of audio transmission	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.1-008], [R-6.2.1-009] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	>> Timeout for acknowledgement of required group members	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.1-008], [R-6.2.1-009], [R-6.2.1-012] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	>> Action upon failure to receive acknowledgement from required group members before call timeout (proceed or abandon)	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.1-001a] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	>> Minimum number of group members which must be affiliated to allow the start of the group call	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.1-001b] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	>> List of group members which must be affiliated to allow the start of the group call			
	>>>MCPTT IDs	N	Y	Y
[R-6.4.9-004] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> List of group members with receive-only capability (see NOTE 1)			
	>>>MCPTT IDs	N	Y	Y
[R-6.4.5-001], [R-6.4.5-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Authorisation of a user to request a list of affiliated members of a group	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.1.7-002], [R-6.2.2-001], [R-6.6.2.2-006,] [R-6.8.6.2-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Priority of the group	N	Y	Y
[R-6.8.6.2-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Pre-emption capability	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.8.6.2-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Pre-empted capability	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.13-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Group floor control protection security material for multicast use (see NOTE 2)	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.2.3.6.2-001] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	>> Audio cut-in policy (enabled/disabled)	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.3.7.2-001] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	>> Support of multi-talker control	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.2.3.7.2-005] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	>> Maximum number of simultaneous talkers applicable for multi-talker control	N	Y	Y

Subclause 7.4.2.3.5 and subclause 7.4.2.3.6	>> Audio mixing is performed in the UE or in the network to support multi-talker control	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.2.3.7.2-003] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	>> List of group members which are allowed to talk (see NOTE 1)			
	>>> MCPTT IDs	N	Y	Y
3GPP TS 23.283 [20]	>> Indication whether use of LMR E2EE is permitted on the MCPTT group	Y	N	Y
3GPP TS 23.283 [20]	>> LMR specific identity for MCPTT group (see NOTE 3)	Y	N	Y
3GPP TS 23.283 [20]	>> Group to key binding (see NOTE 3)	Y	N	Y
NOTE 1: A group member shall not be listed in both the list of group members with receive only capability and the list of group members which are allowed to talk.				
NOTE 2: The details of security related elements are specified in 3GPP TS 33.180 [19].				
NOTE 3: This is an LMR specific parameter with no meaning within MC services.				

**Table A.4-3: Group configuration data (off-network)**

Reference	Parameter description	MCPTT UE	MCPTT Server	Group management server
[R-5.7.2.1.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Timeout value for the cancellation of an in-progress emergency for an off-network group call	Y	N	Y
[R-5.7.2.2.2-004] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Timeout value for the cancellation of an in progress imminent-peril group call for an off-network group call	Y	N	Y
[R-7.4-002] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	>> Group call hang timer	Y	N	Y
[R-7.4-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> Max duration of group calls	Y	N	Y
Subclause 10.6.3.9.1	>> Default ProSe Per-Packet priority (as specified in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7]) values			
	>>> MCPTT group call signalling	Y	N	Y
	>>> MCPTT group call media	Y	N	Y
	>>> MCPTT emergency group call signalling	Y	N	Y
	>>> MCPTT emergency group call media	Y	N	Y
	>>> MCPTT imminent peril group call signalling	Y	N	Y
	>>> MCPTT imminent peril group call media	Y	N	Y

## A.5 MCPTT service configuration data

The general aspects of MC service configuration are specified in 3GPP TS 23.280 [16]. The MCPTT service configuration data is stored in the MCPTT server.

Tables A.5-1 and A.5-2 describe the configuration data required to support the use of on-network MCPTT service. Tables A.5-1 and A.5-3 describe the configuration data required to support the use of off-network MCPTT service. Data in tables A.5-1 and A.5-3 can be configured offline using the CSC-11 reference point.

**Table A.5-1: MCPTT service configuration data (on and off network)**

Reference	Parameter description	MCPTT UE	MCPTT Server	Configuration management server
[R-5.2.2-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Levels of group hierarchy for group-broadcast groups (Bc1)	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.2.3-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Levels of user hierarchy for user-broadcast groups (Bc2)	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.8-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Minimum length (Nc3) of an alphanumeric identifier (i.e. alias) assigned by an MCPTT administrator.	Y	N	Y

**Table A.5-2: MCPTT service configuration data (on-network)**

Reference	Parameter description	MCPTT UE	MCPTT Server	Configuration management server
[R-5.7.2.3.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Timeout value for the cancellation of an in-progress emergency for an on-network private call	N	Y	Y
[R-5.7.2.1.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Time limit for an in-progress emergency related to an on-network MCPTT group	N	Y	Y
[R-5.6.5-004] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Max on-network private call (with floor control) duration	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.4-003] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Hang timer for private calls	N	Y	Y
[R-6.7.2-008] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Max duration of private call (without floor control)	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.3.3.1-001] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Hierarchy of participant rights to override	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.3.5-002] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Transmit time limit from a single request to transmit in a group or private call transmission	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.3.5-003], [R-6.2.3.5-004] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Configuration of warning time before time limit of transmission is reached (on-network)	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.4-005] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Configuration of warning time before call hang time (on-network)	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.3.2-006] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Depth of floor control queue	N	Y	Y
[R-6.2.3.2-012] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Max time for a user's floor control request to be queued	N	Y	Y
[R-5.13-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Protect confidentiality of signalling (see NOTE 1)	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.13-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Protect integrity of signalling (see NOTE 1)	Y	Y	Y
[R-5.13-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Use signalling protection between MCPTT servers (see NOTE 1)	N	Y	Y
[R-5.13-001] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Use floor control protection between MCPTT servers (see NOTE 1)	N	Y	Y
	List of functional alias identities			
[R-5.9a-005] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	> Functional alias	N	Y	Y
[R-5.9a-016] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	> Communication priority (see NOTE 2)	N	Y	Y
[R-5.9a-005] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	> Limit number of simultaneous activations	N	Y	Y
[R-5.9a-005] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	> This functional alias can be taken over	N	Y	Y
	> List of users			
[R-5.9a-005] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	>> MCPTT ID	N	Y	Y
[R-5.6.3-015], [R-6.7.4-016] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Max number immediate forwardings	N	Y	Y
[R-5.10-001a] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Maximum number of successful simultaneous service authorizations of clients from a user	N	Y	Y
	Ad hoc group call configurations			
[R-6.15.5.3-005] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	> Support of ad hoc group call (enabled/disabled) (see NOTE 3)	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.15.5.3-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	> Maximum number of participants allowed to participate in an ad hoc group call	Y	Y	Y
[R-6.15.5.3-004] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	> Hang timer for ad hoc group call	N	Y	Y
	> Maximum duration for ad hoc group call	Y	Y	Y

	> List of preferred voice codecs for ad hoc group call	Y	Y	Y
NOTE 1: Security mechanisms are specified in 3GPP TS 33.180 [19].				
NOTE 2: The usage of this parameter by the MCPTT server is up to implementation.				
NOTE 3: If the support for ad hoc group call is disabled by the MC system then all other configurations related to ad hoc group call are not applicable.				

Table A.5-3: MCPTT service configuration data (off-network)

Reference	Parameter description	MCPTT UE	MCPTT Server	Configuration management server
[R-5.7.2.3.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Timeout value for the cancellation of an in-progress emergency for an off-network private call	Y	N	Y
[R-5.7.2.1.2-002] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Time limit for an in-progress emergency related to an off-network MCPTT group	Y	N	Y
[R-5.6.5-004] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Max off-network private call (with floor control) duration	Y	N	Y
[R-7.4-002] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2] [R-7.4-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Hang timer for private calls in off-network	Y	N	Y
[R-7.3.3-001], [R-7.3.3-002], [R-7.3.3-003] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Priority hierarchy for floor control override in off-network	Y	N	Y
[R-7.3.5-001], [R-7.3.5-002], [R-7.3.5-003] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Transmit time limit from a single request to transmit in a group or private call.	Y	N	Y
[R-7.3.5-001], [R-7.3.5-004] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Configuration of warning time before time limit of transmission is reached (off-network)	Y	N	Y
[R-7.4-004] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Configuration of warning time before hang time is reached (off-network)	Y	N	Y
[R-7.7-001], [R-7.7-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17] [R-7.7-002] of 3GPP TS 22.179 [2]	Default ProSe Per-Packet priority (as specified in 3GPP TS 23.303 [7]) values			
	> MCPTT private call signalling	Y	N	Y
	> MCPTT private call media	Y	N	Y
	> MCPTT Emergency private call signalling	Y	N	Y
	> MCPTT Emergency private call media	Y	N	Y
[R-7.15-001], [R-7.7-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Configuration of metadata to log	Y	N	Y

## Annex B (informative): Local UE settings for MCPTT

### B.1 Local UE settings for MCPTT

Table B.1-1 details local UE settings for MCPTT that represent important functionalities that may be required by MCPTT UEs, however these functionalities do not require central configuration like the parameters in annex A, so these are detailed in this annex for information to UE vendors interested in producing MCPTT UEs. The various columns in the tables have the following meanings:

- Reference: Is the reference of the corresponding requirement in 3GPP TS 22.179 [2].
- Definition: A short definition of the local UE setting.

**Table B.1-1: Local UE settings for MCPTT**

Reference	Definition
[R-5.1.1-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Call reception signalling method
[R-5.1.1-004] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Disabling of call reception signalling
[R-5.8-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Configuration of display of MCPTT ID (on/off)
[R-5.8-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Configuration of display of aliases associated with the MCPTT ID (on/off)
[R-5.8-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Configuration of display of Selected MCPTT Group (on/off)
[R-5.8-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Configuration of display of Mission Critical Organization name (on/off)
[R-6.8.7.4.1-003] of 3GPP TS 22.280 [17]	Configuration of the notification of an emergency alert

## Annex C (informative): Change history

Date	Meeting	TDoc	CR	R ev	Cat	Subject/Comment	New
2016-04						Initial version.	0.0.0
2016-04						Alignment with the following Rel-13 CRs agreed at SA6#10: CR0053(S6-160271), CR0055(S6-160307), CR0057(S6-160312), CR0058(S6-160289), CR0059(S6-160346), CR0060(S6-160335), CR0061(S6-160268), CR0062(S6-160333), CR0067(S6-160274), CR0069(S6-160313), CR0071(S6-160199), CR0072(S6-160334), CR0075(S6-160331), CR0076(S6-160269), CR0078(S6-160284), CR0079(S6-160360), CR0080(S6-160297), CR0081(S6-160332), CR0085(S6-160361), CR0088(S6-160291), CR0089(S6-160347), CR0090(S6-160310), CR0093(S6-160293), CR0094(S6-160294), CR0099(S6-160342)	0.1.0
2016-06						Implemented the following pCRs approved during SA6#11: S6-160414, S6-160475, S6-160497, S6-160499, S6-160501, S6-160508, S6-160514, S6-160518, S6-160530, S6-160532, S6-160568, S6-160571, S6-160581, S6-160584, S6-160588, and merged relevant content from S6-160489. Editorial changes: renumbering subclauses as needed; added top level subclauses where needed with editor's notes; added a few missing subclauses at level 2 with editor's notes; use actual TS numbers made available at SA plenary: 23.379 and 23.280.	0.2.0
2016-09						Implemented the following pCRs approved during SA6#12: S6-160681, S6-160698, S6-160707, S6-160790, S6-160802, S6-160828, S6-160873, S6-160908, S6-160909, S6-160921, S6-160925. Editorial changes: renumbering subclauses as needed; added a few missing headings at level 2 and level 3 with editor's notes for consistency.	0.3.0
2016-10						Implemented the following pCRs approved during SA6#13: S6-160961, S6-161016, S6-161112, S6-161113, S6-161116, S6-161124, S6-161210, S6-161211, S6-161212, S6-161219, S6-161231, S6-161249, S6-161251, S6-161258, S6-161268 Editorial changes: renumbering subclauses as needed.	0.4.0
2016-11						Implemented the following pCRs approved during SA6#14: S6-161330, S6-161522, S6-161538, S6-161564, S6-161572, S6-161584, S6-161591, S6-161595, S6-161596, S6-161597, S6-161598, S6-161607. Editorial changes: renumbering subclauses as needed.	0.5.0
2016-12	SA#74	SP-160876				Submitted for Approval at SA#74	1.0.0
2016-12	SA#74	SP-160876				MCC Editorial update for publication after TSG SA approval (SA#74)	14.0.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0003	1	F	Alignment of definitions	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0004	2	F	Alignment of group affiliation and de-affiliation requirements	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0005	1	F	Alignment of bearer management	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0006	1	F	Resolve editor's note in clause 10.6.2.8.1	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170069	0008	1	F	Store and update affiliation status in the GMS	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0009	2	F	Duplicated reference remove	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0011	1	F	Corrections to MCPTT UE configuration data	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0013	1	D	Correction of references	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0016	1	D	Message title alignment	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0017	3	F	Resolve group ID issue for temporary group call – user regroup	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0018	1	F	Addition of definition for MCPTT ID	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0019		F	Correction of requirement reference for list of implicitly affiliated groups in MCPTT user profile config	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0020	2	F	Simultaneous floor requests	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0021	2	F	Correction on floor control	14.1.0
2017-03	SA#75	SP-170068	0022	2	F	Miscellaneous corrections on term	14.1.0
2017-06	SA#76	SP-170389	0042	1	F	Miscellaneous corrections to configuration	14.2.0
2017-06	SA#76	SP-170389	0043	6	F	Addition of identity management server address per group	14.2.0

2017-06	SA#76	SP-170389	0049	1	F	Correction in Ambient Listening	14.2.0
2017-06	SA#76	SP-170389	0050	1	F	Clarifications on response in off-network	14.2.0
2017-06	SA#76	SP-170389	0062	2	F	Inclusion of KMSUri to allow multiple security domains	14.2.0
2017-06	SA#76	SP-170389	0068	1	F	Corrections to configuration for ambient listening	14.2.0
2017-06	SA#76	SP-170389	0069	1	F	Correction to configuration for first-to-answer call	14.2.0
2017-06	SA#76	SP-170389	0070		F	Corrections to Group configuration data for all MC services	14.2.0
2017-06	SA#76	SP-170340	0044	1	B	MCPTT unicast media flow stop and resume	15.0.0
2017-06	SA#76	SP-170398	0063	1	D	Editorial corrections in call back cancel request	15.0.0
2017-06	SA#76	SP-170340	0066	1	C	Resource Management enhancements for MCPTT	15.0.0
2017-06	SA#76	SP-170340	0067	2	C	Addition of Floor acknowledgement	15.0.0
2017-09	SA#77	SP-170685	0074	2	B	Updating IWF-1 description	15.1.0
2017-09	SA#77	SP-170678	0075	2	A	CR on MapGroupToBearer message	15.1.0
2017-09	SA#77	SP-170678	0077	1	A	Corrections for configuration references	15.1.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170895	0079	3	B	Functional model for MCPTT interconnection	15.2.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170896	0086	2	B	Introduction of the multi-talker control	15.2.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170896	0087	3	B	Introduction of Functional alias(es)	15.2.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170896	0089	1	C	Multi-talker floor release message and procedure	15.2.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170886	0101	2	A	Rejection of group call	15.2.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170886	0103	2	A	MCPTT server PSI configuration	15.2.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170886	0110	1	A	authorization for remotely initiated MCPTT call	15.2.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170890	0090	2	F	Renaming of MCPTT emergency group call cancel	15.2.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170890	0091	1	F	Renaming of MCPTT "emergency condition"	15.2.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170890	0093	2	F	Renaming of MCPTT imminent peril group call cancel	15.2.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170890	0094	2	F	Renaming Off-network MCPTT emergency group cancel	15.2.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170890	0095	2	F	Adding implicit floor request IE to MCPTT emergency group call request	15.2.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170890	0096	3	B	Server-initiated Broadcast group call release procedure	15.2.0
2018-01	SA#78	SP-170890	0107	2	F	Renaming of "MCPTT emergency state cancel" and corrections to information flow	15.2.0
2018-04	SA#79	SP-180146	0112	1	A	Correction of security specification references	15.3.0
2018-04	SA#79	SP-180154	0113	1	A	User profile for MCPTT migration	15.3.0
2018-04	SA#79	SP-180154	0114	4	B	MCPTT specific group configuration for interconnection	15.3.0
2018-04	SA#79	SP-180155	0115	3	B	LMR E2EE user profile and group parameters	15.3.0
2018-04	SA#79	SP-180158	0116	2	F	Introduction of MCPTT call end response message	15.3.0
2018-04	SA#79	SP-180150	0117	1	F	Update of references to stage 1 specifications	15.3.0
2018-04	SA#79	SP-180154	0119		B	Definition of MCPTT-3	15.3.0
2018-04	SA#79	SP-180154	0120		D	Editorial correction to gateway server entity	15.3.0
2018-06	SA#80	SP-180365	0123	3	A	Addition of implicit floor request IEs	15.4.0
2018-06	SA#80	SP-180365	0125	1	A	Corrections to implicit floor request handling	15.4.0
2018-06	SA#80	SP-180373	0129	1	F	Correction of referenced subclauses	15.4.0
2018-06	SA#80	SP-180365	0133		A	Clarification for presentation priority in MCPTT UE configuration	15.4.0
2018-06	SA#80	SP-180369	0134	2	F	Update of MCPTT emergency alert for multicast	15.4.0
2018-06	SA#80	SP-180369	0135	1	F	Correction of Group call rejoin response	15.4.0
2018-09	SA#81	SP-180672	0137	1	F	Emergency Alert Area Trigger	15.5.0
2018-09	SA#81	SP-180672	0138	1	C	Location of Current Talker via Floor Request	15.5.0
2018-09	SA#81	SP-180671	0140	2	A	Removal of temporary regroup procedures	15.5.0
2018-09	SA#81	SP-180672	0141		F	23.379 Table A.3-1 duplicate note 4	15.5.0
2018-09	SA#81	SP-180672	0142	1	F	Correction to Chat group call pre-condition	15.5.0
2018-09	SA#81	SP-180672	0145	1	F	Removal of group call notify from normal group call setup	15.5.0
2018-09	SA#81	SP-180672	0147		F	Correction to chat group join mechanism	15.5.0
2018-09	SA#81	SP-180678	0143	1	B	Interconnection chat group call	16.0.0
2018-09	SA#81	SP-180676	0146	1	F	Issues with temporary regroup procedures	16.0.0
2019-01	SA#82	SP-181177	0148		F	Correction of intended mandatory call participants	16.1.0
2019-01	SA#82	SP-181177	0149	3	C	Completing availability of talker location with floor control request	16.1.0
2019-01	SA#82	SP-181177	0150	4	C	MCPTT add location to emergency and imminent peril	16.1.0
2019-01	SA#82	SP-181177	0151	3	B	User regroup procedure	16.1.0
2019-01	SA#82	SP-181177	0152	1	F	Late entry pre-arranged group call corrections for emergency	16.1.0
2019-01	SA#82	SP-181177	0161	4	F	Late entry for chat group call	16.1.0
2019-01	SA#82	SP-181177	0162	5	B	Application paging	16.1.0
2019-01	SA#82	SP-181177	0163		D	Spelling of ProSe	16.1.0
2019-01	SA#82	SP-181177	0164	4	B	Regroup using preconfigured group	16.1.0
2019-01	SA#82	SP-181177	0166	2	F	Corrections to 'general' subclause for pre-arranged and chat group call	16.1.0
2019-01	SA#82	SP-181177	0168	1	F	Pre-established session corrections	16.1.0
2019-03	SA#83	SP-190073	0170	2	B	Broadcast group regroup	16.2.0
2019-03	SA#83	SP-190073	0171	2	F	Corrections to MCPTT chat group call late entry procedures	16.2.0

2019-03	SA#83	SP-190073	0172	2	C	Procedure for MCPTT user leaving a group call	16.2.0
2019-03	SA#83	SP-190075	0174	1	F	MCPTT ID in interconnection floor control	16.2.0
2019-03	SA#83	SP-190073	0175	2	C	Broadcast user regroup	16.2.0
2019-03	SA#83	SP-190073	0176	2	B	Group regroup broadcast and rejection using preconfigured group	16.2.0
2019-03	SA#83	SP-190073	0177	1	F	Broadcast user regroup	16.2.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190484	0180	3	B	Adding newly affiliated user to preconfigured group regroup	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190484	0182	3	B	Broadcast group regroup call using preconfigured group	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190484	0183	3	B	Preconfigured regroup exception cases	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0186	1	B	Restricting incoming private communications	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0187	1	B	Support of functional aliases in private calls and private emergency calls	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0188	3	B	Support of functional aliases in emergency and imminent peril groups calls	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0189	3	B	Support of functional aliases via broadcast group calls	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0190	2	B	Support of multiple functional alias use in private calls	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0191	4	B	Provide list of MCPTT group members who did not acknowledge the group call request	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190484	0192	3	C	Preconfigured regroup cancellation on log off	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190482	0194		A	Clarifications on functional alias controlling role	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0195	2	B	User configuration for functional alias information query for MCPTT	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0196	1	B	User requested priority in 23.379	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0200	2	B	Functional alias call	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0202	4	B	Criteria based automatic group affiliation and de-affiliation	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0203	1	B	MCPTT configuration for implicit functional alias activation/deactivation	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190484	0206	2	F	MCPTT ID list in Group call notify	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190484	0207	2	F	Preconfigured regroup usage	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190484	0208	2	F	Remove the duplicated MCPTT server URI in UE configuration table	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0210	2	B	Add configuration for call forwarding for MCPTT private calls	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0211	3	B	Add call forwarding for MCPTT private calls	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0213	1	B	MCPTT server limits the number of simultaneous successful service authorisations	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0214	1	B	Additional commencement modes for group calls	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0215		B	Triggering an emergency group communication after an emergency alert automatically	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0216		B	MCPTT client performs automatic activation and deactivation of functional aliases based on location	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0217	2	B	Communication priority for functional aliases	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190488	0218		F	Information flows for the first-to-answer call procedure	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190484	0220	2	B	User regroup using group creation and using preconfigured group	16.3.0
2019-06	SA#84	SP-190484	0222	4	C	Preconfigured regrouping enhancements	16.3.0
2019-09	SA#85	SP-190731	0223	1	F	Correct the error message is sent in the MCPTT emergency group call procedures	16.4.0
2019-09	SA#85	SP-190731	0224	3	F	Correct the configuration parameters for the MCPTT emergency procedures	16.4.0
2019-09	SA#85	SP-190731	0227	3	F	Corrections to MCPTT emergency alert procedures	16.4.0
2019-09	SA#85	SP-190732	0228	1	F	Add condition "not reachable" to call forwarding for MCPTT private calls	16.4.0
2019-09	SA#85	SP-190732	0235	1	F	Making functional alias optional in floor control messages	16.4.0
2019-09	SA#85	SP-190735	0225	3	B	Support of functional aliases as called party address in MCPTT emergency private calls	17.0.0
2019-09	SA#85	SP-190735	0226	2	B	Call restrictions when using a specific functional alias for private calls	17.0.0
2019-09	SA#85	SP-190735	0229	7	B	Add call transfer for MCPTT private calls	17.0.0
2019-09	SA#85	SP-190735	0232	1	B	Functional alias of Called party in private call	17.0.0
2019-12	SA#86	SP-191109	0237	1	A	Corrections to preconfigured regroup procedures	17.1.0
2019-12	SA#86	SP-191113	0238	1	B	Handling the originating side of functional alias for group calls	17.1.0
2019-12	SA#86	SP-191113	0239	1	B	Add missing server to server information flows for group calls	17.1.0
2019-12	SA#86	SP-191113	0240	2	F	Priority of the user for initiating/receiving calls	17.1.0
2019-12	SA#86	SP-191113	0241		F	Correcting stage 1 reference on maximum number of simultaneously received group calls	17.1.0
2019-12	SA#86	SP-191110	0243	1	A	Receiving a private call from any other user	17.1.0
2019-12	SA#86	SP-191114	0245	1	F	Alignment on MCX emergency alert procedures	17.1.0

2020-03	SA#87-E	SP-200118	0246	5	B	Add announced call redirection for MCPTT private calls	17.2.0
2020-03	SA#87-E	SP-200118	0247	5	B	Add call forwarding based on manual input for MCPTT private calls	17.2.0
2020-03	SA#87-E	SP-200118	0249	2	B	Add call forwarding based on manual input for MCPTT private calls	17.2.0
2020-03	SA#87-E	SP-200118	0250	2	F	Clarification on functional alias to group binding function	17.2.0
2020-07	SA#88-E	SP-200339	0252	3	A	Clarification on target recipients in first-to-answer calls	17.3.0
2020-07	SA#88-E	SP-200339	0254	3	A	Media security for MCPTT private call forwarding immediate	17.3.0
2020-07	SA#88-E	SP-200340	0255	3	F	Corrections in MCPTT private call forwarding	17.3.0
2020-07	SA#88-E	SP-200340	0256	3	F	Media plane security when using a functional alias as target address for private MCPTT calls	17.3.0
2020-07	SA#88-E	SP-200342	0257	1	D	Minor corrections of the informational elements	17.3.0
2020-07	SA#88-E	SP-200342	0258	1	F	Minor changes to ambient listening procedures on user indication	17.3.0
2020-07	SA#88-E	SP-200342	0259	1	F	Removing subscription and notification for functional alias	17.3.0
2020-07						Correction of implementation of CR0255r3	17.3.1
2020-07						Correction of implementation of CR0256r3 (clause 10.7.2.1.8 omitted)	17.3.2
2020-09	SA#88-E	SP-200844	0260	3	F	Clarification on user subscription, group policy and functional alias policy	17.4.0
2020-09	SA#88-E	SP-200843	0261	1	F	Correction of private call setup procedures when using a functional alias as target address	17.4.0
2020-09	SA#88-E	SP-200843	0262	1	B	MCPTT private call forwarding to a functional alias as a target	17.4.0
2020-09	SA#88-E	SP-200843	0263	1	B	MCPTT private call transfer to a functional alias as a target	17.4.0
2020-09	SA#88-E	SP-200843	0265	1	B	Limit the number of simultaneous logins on per user basis	17.4.0
2020-09	SA#88-E	SP-200843	0269	1	B	Call restrictions for normal private calls	17.4.0
2020-09	SA#88-E	SP-200844	0270	1	F	MCPTT emergency group call clarifications	17.4.0
2020-09	SA#88-E	SP-200844	0271	1	F	MCPTT emergency private call clarifications	17.4.0
2020-09	SA#88-E	SP-200844	0276	1	F	Clarifications on the use of ProSe in off-network MCPTT calls	17.4.0
2020-09	SA#88-E	SP-200843	0278	1	F	Functional alias private call	17.4.0
2020-12	SA#90-E	SP-200995	0279	2	B	Authorized user being notified about other users floor queue status	17.5.0
2020-12	SA#90-E	SP-200995	0280	1	C	MCPTT in-progress emergency group state cancel modification	17.5.0
2020-12	SA#90-E	SP-200995	0283	1	F	Minor changes to information elements and procedures	17.5.0
2020-12	SA#90-E	SP-200994	0285		F	Clarifications for functional alias private calls	17.5.0
2021-04	SA#91-E	SP-210179	0286	1	F	Private Call Transfer Corrections	17.6.0
2021-04	SA#91-E	SP-210180	0288		B	Authorized user clearing the entire floor request queue	17.6.0
2021-04	SA#91-E	SP-210180	0290	1	F	Changes to the Queue Position Info information flow description	17.6.0
2021-06	SA#92-E	SP-210567	0293		F	Correction to MCPTT-5 reference point description	17.7.0
2021-09	SA#93-E	SP-210963	0296	1	F	Removal of temporary regroup procedures	17.8.0
2021-12	SA#94-E	SP-211524	0301		F	Correction to MCPTT group document for interconnect	17.9.0
2021-12	SA#94-E	SP-211529	0300	1	B	Connection authorisation configuration data	18.0.0
2022-03	SA#95-E	SP-220109	0302		F	Correction of two information flow descriptions	18.1.0
2022-03	SA#95-E	SP-220109	0304		F	MCPTT Group ID for pre-configured group call	18.1.0
2022-06	SA#96	SP-220476	0307	1	B	Update to remotely initiated call request procedure to support pre-emptive or high priority and commencement mode	18.2.0
2022-06	SA#96	SP-220476	0308		B	Allow the user to restrict the dissemination of the location information – MCPTT Configuration	18.2.0
2022-06	SA#96	SP-220476	0309	1	B	Auto affiliate to MCPTT group for remotely initiated MCPTT call request procedure	18.2.0
2022-09	SA#97-E	SP-220923	0310	1	B	Private call forwarding between several MCPTT systems	18.3.0
2022-09	SA#97-E	SP-220924	0311		F	Private MCPTT call to a FA user	18.3.0
2022-09	SA#97-E	SP-220926	0312	2	C	Updating MCPTT private call end request information elements	18.3.0
2022-09	SA#97-E	SP-220926	0313	1	B	Private call transfer between several MCPTT systems	18.3.0
2022-09	SA#97-E	SP-220924	0314	2	C	Floor control signalling over QCI 69 and QCI 65	18.3.0
2022-12	SA#98-E	SP-221241	0322	1	B	Description for the terms used in the Ad hoc Group Communication procedures	18.4.0
2022-12	SA#98-E	SP-221241	0323	1	B	Information flows for the ad hoc group call	18.4.0
2022-12	SA#98-E	SP-221241	0324	1	B	Ad hoc group call procedures in single MCPTT system	18.4.0
2022-12	SA#98-E	SP-221241	0326	1	B	Modifying participants list of on-going ad hoc group call in single MCPTT system	18.4.0
2022-12	SA#98-E	SP-221241	0327	1	B	Configuration parameters for Ad hoc group call	18.4.0

2023-03	SA#99	SP-230289	0328	4	B	Ad hoc group call procedures involving multiple MC systems	18.5.0
2023-03	SA#99	SP-230289	0330	2	B	User profile configuration data to support MCPTT ad hoc group emergency alerts	18.5.0
2023-03	SA#99	SP-230289	0332		B	Information flows for the ad hoc group call procedures involving multiple MCPTT systems - Participants list determined by the MCPTT servers	18.5.0
2023-03	SA#99	SP-230289	0333	2	B	Ad hoc group call procedures involving multiple MCPTT systems - Participants list determined by the MCPTT servers	18.5.0
2023-03	SA#99	SP-230289	0335	2	B	Corrections to Ad hoc group call procedures	18.5.0
2023-03	SA#99	SP-230287	0336	2	B	MCPTT group ID for regroup group calls	18.5.0
2023-03	SA#99	SP-230287	0337	2	C	MCPTT user profile configuration parameters for location information	18.5.0
2023-03	SA#99	SP-230289	0338	1	F	Correction and update to configuration parameters of Ad hoc group call for MCPTT	18.5.0
2023-03	SA#99	SP-230289	0339	2	B	Notifying authorized user about adhoc group participants list	18.5.0
2023-04						Editorial correction of implementation of CR 0332r2 (S6-230219) i.e. placing of the new clause "Ad hoc group call release notification"	18.5.1
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230703	0340	1	B	Notifying authorized user about adhoc group participants list	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230703	0341	1	C	Add Criteria to Preconfigured User Regroup Request	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230709	0342	1	B	Configuration for receiving the adhoc group emergency alert participants list notification (MCPTT)	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230709	0343	1	C	Correcting the ad hoc group communication criteria between multiple MCPTT systems	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230709	0344		B	Notifying authorized user about adhoc group participants list involving multiple MC systems - MCPTT	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230709	0345	1	B	Get user list Information flows for the ad hoc group call - MCPTT	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230709	0346		F	Use of service specific terminologies (i.e. MCPTT) and other corrections	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230709	0347	2	F	Corrections for ad hoc group call setup	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230703	0348	2	F	Addition of Call Release Reason code in the PES based Call Disconnect procedure	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230703	0349	2	F	Correct MCPTT ID usage in some information flow tables	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230709	0350	1	F	MCPTT group ID correction	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230709	0351	2	F	Remove unnecessary information flow tables	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230709	0352	1	F	Addressing EN related to user configuration for ad hoc MCPTT communication	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230703	0353	1	B	User regroup MCPTT ID list update	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230703	0354	1	B	Updates adhoc group call procedures for allowing a subsequent MCPTT call after an adhoc group emergency alert	18.6.0
2023-06	SA#100	SP-230703	0356		F	Corrections to ad hoc group call setup procedure involving multiple MC system	18.6.0
2023-09	SA#101	SP-230998	0359	1	F	Adding missing group definitions (MCPTT)	18.7.0
2023-09	SA#101	SP-230997	0363	2	A	Floor idle alignment with stage-3	18.7.0
2023-09	SA#101	SP-230998	0368		F	Floor participant and floor control server alignment in 10.9.1.3	18.7.0
2023-09	SA#101	SP-230998	0369	1	F	Missing pre-conditions and steps for ad hoc group MCPTT call	18.7.0
2023-09	SA#101	SP-230998	0370		F	Correcting configuration for ad hoc group MCPTT communication	18.7.0
2023-12	SA#102	SP-231551	0377	1	A	Clarification on floor idle for multi-talker case	18.8.0
2023-12	SA#102	SP-231558	0389	1	F	Configuration for authorising modification of ad hoc group call participants - mcptt	18.8.0
2023-12	SA#102	SP-231558	0392	1	F	Modification of ad hoc group call participants involving multiple MCPTT systems	18.8.0
2023-12	SA#102	SP-231558	0394	1	F	Correction to ad hoc group call setup procedure	18.8.0
2023-12	SA#102	SP-231558	0396	1	F	Correction to modification of ad hoc group call participants procedure - mcptt	18.8.0
2024-03	SA#103	SP-240303	0407	1	F	Void the clause 10.6.2.9.3.3	18.9.0
2024-06	SA#104	SP-240758	0423	1	F	Removal of GW MC service ID	18.10.0
2024-06	SA#104	SP-240757	0426	1	F	Ambiguity on routing private calls	18.10.0
2024-12	SA#106	SP-241707	0441		F	Clarification on initial floor request	18.11.0
2024-12	SA#106	SP-241707	0444	1	F	Resolving an EN in the First-to-answer call setup procedure	18.11.0
2024-12	SA#106	SP-241707	0449	1	F	Removing EN on MCPTT server used as signalling proxy	18.11.0

2025-03	SA#107	SP-250199	0452		F	Correction in the Group regroup with preconfigured group procedure	18.12.0
2025-03	SA#107	SP-250199	0453		F	Correction in the User regroup with preconfigured group procedure	18.12.0
2025-06	SA#108	SP-250608	0457	2	F	Updating cl. 10.19.3.1.3	18.13.0
2025-06	SA#108	SP-250608	0468	1	F	Add statement to MCPTT ad hoc group communication about continuous updates to a group participant list based on criteria	18.13.0
2026-01	SA#110	SP-251476	0485	1	F	Resolving Editor's Note on server-to-server messages (MCPTT)	18.14.0
2026-01	SA#110	SP-251476	0494	2	F	Removal of Editor's Notes in Rel-18 Version of TS 23.379	18.14.0
2026-01	SA#110	SP-251483	0495		F	Correction when MCPTT server releases an ad hoc group call (multiple MCPTT systems)	18.14.0

---

## History

<b>Version</b>	<b>Date</b>	<b>Status</b>
V18.9.0	April 2024	Publication
V18.10.0	July 2024	Publication
V18.11.0	January 2025	Publication
V18.12.0	April 2025	Publication
V18.13.0	July 2025	Publication
V18.14.0	February 2026	Publication